EPUB/PDF generated by https://lnwnepubs.com/

Ch 1-63 Otherworld Nation Founding Chronicles

Table of Contents

1. Chapter 1
2. Chapter 2
3. Chapter 3
4. Chapter 4
5. Chapter 5
6. Chapter 6
7. Chapter 7
8. Chapter 8
9. Chapter 9
10. Chapter 10
11. Chapter 11
12. Chapter 12
13. Chapter 13
14. Chapter 14
15. Chapter 15
16. Chapter 16
17. Chapter 17
18. Chapter 18
19. Chapter 19
20. Chapter 20
21. Chapter 21
22. Chapter 22

23. Chapter 23
24. Chapter 24
25. Chapter 25
26. Chapter 26
27. Chapter 27
28. Chapter 28
29. Chapter 29
30. Chapter 30
31. Chapter 31
32. Chapter 32
33. Chapter 33
34. Chapter 34
35. Chapter 35
36. Chapter 36
37. Chapter 37
38. Chapter 38
39. Chapter 39
40. Chapter 40
41. Chapter 41
42. Chapter 42
43. Chapter 43
44. Chapter 44
45. Chapter 45
46. Chapter 46
47. Chapter 47
48. Chapter 48
49. Chapter 49
50. Chapter 50
51. Chapter 51
52. Chapter 52
53. Chapter 53
54. Chapter 54
55. Chapter 55
56. Chapter 56
57. Chapter 57
58. Chapter 58
59. Chapter 59
60. Chapter 60
61. Chapter 61
62. Chapter 62

63. Chapter 63

ttled in my stomach, I became worried.

I was a little worried……
Will I become stupid if I don't have enough nourishment?
However, I don't now how to start a fire. Oh well, might as well eat it raw since I need to survive.
Since I chewed it well, it's going to be all right, going to be all right. Probably.

If my brain worked half as much and hesitated, I might die from starvation.
I just wished that there wasn't any parasites present.

"I'm thirsty……"
I began to walk to look for water.
I want to wash out the aftertaste of the centipede in my mouth quickly.

I felt it was ten minutes of walking when I found a brook.
The words that came to my mind was to not drink the water, but there's no way around since I don't know how to start a fire to boil it.

"I have returned to the living……"
Water was important after all.
Because the water looks clear, I think I'm safe from parasites. Probably.

I looked at the water surface on the brook.
My face was illuminated by the moonlight……
……
……
……

Who was this guy?

An emaciated gray-haired kid was reflected on the surface of the

water.

??????

Wait, wait, surely the reflection on the water was wrong. Even the reflection of the light may sometimes go wrong.
I rejected the reality before me because I don't understand what this means in my mind.

I touched my cheeks timidly.
I could see that my cheek bones were visible.
I was not fat, but I'm not that skinny for my cheek bones to be visible.

Next, I tried pulling my hair. My hair was gray.
A typical Japanese should have raven-black hair……

This was reality.
In other words, this was that, it's that famous…

"It's reincarnation……"

I looked up at the night sky.
The size of the moon that was shining in the sky was twice as big as the moon from Earth.

Possession

Death had suddenly come to me.
From an unexpected place and time.

In front of a large truck.

Time had moved slowly. Things that I had left undone appeared on my mind one by one and disappears.
My boss from my previous part-time job, my friend, my university professor. That reminds me, I haven't submitted my report yet……

And lastly everyone from the orphanage.
I don't think they would end up thanking me for my life insurance.

I still wanted to live with more thrills in my life if possible.
When I though so, I heard a voice of a kid laughing, and every bone in my body was broken.

I was in the forest when I woke up……

I looked around and towards the sky.
The moon, which I felt was bigger than the moon that I knew, was shining in the sky.

The trees that were illuminated by the moonlight were very big. I wonder how many times taller the trees had grown compared to me?

Was this the afterlife?
There was a story about a flower garden and the Sanzu River, but I didn't catch a sight of it.
This was a shabby afterlife.

Where the hell am I……?

Suddenly, I felt something bitter in my mouth.
It was some grass when I spat it out.

Why did I eat some grass?
And then I realized that I was famished.

Dizziness, fatigue and the general feeling of malaise assailed my whole body.

If I don’t eat something I will die for sure……

I must look for something that I can possibly eat.
Acorn, mushrooms too, anything is okay.
I need something I’m able to eat.

Suddenly, a big centipede entered my field of vision.
Usually, I would scream and run away from that place, but I just stared it for some reason.
Looking at it carefully, I think I could clearly see it had so much muscles.
I’m certain the poison was on the mouth, aside from the mouth, will I able to eat it……?
……
……

Can I eat it?

For the first time, I ate an unappetizing centipede.

“Come to think of it, will I be okay from the parasites?”
After the centipede se

ng summer. Maybe my search method was wrong.

In the first place, I do not have any knowledge regarding wild grasses. Besides, I'm assuming this place was another world.

It was a mystery to me whether the vegetation was the same as the ones on Earth.

"Either way, I have no choice but to eat insects……"

I watched a line of ants in front of me.

Although it was thanks to the centipede last night that I regained some physical strength, it doesn't mean that I have to eat more immediately.

But this body had insufficient nutrition in the first place.

I may not be able to move tomorrow if I pushed myself all day long.

I should, at least, learn how to start a fire.

So that I can grill and eat with a peace of mind some ants, cicadas, centipedes, and even some scorpions too.

Oh well, I did eat something raw while still wriggling yesterday.

I wonder how can I start a fire.

I know that frictional heat caused by rubbing two twigs will start fire……

Igniting a fire was a mystery to me, I can't even find some suitable twigs.

I feel that it's not a wise move to waste my physical strength and time if I can't do it.

It's probably better to search for a human dwelling.

"Oi kid, you over there. This is this one's territory. Leave at once."

I was called out from behind.

The voice seems to be commanding, but I'm certain it belongs to a human person.

The heavens haven't abandoned me yet!!

"Actually, I'm lost……"

When I looked back, there was a monster before my eyes.

The face and upper body looked like a hawk and it had a huge wing.
The lower part of the body had four legs, like a lion.

It was a Griffon.

The heavens seem to have abandoned me.

Griffon

Reincarnation.
It was a phenomenon in *fictions* in which it had the highest probability to occur when one was run over by a truck.
Fictions are made up stories, to put it bluntly, they are stories that didn't occur in real life.

Thus, reincarnation was a lie, it's impossible to occur in reality.
Yeah, it should be impossible.

"This is a dream. I'm sure, this must be just a dream. I'm sure I will be on a bed in a hospital when I wake up, or being ran over by the truck was a dream. Yeah, I'm sure of it. Humans just simply die so it's impossible."
I laid down on the ground while thinking so.
The night sky was full of stars and a huge moon.
So beautiful~ for a dream!

I closed my eyes.
I believed that when I wake up, all of this was just a dream in the end.

This was the reality after all!

I checked my face on the water surface under the bright morning sun and despaired.
What am I going to do now?
I have nothing to reply to that!

“However, the face is not that bad.”
What reflected in front of me was a young boy□ no, my face.

Emaciated, and dirty like a stray dog, but each part still looks good.
The color of his skin was generally known as olive color.

“Oh well, now that I am awake, there’s nothing to be done about it……”
To start with, I need to begin preparing the necessities to survive.
After gathering some information and if there was a way to return to Japan, I will return, if not I will have to live here.

I shall go with that objective for now.

But first I have to say one thing……

“My body needs some food.”

So I stood up.

I searched in the forest.

I thought the trees in the forest was really big, but now I understand.

It looked big because I shrank. Calling the tree huge was not really huge.

"Nevertheless, there is nothing here, in this forest."

There weren't any kinds of nuts or fruits at all.

The grass that I somehow ate was growing inside the forest… I'll hold back for now since I don't want to die.

Judging from the temperature I'm feeling, seems like it's summer.

There should be one thing I can eat duri

"Umm, I don't taste good! I'm only skin and bones. I only ate a centipede yesterday. So it's better if you sto□ stop!"

I backed off.

I was reincarnated with great pain, why do I have to go through so much effort to pick up my life back!

"This one is picky with food. Who would eat something disgusting like you bastard? Do you think this one is a fool?"

"It's□ it's not like that. Ahahahaha. In fact, I'm actually leaving now. Goodbye~"

I began to run at full speed. It seems like the other party doesn't want to eat me and just wants me out. Then I should be able to escape. Since it was not my intent to invade the territory or domain of that person(?).

woosh woosh woosh

I heard a noise of flapping wings.

Sands was flying everywhere, and I reflexively closed my eyes.

When I opened my eyes, the Griffon was in front of me.

Furthermore, it was angry and it's feather was ruffled.
Why!?

"Are you trying to tell me that this one's territory ends ahead? Everything inside the forest is my territory, a person cannot enter or leave. That was the pledge. Even so you bastard, are you still planning to acquire your food on this one's territory?"
"I'm sorry. My bearing was wrong for a bit. It is indeed still your grace's territory ahead, therefore……"
"Don't lie! The pledge between this one and your bastard people has been passed down for these past 200 years! Even little kids know it!"

Even if you said that, I don't know what I don't know.

The beast had a majestic appearance in spite of having a short fuse.

"Tell me a little more honest excuse. If you do so, this one will let you live."
The Griffon said so as it scowls at me. A chill ran up through my whole body.
This guy intends to kill me. Just because I'm an eyesore.

I don't have any excuses.

"That…… Actually, I was reincarnated."
"Haa? This one doesn't understand the meaning."
The expression of the Griffon changed. Its eyes were glittering and shining. I may actually die here.

"Well, you see, when I woke up I was already in the forest, I don't even know why I became a kid. This is the truth you know? Please believe me."
I knelt on the ground and begged. I want to be pardoned from dying on the second day because I was reincarnated with great pains.

"Hmm……"
Whether my desperate kneeling worked, I felt that the Griffon's

killing intent had subsided.

The eyes of the griffon shined red.

“Little one…. Is a Lost Person? I see. Then it is no wonder little one didn’t know. This one is sorry.”

Suddenly the Griffon’s killing intent disappeared completely.

I don’t understand it quite well, but I do somewhat understand.

“This one feel sorry for little one. Living from your hometown that you are familiar to such a remote place, oh well, there is no method to return. It is your responsibility to be liked by the young ones. If you want to blame someone, blame your own life.”

I didn’t quite understood it, but this fellow seems to know something about reincarnation.

“Umm…… What is a Lost Person?”

“Those are people from another world coming over to this world.”

“It’s not being born again?”

“Huh?”

The Griffon was puzzled as it didn’t understand the meaning of my question.

I explained what happened to my current body. The Griffon groaned.

“Hmm, this one dont know. This one have not heard such phenomenon. The Lost Person this one met a hundred years ago didn’t say they were reborn, but…… Well, is there such a thing like that?”

“Haa.”

“To begin with, the phenomenon is called Lost Person. Although you have been reborn to this extent, nothing strange had happened.”

I didn’t really understood it, but the Griffon started to arbitrarily understand it.

I cannot understand it at all.

It’s no use worrying now. I will probably have to steadily investigate it.

“By the way little one, you explained earlier that your soul was of an adult?”

“Yeah, it is. It’s difficult now, but what can I do?”

The griffon grinned at my question…… It was really visible.

“Instead of just ignoring it, this one request a job from the little one.”

understand this world's language.

If I calmly thought about it, there was now way that Japanese and this world's language will be the same. Such opportunity was not realistic.

Associating with them as a leader and living on this place will be difficult.

Wait a minute? How was I able to speak with the Griffon?

"This one apologize. I just remembered that a Lost Person are not able to speak the language of the land. This one forgot about it."

"Why can I speak with you then?"

"Because this one have *Divine Blessing of the Divine Word*. So it's only natural."

Divine blessing…… Some fantasy-like thing came out.

As expected for a Griffon. It did have mysterious power after all.

"But this is a problem. All right, this one will lend you a divine blessing for a while."

"…… You will lend it!?"

"Usually, it's impossible. However, this one has *Divine Blessing of Lending*."

As expected of you, Griffon-senpai!

Having a head of an eagle and a lower body of a lion was not just for show.

"But if I could speak with the children, wouldn't I be unable to speak with you?"

"Fool, this one cannot simply lend the precious divine blessing to the little one. I can only lend *Divine Blessing of Language*."

"How many divine blessings do you have?"

There were three mentioned in passing up to now.

Was there a special bargain sale for divine blessings?

“There are 12. Although, only a few of them are usable. *Divine Blessing of Language* is useless to this one, the problem is this one’s vocal chord.”

Either way, he had too many, doesn’t it?

This guy, he is an *unimaginable* cheat beast. Or was this just average specs for a Griffon? To begin with, including this one, how many Griffon are there?

Oh well, it doesn’t matter.

“That being the case now, once again, treat me well.”

A foreign language naturally came forth from my mouth.

This is certainly convenient. With this, I don’t need to study English, doesn’t it?

“Yes…… Please treat us also well…… Oniichan.”

A brown haired girl replied.

Oniichan…… That really sounds good.

“You, tell me your name!”

A seemingly brazen brat asked me.

“Before you ask for my name, you should tell first.”

I replied with a cliche phrase and the kid gave his name with a verbal smackdown.

“It’s Ron. Until now, I’m the leader. See, I gave my name! Now tell me your name!”

“My name is……”

I was about to say it when I realized.

What should I name myself?

Should I give my Japanese name? But I’m not Japanese anymore. It just doesn’t feel right if I used my Japanese name.

No, my name does not matter but……

“My name for this place, what should you think is good?”

I asked the Griffon.

“How about ***Almis***?”

“What does that mean?”

“There is no particular meaning. This one only thought it sounds good.”

I see.

But perhaps even so, what was supplied to me was good because it was spoken in this world without any meaning to it.

“Then I am Almis. Please treat me well, Ron-kun.”

I stretched out my hand. Ron-kun just looked the other way.

Why was it?

“How old are you?”

“20 years old.”

“That’s a lie!!”

Even so, that was the truth but……

I looked towards the Griffon. Please, I beg you to tell them.

“What this little one is saying was true. It looks to me little one became a kid before he knew it, right?”

“Yeah! …… It is what the Griffon had said……”

Ron-kun suddenly became meek.

He then glared at me and declared,

“I don’t recognize you as our leader yet!!”

Was that so?

Even so, I understand where he is coming from. A new kid suddenly appeared and became a leader.

“Forgive us. Ron-kun doesn’t mean any ill-will. He is just somewhat stupid……”

The girl who called me oniichan a while ago covered up for Ron.

“What’s you name?”

“I am Soyon. Ron-kun is my childhood friend……”

I see. Childhood friend huh.

Ron-kun, you are one lucky bastard for having a pretty childhood friend.

“Oi! Who are you calling stupid”

“But that is the truth.”
“You’re stupid for calling me stupid!”
“Then you’re stupid too, Ron-kun.”
“”Stupid stupid stupid stupid stupid stupid stupid!!””

They suddenly began to quarrel
More like a lover’s quarrel.

Looking at the interaction between the two, the other children were laughing too.

It seems to be quite a lively bunch.

Looking from the appearance at least.
Speaking accurately, they can’t be lively if they don’t act lively.
That’s right.
Because they were deceived by their parents, by leading them deep into this forest and abandoned them.
It’s only expected for them to have some psychological shock.
Who among the children will still believe in their parents?

They are desperately trying to forget it.

How long did Ron-kun desperately shouldered being a leader?

The reason Soyon-chan welcomed me was not to because she had confidence in me, but probably because it was to lessen the burden of Ron-kun.

The reason the two were bickering was to brighten up everyone around us now.
I will probably do something idiotic like this one every day.
I’m just not sure whether they are doing this intentionally or unintentionally.
However, either way, it was abnormal for a child that they must do such thing.

“I can absolutely help them,”
I muttered.

"What is this……"
"Little one will understand once you see it. It's the same race as the little one."

That guy took me to a nearby cave.
Upon entering, I saw 30 human children.
Five of them are still toddlers. 20 of them are between ages 7 – 9 years old. And the remaining 5 are about the same age as the current me.

"Why are the children became like this?"
"You know, humans have recently been coming to abandon their children on this one's forest."

I see. It probably means there was a famine.
I thought because they are starving, the parents just abandoned them in the forest.

"So, I will take care of the children?"
"It is as the little one said. This will make the discussion move quickly."
The Griffon nods in a big way.
I do not dislike children. Rather, I like them very much.
I can greatly sympathize with them who had been left by their parents since I also grew up in an orphanage. Therefore, I don't have any problem with helping them.
But……

"There is nothing to eat and can they even speak?"
"Within three years, young one must bring in food. Young one must do something within three years."
This was unexpected……
It's probably because I said that I even ate an insect.
This guy, was he actually a good guy?

"Why don't you help them?"
"If a starving puppy approached and clings, will little one pick it

up? After that, will little one irresponsibly abandon them? Picking them up is akin to being responsible for them. That's how it is."

I see.

He certainly was aware that it was bad.

Although he had the capacity to help them, they will just starve if he doesn't use that capacity.

It was not good for that guy's mental well-being.

However, the Griffon was different from a human.

This guy probably doesn't know how to raise a human.

Therefore, that guy was troubled.

The discussion had been settled.

I have to introduce myself to the children first.

"That being the case, I am now your leader! Please treat me well."

When I said so……

"△○X●■◇○"

They responded in a language from a universe I didn't know.

This was bad news.

I don't

strong＞　“…… On the other had, there is only agriculture to obtain a semblance of a stable food supply.”

Tetora seems to agree to my opinion.

“What do you think, Gram?”

“Eh!? Well, that…… I don’t know.”

Gram had a scared expression.

Oh well, it’s only natural he doesn’t know. He was only a kid after all.

“So, how are we going to cultivate the land?”

“We need to buy some iron farming tools. If we have that I think it will considerably be easy.”

“Buy? What do you mean by *buy*?”

Ah…… They don’t know currency. Then it’s the wrong word to use.

“It means we have to trade something for it.”

“If there was something to trade for iron farming tools, it would have been on my stomach a long time ago. You’re an idiot.”

Roswald-kun, that was a harsh comment coming from you. Oi, only someone stupid can call someone stupid.

“There is something we can use to trade. Unfortunately, you can’t eat it.”

The five people were at once dumbstruck at my words. How cute.

“Hey, I have brought it.”

I heard the Griffon’s voice. It seems it was able to bring the objective.

“Thank you very much. With this, we’ll manage somehow.”

I received a huge amount of swords and spears from the Griffon. 70% are made of Iron, and 30% are made from bronze.

All of these weapons came from the brave people from all over trying to beat the Griffon. These have been rusted from exposure,

but these are still valuable metals.

“I don’t really mind. These tusks and nails are unnecessary for this one. It doesn’t easily return to the ground, and I’m troubled that these were stinking the place. Quickly dispose of these things. Now then, there is still a huge amount remaining.”

The Griffon flew away as it said so.

The human sense of value was totally different from a beast.

“Are□ are we going to war?”

“This is different.”

I rebuked Gram-kun’s remark. I mean, Gram-kun, your imagination was somewhat radical.

In spite of being a coward.

“Surely this will make us powerful, but there is no way a child can beat an adult. Even if a child has a weapon to swing around, they can still be defeated by an adult barehanded.”

It’s clearly evident who’s going to win a match between an adult and a child. Don’t act so rashly. Even if you are at the death’s door from starvation.

“Are we trading it for iron farming tools?”

“It is as you said, Tetora-chan!”

I was going to pat Tetora’s head but she dodged. Oniisan was sad by that.

“Shouldn’t we trade it for food?”

Tetora-chan answered Ron-kun’s question.

“If you only buy food. We can’t secure a stable food supply.”

“Ah, is that so?”

Ron-kun quickly backed out. Ron-kun being obedient was a good Ron-kun.

“But how can we easily dig up the soil with only iron farming tools? The soil here is terribly hard.”

Tetora-chan said it.

“We will have to look for a place with soft soil. Worst case, we will have to employ adults. But it might be futile as they may not be willing to help us base on the condition we set.”

Using Griffon-sama's authority would be great.
Even so, this will be only used as a last resort.

There are other ways for the Griffon itself to help me.
Trading the iron swords for food would only delay the inevitable.

For now, the discussion has been settled to exchange these weapons for farming tools as the plan.

There were no objections.
Oh well, I would be troubled if there were objection as I don't have an alternative plan.

"Now the problem is where to trade these…… Is there anyone who knows the geography around here?"
I looked at Ron-kun as I said it. Ron-kun shakes his head at a tremendous speed.
"It's impossible. I don't know any villages nearby. Soyon?"
"I'm sorry…… I don't know either."

"Roswald-kun?"
"Eh!? I…… That…… I know but I can't really say……"
"In other words, you don't know. Gram-kun?
"I□, I□, I□, I□, I'm sorry……"

Oh well, it can't be helped. Their culture level is on a level that doesn't know currency. It was unlikely for a farmers child to know what's outside of their village……

"Tetora-chan?"
"I know."
I guess that's it…… Eh!?

"You know?"
"A little."
And so Tetora-chan told me the area around the forest.

It seems the name of the forest was Romano Forest.
On the east side of the forest, there was a country which was ruled by King Rosaith. A large country on the northwest was ruled

by King Gilberd. A large country on the northeast was ruled by King Domorgal. And to the north of the country by King Gilberd and King Domorgal, was the country ruled by King Faludam.

"The country ruled by King Rosaith is not that big. It doesn't have a proper iron farming tools, and they don't have many iron weapons. I think there would be iron farming tools in the country ruled by King Domorugal and King Gilberd because they are quite big countries. Because there is famine currently, it was an excuse for both the country of King Gilberd and King Domorgal to wage war against the country of King Faludam."

"I see. In other words, now is the best timing. On the contrary, if we don't go quickly, those farming tools will be melted down and converted to weapons. We must hurry."

Why do you know so much? I want to hear where you came from but now was not the time. It would be rude if I poke while not that close to her. If we can be on a more friendly terms then it would be all right.

"Since I'm the adult……"

Tetora-chan stared at me and said,

"Taking only all the weapons, How are we going to do it?

Hmm, she has a point. An adult will not directly speak to a child immediately. It's different during peacetime, but even more so, it's now an emergency. It's important to win the war, but it's also equally important for the next harvest to be abundant. They won't easily trade the iron farming tools.

"Don't worry, I have thought of it properly. I will use this thing."

I show to the five of them a big feather. It was a beautiful shiny gold feather.

"Tha□, isn't that from Griffon-sama?"

Gram's voice was trembling.

"Yo□, you, did you stole it!"

Roswald shouted.

It's rude to say I stole it. I only picked up what fell.

"What are you going to do with it?"

Soyon tilts her head in confusion as she asked. Soyon-chan, you're the best for being obedient and cute.

"We would show this to them as messengers of Griffon-sama!! It won't be a problem then, don't you agree?"

"Wouldn't the wrath of heaven descend upon us?"

Ron-kun asked with anxiety written all over his face.

Although Griffon was certainly magnificent, it was not a god. The wrath of heaven will not befall unto us. At least, I thought so.

But it seems the children thought differently. Except Tetora-chan, all four of them was very anxious.

There was a difference on the sense of values between me and them due to a gap in knowledge.

"I asked for permission."

When I said so, the four of them showed an expression of relief.

The Griffon was certainly scary, but I felt that it wasn't an existence to be afraid that much.

Whether it was this or that, it's still troublesome.

"Well then, we have to leave soon. For now, we will trade 10 iron swords and 6 bronze swords from this place. It would be troublesome in the case of emergency if we trade all of it now."

For now, we will trade just this much.

It's really important to have farming tools immediately, but there was one more important thing.

"It would be dangerous for all of us to go. So I want one person to go with me!"

Both Gram and Roswald raised their hands when I said so.

"Alright, let's go Tetora-chan!"

I grabbed Tetora-chan's hand. Tetora-chan looked puzzled.

"I didn't raise my hand."

"What are you saying? Other than you, there's no one here who knows the surrounding geography. You are forced to join!"

When I said so, Tetora-chan heaved a big sigh.

The self -introduction was over.

All of them were abandoned one way or another, but it was definitely their parents that abandoned them.

They came from all over the place.
Seems like I have made some friends these past several days. In other words, there was space for me to be close to them. It was a total relief.

The gender ratio here was fifty-fifty.
Normally, girls take more precedence, but somehow those weren't followed since it was fifty-fifty.
Even so, it does not matter now.

For now, let me only introduce five most important people.

Ron-kun. 12 years old. The oldest among them. Taller than the current me. He was slightly contentious, but he had a sense of responsibility.

Soyon-chan. 12 years old. Born from the same village as Ron-kun. Very cute. Will probably be Ron-kun's wife in the future. Always speaks respectfully to me.
Ron has his uses, but he has the biggest attitude among the children. I felt lonely by how close they really are.

Roswald-kun. 11 years old. He was the number two guy until I came. He was more high-handed than Ron-kun. He doesn't really mind me.

Tetora-chan. 10 years old. Taciturn. Basically doesn't speak.

Gram-kun. 10 years old. Petite and timid.

These five people are the central figures of this group.

“Still, I cannot think of anything other than working on a farm.”

I spoke in front of these 5 people about my plan.

Frankly speaking, it’s meaningless to inquire the opinion of a kid, it would be better to start it by myself without considering their opinion.

I was just a stranger who acted along the flow.

Still, declining them just because they are 10 years younger than me was out of the question.

“But you know, isn’t working on the field extremely hard? How are we going to do it?”

That was Ron-kun’s opinion.

I totally agree with him.

The uncultivated land was extremely hard to begin with. Because the roots of vegetation are stretched all around, removing them would be hard work.

To all of the children, it’s on a level that would be fatal.

Besides, among the children that can be useful, there are only six of us including me that are 10 years or older.

This would be reckless.

But it’s better than not doing anything.

“It’s impossible I tell you. Let’s just stop.”

Roswald made the remark indifferently while stretching out his legs.

And then stared at me.

“I’m not convinced that what this guy had said is good. Isn’t that right, Tetora?

<

“We would like to trade these.”

The village chief looks suspicious from my words.

They will be suspicious to a child who suddenly identified himself as a messenger of the Griffon and wants to trade iron and bronze swords for farming tools.

I can understand their feeling.

The village chief looked at the swords and the Griffon's feather alternately.

He seems to be troubled.

"Village Chief! I brought the blacksmith!"

Two guys ran towards us.

One of them began to examine the swords closely.

The man who I believed to be the blacksmith showed a surprising color on his face.

These swords were all brought by people to instantly defeat the Griffon. It was rusted but it was still excellent swords.

Will it be able to trade for farming tools? Will it be a cheap trade?

"What do you want?"

"Let me see, 10 plows, three axes, and probably around eight sickles is what I wanted to trade."

Even though they are called iron farming tools, it's only the tip where iron was used. Compared to the iron sword that we brought, aside from the handle, everything was made of iron.

We can probably demand more from the amount of iron, but we are just kids here.

We can only demand just below of what I really wanted.

As a result of having been completely troubled, he agreed with the trade.

Even so, it was a good trade because all the iron farming tools will be traded for weapons when the war situation turns for the worst. For that place too.

We hinted that we might come for another trade sometime later and left the place.

hen it will change its mind, and the lives of 30 people are on the line. I have no choice but to get on.

I climbed up at the back of the Griffon. I will have to change my evaluation of how big it is now that I have climbed this guy.
If I was appetizing, it would probably only take one gulp to eat me……

“Let’s go!”
“Uhii!”
A weird voice came out of my mouth.
The area around my abdomen was floating.
I don’t like riding roller coasters……

The Griffon steadily increased its altitude without paying attention to me.

I suddenly looked downwards.
“Uwaaaaaaaaaa!!”
“Hey, don’t be noisy. And don’t choke me!”
I reflexively strengthen my hold around the Griffon’s neck.
Flying without a lifeline was scary.
My teeth spontaneously made a clattering sound.

“…… What are we going to do it if I start leaking?”
“I will push you off.”

The Griffon suddenly stopped after such discussion.

“If this one is not mistaken, it was around this area…… there it is. Rejoice.”
I looked down timidly.
After all, I felt that my internal organs were floating.

But, feeling scared was worth it.
There were unnaturally few trees, and those ruins certainly looked like a house.

“We’re going down!”
“Wai□, too fast. Too fast!!!”
I screamed to the top of my lungs.

Agriculture and Livestock

Cultivating or tilling the land.
Easy to say, but that work dreadfully required much effort.

First we had to cut the trees, then clear out the grass, and then dig up the hard soil and mix it with a large amount of roots that was left.
This way, the birth of the field would be established.

But the field was not the only thing necessary for the plants. Water would be also important.
In other words, I must draw water from the river somewhere.
Oh well, I would be using a land that would be near a river because I don’t want to do something so troublesome.

This was just an amateur way of thinking, but won’t we be able to do something like that in one year?
I mean I would be distraught if I can’t make them do it.

There was hunting, but I estimate it would be hard and difficult to feed 30 people with just hunting.
Conversely, agriculture alone would also be difficult.

There would be a need to do both.

But let’s get to the main aim first of where to till a land.
I don’t know what kind of land would be suitable for farming. I will even have to get permission from the Griffon if I can cut the trees on this forest.
It would be necessary to look for some other place if I can’t get

permission.

“That’s how it is, what do you think?”

“This one doesn’t particularly mind it. This one’s territory is deep in the forest. As long you don’t damage that place, you can cut and burn the trees as you like.”

Surprisingly, I easily got permission. It’s a bit anticlimactic.

“Everyone of you really likes to scratch the land. This one won’t do such tedious things. Ah, now that I thought about it……”

“What, did you remember something?”

“If this one was not mistaken, humans made a village on this forest 30 years ago. It seems to have been abandoned because a plague was spreading. Which reminds me, those bastards said it was my curse. That was completely vexing.”

The Griffon started to grumble and complain.

But it’s really important to me if that wasn’t the reason the village was deserted.

“If there was such a convenient place, then I have to go there first! So, where is that place?”

“Hmm…… This one is not really sure as the memory is quite old. Also, I don’t have any interest in those things. For now, hop on. You will probably discover it from the sky. Just give up if little one can’t discover it.”

The Griffon showed his back to me as it said so.

Well, riding it……

I will die if I fall.

“Hurry up.”

“I understand.”

Nonetheless, I don’t know w

“Hmm. Still, the forest swallowed this place…… Oh well, isn’t this better than starting from the scratch?”

“Little one is right.”

The ruined village was on a considerably good location than I previously thought.

A river runs through the center of the village, with this, obtaining water would be easy.

Most pit-house were run-down, but there still seems some houses that will be usable if repaired.

As expected, weeds cover the fields, but it won't be a problem if it was dug up. At least, it would be much easier from making it from scratch.

As for the fundamental problem of whether farming would be possible with only the strength of a child, I think it would be possible.

Japan's Handenshuujunohou would distribute lands to boys and girls aged 6 years or older. I'm certain that an area of 20 ares was written on the textbook.

I'm certain that a yield of one koku (amount of rice an adult male will eat in a year) would need one-tenth of a hectare (around 10 ares).

If a six-year-old child from ancient Japan can plow 20 ares of land, we should be able to do it too.

Well, it might have been the parents that plowed it……

Still, each of them might be able to plow around one-third by themselves. It shouldn't be possible for both parents to plow all the allotted farmlands if they had many children.

There would also be iron farming tools that an ancient farmer wouldn't have.

Besides, I could probably acquire an ox or a horse later and let them plow the fields.

We can probably do it.

If we can't do it, I'll just have the Griffon help us. It would be very easy for this guy to dig up the field.

"This is great, thank you very much. With this, we won't have to cultivate the land from scratch."

"But it doesn't mean this one cultivated it."

“But isn’t it because of you that the people left this place?”

It was you my gracious Griffon. Without you, everything here wouldn’t have happened. Well, since it was this fellow who asked for my help, it is only natural for him to cooperate.

By the way, can I ask one question?
“What is it?”
“A famine had occurred, right? Did you know what caused it?”

That question had bugged me for so long.
I only knew there was famine because of what Tetora-chan told me, but there are many reasons for famine to occur.

Crop disease, pest damage by something like a locust outbreak, damaged dealt directly by storms, or crop failure due to climate.

I would make the same mistake if I start farming without understanding the reason.

It would be slightly insensitive to ask the children, so I tried asking the Griffon.

“From what the children told this one, it was probably crop disease.”
“Which crop got infected by the disease?”
“All of it.”
“Huh!?”

A disease that killed all crops? What the□ that would be invincible.

“Did you just said everything? Everything from wheat to fruits?”
“It is as you said.”

What the hell was that?
I would still understand it if it was a disease that affects similar crops like wheat and barley, but for another person to say that wheat and grape was affected by the same disease?

That's like having a disease that can affect both human and a fish.

"This one too had doubt it and tried to consider something else. Will you listen?"
"Yes please."
"This one think it's a curse."

Hearing it was waste of time……

"Why is little one looking at me like that? Curses are real."
"Do you have evidence?"
"This one had a conversation with master."
I wasn't able to say anything back when I heard it.
Oh well, if reincarnation to the otherworld and divine blessing exists, there will certainly be one or two curses, it may not be even strange if I came across it.
But who cast the curse?

"Doesn't little one comes from a species that loves to war among itself? Isn't it ridiculous for one group to weaken the power of another group?"
"Yup, what you had said was correct, however…"

I doubt there'd be anything that would make them happier than a curse that could weaken enemy nations from afar. If there really was such a curse, it'd be a really convenient tool.

"For a curse to affect a really wide area, it probably meant there is a talented practitioner."
"Are you impressed with it? Wouldn't working on this farm meaningless if this was reduced to nothing by the curse again?"
"Huh? It's probably going to be all right. Because the humans are cowards. I don't think the curse was able to spread to this one's territory and the territory near the forest. The curse cannot also be cast multiple times in succession."

Is it really like that……?
This fellow knows more about the situation of this world than me.

If it says it's all right then it's probably all right. Probably.

"Well then, are we going to gather the children here now?"
"About that, it's better for them to move out tomorrow. You won't have enough daylight if you do it now."

The Griffon said so while looking at the sun.
Right now, the sun was just past the zenith.
It was probably around 2 PM.

There was a considerable distance to the cave located south of here.
It would be different if it was an adult's leg, but these are children's legs. The day was coming to an end.
It would only take an instant if we ride the Griffon, but it would probably not like such heavy work.
And the children too will decline to ride it.

"Well then, hop on."
"Sure…… Do I have to really get back on……?"

I went back to the cave screaming.

"This is it, this is our new home."
"Ooooo!!"
The children shouted with joy.

"So, leader. What are we doing first?"
Ron-kun said.
"Leader?"
"It□, it doesn't particularly mean that I completely recognize you. Just a little. I will only recognize you a little!"
"Ron-kun…… Be more honest with yourself."
Ron-kun and Soyon-chan began to quarrel in front of me.

It's so fun to watch. But I, I haven't shown any results yet. What is so good with just converting iron swords with iron farming tools?

While thinking such things, Tetora-chan whispered into my ear.

"Before you came, the group was all worn out. When someone voiced an opinion, they are rebuked by dissenting opinions but the dissenters don't have an alternative plan. When a small child wants motherly affection and they throw tantrums and starts to cry, Ron and Oswald start to fight. That is, you have carried us all the way to where we are now."

"Rather than feeling relieved, I feel sorrier for what happened to all of you before."

I had a strained smile. I thought it was something anyone could do.

However, it was only possible on an adult level. A child can't do it.

My idea about trading the iron swords was just common sense thinking, but Ron-kun seems to think it was a fantastic idea.

"You're giving me too much credit. It was thanks to the Griffon that this village got abandoned."

I mumbled.

"So, what are we going to grow?"

Roswald-kun asked me while scowling. Why is this child so overbearing……?

How can a kid be like this?

"I plan to do crop rotation farming."

"Crop rotation? Is that delicious?"

No, it's not delicious, probably.

"Explaining it roughly, we will grow Barley (Spring Planting) → Clover → Wheat (Autumn Planting) → Turnip, in this order for four years."

Since the children said this season was now for harvesting wheat, we will, unfortunately, do the wheat next year.

The current season was the season to plant turnips.

“Why are you doing it in a tedious way?”

“Don’t you know that growing the same crop on the field for a long time will worsen the harvest? Clovers are really effective in revitalizing the field. This way we can grow crops all year round.”

I don’t know the exact details myself, but…

Because I learned it from history and geography, it’s likely my only small advantage from these children that grew up in a farming village.

I was also doing a little farming in the kitchen garden of the orphanage.

Roswald-kun was still tilting his head in puzzlement. It was an expression that shows he doesn’t understand at all. But I don’t have the confidence to fully explain it, so I have no choice but to let them experience it.

“Really, are we growing something else?”

“Probably something like grapes or olives. That is if it’s possible.”

I answered Gram-kun’s question.

Piecing together the information I got from the children, it seems that the climate around this area was like Mediterranean climate.

Therefore, I can’t honestly say that if Norfolk Four Course Method would be suitable. Fortunately, it’s still feasible because there was a river nearby.

That would be really suitable to grapes and olives. However, it takes time for the grapes and olives to mature, and I still doubt whether I can satisfy the appetite of 30 kids.

While I’m on that subject, a slope with good drainage was suitable for growing grapes and olives. But the village is on a flat ground.

Since I don’t think I can grow those on a flat land, I will just have to do it in the future.

“Well then, let’s immediately decide on a plan……”

All at once, the children looked at me.

“Shall we repair the house first?”
I said it while pointing at the ruined pit-house.

ng with your back?
For now, I had the talented Gram show me the proper motion.

With his guidance, I was able to easily pull the string all the way back.
However, I still wasn't able to hit.

Oh well, I will just entrust the hunting to Gram-kun.

"After three years we will lose all support from the Griffon. Then we won't be able to eat meat. It will now depend on your skill whether we can eat meat. So do your best!"
I said so as I pat Gram-kun's shoulder.
Gram-kun nods with a nervous expression.

"But isn't there only one bow? It will be too hard for Gram alone. We must get more."
"Easy now, don't panic. I too have thought about it. First of all, I want you all to look at this."
"What is that? A pouch?"
"It's a hand sling!"
That Griffon had caught something like a rabbit for us. I peeled off that rabbit's skin and used it to make this.
The structure was simple, I still struggled to build it.

"You use it this way."
I set the stone into the sling and I swung my arm in a large motion.
The stone flew quite far away.

"If we practice, we might be able to reach a point where we can get some birds. Above all, it's easy to make. I already have three. We can quickly equip everyone if you help me."
The children badgered me to let them try it.
Well〜, it's tough being the cool guy.

I stood 10 meters away from the wooden board.
I raised the bow while staring intently at the board.
Pulled the arrow all the way, aimed carefully, and fired off.

The arrow passes cleanly beside the board and disappeared into the woods.

……

“Leader is crap at this. That’s already the 10th time.”
“Yo□you’re noisy! Then why don’t you do it!?”
I pushed the bow to Ron-kun.

Archery was very difficult.
I can’t draw the bow to its limit without putting too much effort since the bowstring were stiff.
The aim was off if I don’t hold it steady.

I’m not that shitty, archery was just that difficult!

Ron-kun pulled the arrow all the way and clearly aimed.
And he shoots.

The arrow sank into the ground just right before the board.

“It seems’s Ron-kun can’t do it too. Then we can’t possibly hunt with this. What shall we do? This is worrisome.”
“Don’t say it with such a gleeful face! You’re so childish!!”
“But I’m a kid you know?”
“You have a mind of an adult!!’
Annoying kid. The mind and body are two separate things!!

When Ron-kun and I were arguing, Gram-kun took the bow away

from us.
He then silently pulled an arrow and shoots.
The arrow hits the board magnificently.

"No way!!"
"It's suspicious that Gram can do it!!"
"How, how can you both say that……"
It was just a fluke. It must be a fluke.
It's impossible for Gram-kun, who obviously has slow reflexes, to hit anything.

"Try it once more."
"Y□yes."
Gram nodded and nocked the arrow again.
The arrow simply hit the board.

It doesn't seem to be a fluke……

"Even though I felt that the bowstring was very stiff, you were able to simply pull it all the way. And I can't even graze the board yet you simply hit it…… Tell me honestly, are your reflexes that good?"
"Eh? Y□yes…… Maybe……"
What's *maybe* about that? At least, be more confident.

"Tell me your secret."
"Well…… You don't use your arm for the bow, you use your back muscles to pull the string."
Pulli

"Woohoo, I got a catch!! Look! It is pretty big……"
I looked what was near Ron's foot.
There were five fishes that he caught, bigger than the fish that I caught……

"What the hell!"

“Leader is terribly awful at this. Terribly.”
“Don’t say it twice!!”
My heart can’t take this!

“We only have two fishing poles, but the leader doesn’t need one, it’s better to give it to another person.”
Grrrrrrrrrr.
It was a logical choice……

However, fishing only won’t fill our stomachs.
Well, it’s not that important.
And no, I am not annoyed!

“Can’t be helped, all right, I’ll give it to Soyon-chan then. You both can look forward to a good lovey-dovey fishing date .”
“Wha□! What are you talking about leader!? I don’t think Soyon-chan like that.”
Ron-kun’s face was bright red.
Great, it’s my win.

I gloated that I had the upper hand.

“This herb is edible. That berry will give you diarrhea, but you can remove the toxins if you soak it on water.”
“As expected from you Griffon-sama. By the way, does Griffon-sama eat anything other than meat?
“Of course, I do occasionally. Sometimes this one want’s to eat some herbs.”
As expected for a Griffon.
It’s eating healthy.
I mean, it was not strange for it to eat some fruits since it has the upper body of a bird.
No, would a bird still be a bird even though it’s a bird of prey?

Now that I think about it, what would be the Griffon’s classification? Would it be a mammal or a bird?

Does it matter?

“Why is the little one asking all about this? Aren’t you already doing farming?”

“Because agriculture can severely change the environment. And for me personally, I’m not really well informed about agriculture. It’s possible that I might fail. Therefore, I need an insurance.”

Those children were abandoned because a famine occurred.

I’m not fully convinced that a similar thing will not happen in our fields.

“Hmm, I see. Well then, I’ll be going back to my territory soon. This one is getting sleepy.”

The Griffon said so and flapped its wings.

The Griffon quickly flew away.

“I should also go back soon.”

It was probably around the time that I was going back to the village.

I heard someone screamed.

That was Roswald-kun’s voice!!

I started to run.

I put my hand on the handle of the iron sword which I brought for protection.

Any animal’s face was a weak point.

It will probably run away if I hit their face.

If ever, it will only just get angry to me…… At least, it might give a chance for Roswald-kun to run away. Since my life was supposed to have been snuffed out anyway.

I was running when I heard multiple voices carried by the wind.

“Hey, don’t run stupid brat!”

“Stop it!! It’s no use kidnapping me. I was already abandoned by my parents! My parents won’t be able to give you food!!”

“You’re so stupid! I already know it. You have lots of iron swords, right?”

The opponent was a human!
Damn, was it a mistake to show off those iron swords?

However, they are weaker than wolves or bears.
I felt a bit of relief.

It's time for the kendo that I learned from the director of the orphanage to be useful.

A man and Roswald-kun entered my field of vision. Thank god. Roswald-kun was safe. And the man was alone.
Furthermore, his back was facing me so I can take him down.

I took out the hand sling. Roswald-kun will be safe since he would be protected by the man's back. I can throw without worries.

The stone that was let loose by the sling had splendidly hit the man's head.
"Ouch!"
The man held his head, releasing Roswald-kun.

"Roswald-kun!! Now! Before it's too late!"
When I said so, Roswald-kun ran to me.

Now then, we must escape quickly.

"Wait! Stupid brat!!"
This is bad, he was catching up.

The stride of a child can't keep up with that of an adult in the first place.
The distance will shorten quickly.

"Roswald-kun, run away without me! I will hold that guy here."
"Bu□but……"

“Do it quickly!!”

When I shouted at him, Roswald-kun ran away at full speed. And with that, it’s okay now.

“Hoo, you’re stalling for time so your friend can get away? That makes me cry. At any rate, you have such a gorgeously cute face.”

The man with a wooden rod on his hand was smirking.

The wooden rod was considerably thick. Depending on where I’m hit, I’m going to be instantly killed.

“Tell me one thing. What is your purpose?”

“I can get iron swords from you, twerp.”

“After that?”

“I will trade the iron sword for food. I really do not want to work in the field, so I’m going to pick up some slaves. But now I will have to change my plans because of you.”

“Really, that is certainly a relief.”

“Relief?”

“You’re an idiot, someone called a trash!”

I pulled out my iron sword and quickly got close to the man.

The man was about to defend himself with the wooden rod, but it was too late.

My iron sword slashed the flesh of the man together with the wooden rod.

“Gyaaaaa!!”

“Die!!”

I raised my sword once again and stabbed his heart.

Fresh blood burst out.

“Thank god he was careless.”

He was fighting with poor physique. A tall opponent looking down on me just because he thinks he can overpower me.

Considering that the difference in swordsmanship technique and the quality of the weapon between him and I was worlds apart.

Yet this guy was careless.

It didn't change even if an amateur was able to close the gap in no time.
Actually, the murderer who caused the murder was not a master in martial arts.
Only a person who stabbed an enemy that won.

"There was no other way. My ass will be violated if I left it be. There was also a possibility of starving if my sword was taken. Lots of adults may come if the location of our village will be known. It was necessary to kill you here. I had no choice."

I justified myself. I was right. There was no other choice but to do that.

I looked down at the body.
After that, intense nausea surged from my body.

And I vomited.
Things that were on my stomach was thrown out.

I don't particularly sympathize with this guy. It's only natural that such garbage must die.
I only felt sick because I did something I'm not accustomed to.

"Leader!! Are you okay!?"
I heard Ron-kun's voice.
There were children with an iron sword before me.

Roswald-kun seems to be fine too.

"I'm okay. I'm alright."
Soon after I finished speaking, I fainted.

I don't know my parent's faces.

My guardians were the teachers at the orphanage.

Occasionally, when I see a child who cries because they want to see their parents, I felt lonely.
It's not that I want to meet them.

Why would my parents abandon me?

Was it economical not raising me?
Or was my mother a minor?
Was I a child of someone that was raped?

Either way, the excuse I made when I killed the man was probably the same when they abandoned me.
After all, a child of a frog will still be a frog.

"Uuh…… Where am I?"
"!!! Almis is awake!!"
I heard Tetora-chan's loud voice.
What's happening? It's so noisy. Just let me sleep a bit more.

The children gathered around while making a rustling sound.
"What is it? You're all panicking."
"Leader was asleep for three days."
Three days?
Why did I sleep so much……

Ah, I see. It's because I killed a person.
And so I fainted, huh?

Even though I remembered it, I didn't feel nauseous.
Three days, It might have been enough to restore my mind.

"Nii-san! Are you alright?"

Roswald-kun looked into my face.
Nii-san huh…… Sounds good.

“I’m fine, thank you. I’m sorry for making you worry.”
I patted Roswald-kun’s head.

Roswald-kun jumped into my chest while crying.
“I was so worried about you! I think it’s my fault if Nii-san died……So!!”
“I’m really sorry. Because I only did something I wasn’t accustomed to, I was tired. I can probably start working today.”

I continued patting Roswald-kun’s head.

If possible, I want them to call me father……

Chapter 7

/> “Isn’t it little one’s body? If you don’t understand it, how would I be able to understand it? Oh well, if I presume an answer, it seems to be a divine blessing. If it’s a miracle from the old days, it will always be a divine blessing.”

If it’s a miracle…… that’s an appropriate way to call divine blessings.

“Isn’t little one a Lost Person? Then it’s only natural you would be holding to at least one divine blessing. This one had met all the Lost People, and all of them have a divine blessing. Still, this is surprising. I thought that since you were reincarnated, your divine blessing should be something related to your soul but…… a physical ability type, huh? Well, it doesn’t matter when it comes to divine blessings.”

“Does that mean I can have multiple divine blessings?”

I don’t understand well how rare are divine blessings, but the Griffon in front of me seems to hold several divine blessings. So then, it wouldn’t be strange that I will have multiple divine blessings, right?

“Divine blessing holders are divided into two types. Single Divine Blessing holder, and Multiple Divine Blessing holder. Never seen anyone that was able to hold more than two or three divine blessings. Other than little one’s herculean strength, I don’t sense any other divine blessing. So your assumption is impossible.”

Damn, that’s not what I want to hear.

I don’t particularly like to be lumped together with those cheat-type bastards. It would defeat the purpose of making an effort.

I’m not disappointed at all!

Haa……

“Are you done with what you want to say?”

“Yeah. I failed to fully understand it, but I have to reflect on this alone.”

I left the den of the Griffon.

"And that's what had happened."

"That was tough. Well, you don't have to really worry about it. It's not only humans that kill their fellow species. Besides, human life is similar to the ants. Maybe it'll bother you less if you just think of it just like normal food."

"I understand what you are saying but…… Humans are not easily comprehensible."

I didn't particularly think that I feel sorry for that man, I didn't even felt any regret killing him.

Given a similar situation again, I would probably kill him again in the end.

However, there was an unspeakable discomfort.

Was this the result of the so-called moral compass?

"Hmm, little one will be fine. Killing the same species and not getting any discomfort would be an aberrant. A child raised by an aberrant would be an aberrant. However, don't lose your way, because it would be such a waste."

The Griffon snorted as it said that.

"By the way, did you only come to report such things?"

"No, not exactly…… I want you to take a quick look at this."

I showed it a wooden branch that I brought.

The thick branch was as big as an adult's arm.

I snapped it in two in front of the Griffon.

"So what?"

"Can't you see it's really strange? How can a 10-year-old kid have a herculean strength!!"

"Really? But this one have seen a certain clan, which was only a human, that was able cut down a tree with one hand."

“There’s absolutely no way that kind of person existed.”

Isn’t that some kind of an orc or a troll?

However, I don’t know whether an orc or a troll existed on this world.

“Please be assured, those guys have left this land 3000 years ago. It seems there was one to the north and another to the west.”

“Then it’s a relief.”

If those guys come over, no matter how much I thought about it, I don’t feel courageous enough to win.

“So, did you just come to show off your marvelous strength?”

“No, it’s not like that. I came to ask why I suddenly have herculean strength.”

I was just a normal 10-year-old child until recently.

And then I have this herculean strength now.

Thinking about it now, I had this uncomfortable feeling gradually increasing ever since we traded the iron sword for iron farming tools…… It’s like a hunch.

But after I woke up, everything changed completely.

That’s why I came to the Griffon, which had lived for several thousand years, as it might know something about this strange event.

“Say *Good morning* when I give the signal. As I will stop *Divine Blessing of Language* while you’re trying to say it.

“wrtetwerwqwwjo.”

“wrteeewzwwja.”

When I tried to imitate Tetora’s sound, she grimaced.

“Your pronunciation was different. It was around in the middle and at the end. Please listen to it carefully.”

Tetora once again said good morning while hearing it from this world’s language.

And I said it once again as I pay attention to the accent on the middle and last part.

"That tone, repeat it once again."
"*Good morning, Good morning*"

Today I was learning this world's language.
Sometimes I forgot that I can talk to Tetora-chan using the *Divine Blessing of Language*."
In other words, without the divine blessing, I can't do anything at all.
Furthermore, this blessing was loaned to me. That means it was not strange that I will lose my fluency at any time.

Of course, it would be a problem if I lose my ability to communicate with them.
Therefore, I asked Tetora to teach me like this.

By the way, I chose Tetora because she was the only one that was able to do honorific, humble, and polite language.
It was a mystery why Tetora was able to do it.
But for now, it's an inconsequential mystery.

This was quite difficult.
Because the pronunciation doesn't resemble either Japanese or English, it was not easy to improve.
If I keep repeating it for a number years, will I be able to speak it properly?
At least, I don't have to speak English.

"Hey leader, what are you doing?"
"It's language practice."
I answered Ron's questions. Ron looks puzzled.
It can't be helped then, I explained the *Divine Blessing of Language*, and Ron finally understood. Don't you sometimes take these things for granted? I know how it feels.

"Hey Tetora, why don't you teach me too?"
"But can't you already speak normally?"
"My polite speech is weak."

Ron scratched his head in shame.

“You’re worrying about that? Is it gonna rain tomorrow……? Was the preparation for the turnip that we sowed ready?”

“You see, I’m the assistant leader, right? In any event, I want my speech to be proper too!”

At the same time Ron said it, an angry voice resounded.

“Oy! I’m the assistant leader!!”

It was Roswald.

“What did you say!? Didn’t you already put the leader in a dangerous situation?”

“Shut up! I’m stronger than you when it comes to sword practice!!”

“Such misjudgment. You can’t even beat the leader.”

“Even so, I know I’m more competent than you. Right, Nii-san?”

“I’m the assistant leader, right? Leader?”

What are these guys doing!?

An assistant leader would not be selected by their swordsmanship skills. Or more precisely, it would really be risky if I assign any of the two to be an assistant leader.

“Then both of you needs to learn proper speech. Whoever learns it properly first would be the assistant leader.”

When I said so, both approached Tetora.

“Teach us quickly!!”

“Wait. I’m still the middle of teaching Almis.”

As they were fighting each other, one by one the children began to gather.

“U□umm…… I want to be an assistant leader too!”

“Me too, me too!!”

Gram and Soyon insisted in a loud voice.

Eventually, it has been decided that every day there would be a time for us to do a group study.

“What?”

“No, it’s nothing.”

However, in reality, Miss Tetora was the assistant leader.

It was during that night.
I woke up feeling some discomfort on my face.

When I opened my eyes, several butterflies (or moth) were fluttering.
Furthermore, one of the butterflies was emitting a green color. It was eerie.

After I was fully awake, the butterflies were fluttering towards the entrance of the pit-house.
Feeling relieved, I closed my eyes.

I soon as I did that, my nose felt uncomfortable. When I opened my eyes, it met the butterfly's eyes. The butterfly fluttered again towards the entrance.

It went on for another 5 times before I realized.

"Are you inviting me?"

As if acknowledging, the butterfly continued to go outside.

……Seems like I won't be able to sleep until I follow it.
I attached my iron to my hip and followed the butterfly.

"Where the hell are you leading me on?"
An hour had passed since I started following the butterfly.
It was only the moonlight and the green luminescence of the

butterfly's scales that showed me the way.

"Just wait a minute. I'm going to mark something."
Every time I took 10 steps, I mark a tree with a sword. There would be a possibility that the monster butterfly would make me a lost child…… I don't think so, but I may really lose my way back home.

I was already following for quite a while, and then I was out of the woods.
A small lake appeared before me.

The water on the lake was being illuminated by the moonlight and it induced some fear while being mysterious.

Suddenly, something caught my eye at the opposite side of the lake.
There was a young lady with purple red (lavender) hair.
It seems she was sleeping with her back resting on the tree.

The butterfly with green luminescence went to the girl and stayed on her hair.
The girl stood up the same time the green luminescence went out.

Her lavender hair was illuminated by the moonlight.

She had a beautiful and mysterious figure.
She was like the moon and lake goddess.

"Nice to meet you…… was that the correct way to say it? Griffon's messenger-sama.
The girl laughed in a mischievous way.

dquo;I want you to tell me about magic. Slowly from the beginning.”

“I don’t really mind but…… it’s really simple. It is caused by the mysterious power of the spirit. You can heal wounds and vitality, conversely, you can hurt someone, and predict disaster.”

“Can you conjure fire?”

“It’s possible. However, a magic that can directly damage the person’s flesh it quite difficult. It’s even difficult for me.”

Difficult for her too, she said……

But it’s amazingly appealing that I want it.

At any rate, that was a simple explanation. Magic, can’t it reproduce spells such as Meteo or Gigadein?

I mean it’s called Ma-gic……

Malicious curses had a gloomy image.

Be as it may, was this young lady a magician too? Does someone with such a cute face be able to curse someone to death?

That reminds me, that Griffon told me that the famine was caused by a curse.

Should I ask her if there was a rare expert that was able to do it?

“What do you think caused the famine?”

“It’s definitely a curse. It was a curse that specifically targeted crops. Although it was difficult to kill a person or an animal with a curse, killing plants was relatively easy.”

As Julia said so, she kneeled and pulled up some weeds and showed it to me.

Julia then breathed on the weed, the color changed to black and it died.

“Just like that.”

“Who would do something like that, like cursing the crops?

If there was no curse, the children wouldn't have been abandoned.

I could accept it if it was a natural disaster, but if it was a deliberate action by a human, it irritates me just thinking about it.

"Who was it? Actually rather than that, the proper question is, which country? It is impossible for an individual to do such a large-scale spell. Even with 100 magicians without using any sacrifice, I think it's impossible. It was the Romano Forest, a small country in the south, and the countries of King Domagal & Gilberd to the north that was affected. Considering that the country of King Faludam was not affected, you might think he was the mastermind behind it, but the king completely denies it. For me, I think the real mastermind is the country to the north of King Faludam's country."

So they got themselves messily tangled with King ○○ or King □□.

~Being the King of a country sounds like too much work ~it'd be better just living in a peaceful country.

Doesn't that idea exist here?

Or was there a country that doesn't involve themselves in war? Or does the name of the country changes when the ruling king change?

In ancient Japan too, the capital change every time there was a new emperor.

No, wait a minute.

Perhaps, it may be the royal family. No, it's definitely the royal family. I'm sure.

"Are you done with your questions now?"

"Yeah, I'm done asking. How about you? I still have various necessary fieldwork that I have to do tomorrow."

And so our discussion had come to an end.

"Nah, I'm good. By the way, isn't today a full moon? So, on the next full moon, won't you come here again?"

"Why? You have already seen my face and our business here is done."

“I want to know more about you.”

Why is it?
Is she perhaps trying to seduce me?
Have I become more popular after dying!? ——-

“What do I get out of this?”
“Won’t you be able to get chummy with a cute girl this way?”
“Tha□ that’s ridiculous. How can a brat of around 10 years old say that?”

Sorry but I’m not a lolicon.
But I’m currently 10 years old right now, so it might not be really considered as Lolicon, but even we disregard that, I don’t get any sexual desire to such a child.

“So, what is good for you?”
“Teach me about magic, how about it?”
Julia frowned when I suggested that.

“You have to know men can’t do magic.”
“Why is that?”
“Men and women have different spirit quality. A man learning magic is as bizarre as a woman learning swordsmanship.”

Really……
I see. So was that the reason the sex ratio of the children were 50-50?
Because girls can use magic to some extent, therefore abandoning them just because they are just girls, would be a loss to a nation.

“But is it possible that I can do it?”
“Yes, it’s possible but……”
“Then teach me a little. For self-defense.”
Actually, I’m not interested in magic nor I really need to learn it.
What I’m concerned about was us not having any countermeasures to curses.

The Griffon said it was okay, but I doubt it even if he seems to be decent.

Even if the boys was trained in kendo and judo, no matter how strong they are, it can't be compared to a curse.

I want the girls to learn magic by any means.
For now, I'm going to dance with this girl and see if she would be trustworthy

I will plan to ask her help in training the girls if she can prove to be trustworthy.

…… But, if I'm not careful, I can't deny the possibility that she would only gain my trust just to steal our food supply.
Well, as long as the location of the village was not known, I don't think it would be plundered, so the possibility was extremely low.

"Then, let us meet on the next full moon."
"That's fine with me. Later then."

Julia and I parted ways.

Crimson Red Purple (Lavender) Color

"You are?"
"Julia. What is your name?"
"I am…… Almis. Is the butterfly your friend?"
"Friend? Hmm, it does feel like it."
"It's quite intelligent. It seems to understand my words."
When I said so, Julia looked perplexed.
And she began to burst out in laughter.
What the hell……

"Hehe, butterflies can't have such intelligence. I just borrowed its body."
"Borrowed?"
"Don't you know the story about how a high-ranking sorcerer transfers their soul to an animal?"

I definitely didn't know. I don't even understood magic itself.

"So, why did you call me?"

"I think that I would like to hear a bit about your story. How did you curry favor with the Griffon? What agreement did you make?"

"There was no particular agreement. Rather, that fellow requested for help."

I explained it to Julia while hiding the fact that I was reincarnated.

Julia had a surprised look on her face.

"Really…… However, I learned that when you enter Romano Forest, the Griffon will devour you. Actually, it seemed a curse came upon to the previous people of that village that tried to cultivate something near the forest, a plague had spread. So how come the Griffon was compassionate to all of you?"

"Who knows? However, don't you agree that we may sometimes help a butterfly that got tangled in the spider's web?"

I don't have to needlessly involve her about the village.

It's not worth it, considering the village will be hijacked if it was inundated by a wave of new people.

The Griffon may change it's mind if plenty of people would arrive.

"Then why were you the leader?"

"I don't know. I thought I was worthy of it."

"Hmm."

Julia expressed a look of dissatisfaction. Her questions were not cleared away.

But the dissatisfied look went away immediately. And I thought I saw her expression was somewhat mischievous.

Julia's right eye dimly illuminated.

"Do you get it? Are you satisfied now?

What the hell was that?

"Next, you may ask me a question."

“Then, what are you?”
“Didn’t I already said I’m Julia?”

I already know your name.
But, it’s unlikely she would tell me what she really is. Can’t be help then. Well then……

&l

“Hehe, that boy was interesting.”
Julia was thinking about Almis.
Although he looks like a child, he had an air of an adult.

As expected, it looked like he had the so called divine blessing

“No need to be worried since I myself had an overwhelming number of divine blessings.”
Julia thought about Almis’ divine blessing that she saw through her *Divine Blessing of Perception*.
Julia looked at the full moon.

“Should I go back to my country soon? Father might be worried about me.”
Julia headed south and disappeared into the forest.

earn the number even if I say in foreign language.

Chapter 9: Arithmetic

“Mumumu…….”

“How did you do ? Tetora?”

Tetora smelled my body for some reason.

Did I eat something bad-smelling, yesterday?

“You smells like woman.”

Are you serious?

That nose is too good.

“In fact, yesterday…….”

Tetora knits her face when I speak about last night to her.

“It’s suspicious. The woman is absolutely dangerous. You shouldn’t get close.”

“Is that so? Though she indeed doubtful but it didn’t seem she is dangerous at all.”

She is rather a naïve young girl.

I seemed to be able to push it down by a margin. Though it doesn’t work.

“Women’s intuition.”

“What is that?”

In my experience, the women’s intuition has not proven right at least.

However, this world is the world with curse and divine protection.

Possibly, is it a premonition? Woman’s intuition is right…….maybe.

“Then i will be caution for the time being.”

“It is useless with only that. I’ll accompany you.”

“Tetore said it is dangerous. Only I am more agile, so you don’t need to come.”

Actually, I who walk the forest everyday has the geographical advantage.

My feet become considerably fast recently because physical ability rose.

It easy to run away when alone.

However, there is Tetora, when the worst happen, I need to carry Tetora on my back to run away.

“U……then, there is no other way.”

Tetora withdrew easily.

“Since Tetora is good at distinguishing sounds, it really helps.” Pull it immediately if you think that what I say is right. On the contrary,She give advice if she think that it is not right.

When it is Ron and Roswald, they ask for the impossible and doesn’t know how to back down.

On the contrary, I begin to worry about Gram and Soyon as they don’t opposed at all.

I must have children acquire power to think for themselves, soon.

The important one is power to think logically.

To forge the power to think logically……

Is it teaching?

It is not necessary now, but it is useful by all mean from now on.

It shouldn't be a waste of time.

Well then, how do you teach……..?

"First, please look at this."

I write a number in all languages other than the local language Karisha, on the ground. Why did I write foreign language? This is because this area does not have original letter.

"Please read them in order. Ron."

"Eto, one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten."

"Correct answer."

“As expected, it is readable like this.”

Ron said dissatisfied.

No, I don’t know that if I do not confirm it.

Well, it is easy to l

There is the excellent teacher Tetora, too.

I continue to write this way in the ground.

One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten. (No matter where you look at it, it is otherworld language,) (TL:check)

0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10

“What is that?”

“It is the written number of my hometown below. The top is the number in Karisha. I want you to learn the number below.”

“Why such a trouble something……”

The children who directly look dissatisfied.

Recently, though I have you tell Tetora and finally learn it, why must you do something like this? They seems dissatisfied. (TL:check)

“This is because the number of my hometown is more convenient. There are a lot of countries in my hometown and all countries has their own original number. But only this Arabic numeric number is used all over the world. In other words, it is in fact easy to use.”

The Arabic numeric is a very reasonable figure.

Though in present, the science and technology of Europe is more advanced than that of Middle East now, but when the world in Middle Ages, the scientific centers were the Middle East and Islam.

I thinks there are various things as reason, but it apparent that the numeral becomes a big factor.

Though it trivial, but the origin of Arabic numeral is in India.

“Huh.”

The children have a face of consent to which I said, but the meaning doesn’t come forth for the most part. In the first place, these children may not know a sense of different words depend on

the country.

For them, their world is their own village and which city state that village belong to. Even if it mention a large prefecture in Japan, it still on a local degree. There are no chance to touch upon [Foreign language].

“What is the lower circle under this empty column?”

“It is the number call Zero.” It shows that there is nothing.”

“Though there is nothing, but you have that?”

I heard that Tetora.

I was waiting for the question here.

There are no “zero” years in Christian era. The beginning is year one.

Haven’t you thought it’s strange?

Because of this, there are a lot of people who think that 101-200 A.D. is the 1st century.

Why is it so troublesome?

The reason is simple. It’s because there is no concept of zero in Europe when Christian era was made.

“There is nothing for nothing, but it is inconvenient when I do not

define it. For example, here is a leaf. How many is it?”

“It’s one piece.”

“Then, how many is this?”

I cover the leaf.

“……Nothing.”

“This is call zero.”

On the face of the children float a [?].

“The beginning of number is one. I do not understand what would be the problem. There is nothing for nothing.”

“It is so…….then let’s assume this one leaf. How many piece is this.”

I tear off the leaf in half, throw away one side and show everybody the half.

(Pengu: starting with decimal on the first day…….)

“one piece.”

“It is different. Isn’t the complete form of the leaf a little while ago is one piece?If put half and this half together to be one piece. In other words, it is half of one piece. This is 1/2 or could be said 0.5. Do you understand?”

“????????????????”

Shit, it seems hard. Because the beginning of number is zero is common sense for modern Japanese, so there isn’t a sense of incongruity.

It is different for these children.

“Then let’s do it this way.”

I write the number line on the ground.

“Memories this start is zero. Next to this is one. Then, what is between zero and one?”

“In the first place, is it start with one?”

“The number in between?”

“I think one half to be one is different from one!!”

“In short, it is two.”

“Does it increase when making it half?”

Sshhiiiiittttttt!!!!!

“Naa, Don’t you understand?”

After all, is my teaching bad?

I ask Tetora who head was best in this. (TL:check)

“Somehow, it can be understand, but also not understand…..In short, the figure is not thought by delimiting it one by one, is it the thing when I think of the flow such as one line?” (TL:check)

Oh…….probably so.

Such a thing, I have not thought difficult!!

However, some children’s face cleared up thanks to the remark of the remark of Tetora. As expected of Tetora.

“I don’t understand it at all.”

“As expected.”

Roswald and Ron look more puzzled. They seem to have confused by Tetora explanation even more.

Today class has been finished after all just to have all members understand the zero concepts.

I feel uneasy about what happens in the future…….

One month passed after I taught arithmetic.

Children learned it like a sponge absorbed water, and even the slowest child came able to master the subtraction of one figure.

By the way, it is Tetora that acquisition the earliest, which is addition, subtraction (in brief, I calculate on paper) of three figures are done already.

Originally, there seem to be some that able to calculate.

Because a big difference has begun to appear slowly in the proficiency, teaching by myself has become difficult.

So, I decided to make the child who can’t do go with the child who

can do.

It is not possible to teach when you not really understand. There isn't effective review as tell a person.

However, Tetora seemed to be dissatisfied. She have a look that she do not want to study the addition of two figure now.

Even if I say so, there is only me.

Ten good human brains are more helpful to some extent than one human being who extremely bright.

A dissatisfied thing will be dissatisfied thing, though……..

"It's done. Please check it."

"Ok. Let me see……"

I decided to teach Tetora mathematics overtime, the time that I had free for class.

If you said don't be unfair, "Rather then let you work only as a teacher, and not able to tell at all is unfair and I am in trouble when I do not have you lend it this because I teaches you words." which she said.

Because you thought to the extent which becomes this way, it is the case that it is taught.

“Is all question’s answer correct? First of all,if addition and subtraction of three digits is perfect.Let’s move on to the next one.”

“Is the four digit next?”

“No, neither three digits or tour figure changes. Next is multiplication.”

However, multiplication is done in abnormal speed in one month.

Although, the field of length unit is reach, it is considerable acquisition.

After all, is it the difference between motivation and ability of the person?

“For now, memorize this.”

“What is this?”

“Memory card.”

I hand the cards which was written with multiplication table to Tetora.

Even though I say card, it’s made of wooden board, so it’s quite large. I was hard to make it.

“It is troublesome…….I can calculate by addition commonly.”

“It would take time. You can learn it more easily.”

To be frank, most of addition, subtraction, multiplication and division operation between one digit is almost memorized.

I think small number were being done strenuously using both hands, now it is answered instantaneously.

Well, continued solving a similar problem several hundred times also contributed to that fact.

“however, it is virtually almost over if the multiplication table is learned. Because division calculation is easy and similar to multiplication, too. You can learn it immediately.”

If this is over, the arithmetic operation will end.

When you are possible to do arithmetic operation, then everyday life will not be a problem.

Following arithmetic is calculation lengths, area, volume, then it will be likely become speed and distance.

Honestly, it is more troublesome to teach than arithmetic. I don’t know the unit of length and weight of this world.

If I recall, the people had defined the Earth’s diameter somehow or another, and in the first place, whether this world is a globe or not is still unknown. Possibly mysterious power may exist as

replacement for gravity.

“Hey, Almis.”

“Huh? What is it?”

There is still a little incongruous to be call Almis. This is because I usually called by Nii-san or leader. Only Tetora and Julia called me Almis.

“Was everyone able to do it in your hometown?”

“Well, it is so…..all the children the same age of Tetora. Well, though I think that Tetora is more excellent because they all begin at 7 years old, and normally takes two years to remember until multiplication.

“Does everyone learn it?”

“Ah. My country has compulsory education and is considered to be human’s right.”

By the way, the one of a child is the right to get education, without obligation. It is the parents duty to make them receive education.

(TL: basically you can get education without doing anything.)

“Why do they do such a thing? You should monopolize the knowledge for rich people.”

“It may surely be good for the privileged class. But there are many countries in my world including my country. Each countries are competing with each other. When knowledge is monopolized, wouldn’t excellent human resources not gathered? So when it does, you will lose the competition.”

Especially, for the capitalistic society, education is the lifeline.

When democracy is performed, the nation with fools doesn’t become the talk. (TL:check)

“It’s sure is trouble some.”

“It is so…..”

Certainly, it’s possible to see so for certain.

In this world the competition is not extreme like there. No matter how hard i tried, it will often point gradually from nature to agriculture. (TL:check) The return can be obtained with little effort.

Do you think this is poor? It depends on the person whether you think it calmly.

According to a Japanese, the people of this world seem to take it too easy. According to the person of this world might think that Japanese is hurry too much.

……The Japanese vigor dispatch is getting recognized as superior in the world.

Although it work well, it is inefficient.

In a hurry is not to live, it seems that people who has lived in order to hurry is too much……

The story just got tangent. It has become just complaints.

“By the way, Almis.”

“What?”

“When am I able to master your words?”

“….Though you may not know it, it is extremely difficult to learn a different language.”

I’m opposite of the children, I wasn’t able to readily lean it.

Still it is quite fast compared with the speed of English acquisition. (TL: I never have this problem though or is it just Japanese people?”

“How should I live if divine protection of language is cut off?”(Pengu:　「いっそ言語の加護を切って生活したらどう？」)

“Yeah, however, will arithmetic not be taught in that case?”

“After all, without one for now.” (TL:check)

“Haha”

Unconsciously, I have stroked Tetora’s hair.

When I thought whether she hated it and were going to withdraw my hand, in an instant, she snuggled up.

This is good.

It feels good that I did quickly.

How come this hair becomes this soap even though there is no soap.

“Haa……..I must do my best.”

I sighed.

Chapter 10

hellip;Confusing…..”

Chapter 10: Turnip

Presently, we are raising turnips.

From the temperature, it is roughly August. The turnips are growing up quickly and healthily.

Turnips are a plant that are easy to plant and can grow big in approximately 60 days.

In other words, it can be said that it was ideal for us.

As for this turnip, rather than for the sake of eating, it is more useful for putting it to the side to feed the goats and cow.

By the way, it can be said that the cultivation of a turnip was favorable for the time being. If I say that, it is inflexible…….

“Leader! There are also bugs here!” (While Ron is turning over a leaf)

“Uwa, seriously?” (while Roswald peeks in)

“There is no end to this.” (while Soyon mutters with a sigh) (TL:check)

“Hii!!” (while Tetora screams lightly)

“…..” (Gram silently takes a step and crushes it.)

It is that kind of feeling.

After all, the location in the forest might be bad as expected.

It is a pest heaven.

I take care of it as soon as I find it, but there is no end. I also feel sick.

Anyway, there are a lot of insects around here. In the height of summer, the thicket of mosquitos are also energetically active. It couldn’t help but be annoying.

However, I finally found a breakthrough plan!!

“Look at this.”

“What is it?”

“This flower’s name is [Dalmatian Pyrethrum]. Common name is Pyrethrum.”

This flower includes a insecticidal activity ingredient called Pyrethroid. (TL: is this true?)

It is a natural insecticide. Because the action is light, Pyrethroid is safe for mammals.

By the way, it is a material for mosquito-repellent incense.

Because the original place of Pyrethrum is the Mediterranean sea coast; can we possibly grow it? I will think of a solution while I look for it. This world sometimes has strange people (griffon), but the vegetation is almost basically the same as back on earth.

“I found the colony. I have reached a conclusion that the insect will surely disappear; if I sprinkle it on the turnip.

“Is it good with only applying that? That is good. Full approval.”

Tetora said joyfully. She has insectophobia.

“Seriously? Then it’s all good. Let’s go pick it up at once.”

Ron also agreed.

Everyone seems to have no objection. However, it is natural.

“Then, let’s go!”

I went to the field of flowers at once.

We silently pick flowers in the flower garden.

Though the scene is very romantic, but it is used in an insecticide.

It is a little surreal.

“Tetora, this.”

I hand Tetora the Chrysanthemum, which I made in a bouquet form. With this both hands are empty. (TL:check)

“Oh! Wh-why so suddenly……”

Tetora’s face reddened for some reason. (□°□°) □□ □□□

“…..Tetora-chan.”

Soyon whispers into Tetora’s ear with an astounded face. Then

Tetora's face becomes even more crimson.

"…&

I was glared at for some reason. It is unreasonable.

"First of all, is this all right? It is a problem if I take too much and it disappears." (TL: I think it refers to the flower.)

If possible, I want to raise it in the village, but I have no such free time. The insects will not come if we just plant it.

I return to the village and prepare an earthenware. I put water and the Chrysanthemum in it.

"I will boil this down afterward."

I put firewood to burn and slowly spent time to boil it down.

After cooling, I should spray it on the leaf of the turnip.

“Is it really effective?”

“Maybe.”

Because I have not actually used it either, so I do not understand. Though it certainly is effective for mosquitos.

“By the way, why do the insects die with this? A curse?”

Soyon had asked. How did you come up with that idea?……..

“Because it is poison.”

When I said so, the children make a startled face.

“It’s safe, it’s safe. It is not effective on humans. If I don’t drink it in large quantities, though I don’t understand it.”

When I said so, a relieved expression rose on the children’s faces.

…..The idea that it’s safe might be decided because I, Almis, said it is safe. Though I am glad, it is complicated. I want you to think with your head if possible.

“Then, shall we spray it at once?”

Thus, I succeeded in driving away the harmful pest.

“It has become bigger.”

“I am looking forward to eating it.”

Ron is slobbering.

I crave for such vegetables recently because I have only eaten nuts.

…… I am growing the winter feed for the time being.

Just a little, can I eat it?

“Is the fertilizer necessary soon?”

The harvest time is slowly getting near. It is necessary to put in fertilizer at this time to make it bigger.

“What is fertilizer?”

“It is something like a meal to raise the crops. Well, which should I raise…….?”

The three major nutrients necessary for plants are phosphoric acid, nitrogen, and potassium. Only artificial fertilizer provided with these three are effective, which don’t exist. Then…….

“Are you bringing the forest’s soil?”

The forest’s soil consists of decayed dead leaves. I should be able to use it as an organic fertilizer.

“However, I should make sure that no strange insects enter.”

Something like beetles’ larvae.

“Hii! Almis!”

Tetora has been clinging to me. What on earth is it?

“Ea-earthworm…..”

Don’t be scared by that. Please learn from Gram. He uses his fingers to catch it normally and crush……..Hey, don’t crush it!

“Because the earthworm makes the soil better, throw it into the earthenware with soil.”

“Is-is that so?”

Gram put the earthworm in the earthenware while expressing a surprised face.

“Why is it? These kind of things.”

Tetora’s face seems plainly unpleasant.

“Wouldn’t the earthworm move about in the soil? As a result, the soil is cultivated.”

I'll keep silent about feces. It will definitely be disliked.

"Heh～"

She seems to understand it. I'm glad, I'm glad.

"Let's gather and sow it in the field soon."

"Yes!"

I return back to the village and scattered the soil unto the turnip's field.

So delicious turnips can be made.

"Finally, are we harvesting it?"

The time has come at last!!

It is unexpectedly easy, because I only pull up a turnip from the

ground.

In the first place, it didn't grow so much.

Let's raise more next time.

"Leader! Let's eat."

"Wait, wait. Calm down. This is the winter food for the goats and cow. There is only a little we can eat. Calculating from now……..No, please do the calculation, Tetora."

"Me?"

"Yes. It's a serious responsibility."

I said so and clapped Tetora's shoulder. I smile broadly at Tetora.

I can finally make use of arithmetic. The unmotivated children will understand the importance with this a little.

Today's dinner is turnip.

It's a turnip party.

However, there is no satisfactory seasoning.

It is only boiled turnip.

However, there is a delicious sweetness as I bite into it. At least, it is more delicious than nuts and wild grasses (it tastes like weed) from the forest.

“It’s delicious.”

“Is that so.”

I eat the boiled turnip leaf. It is crispy and delicious. It’s delicious, however……..

I want to apply soy sauce and eat it. I want salt at least.

I eat the boiled turnip. It is soft and sweet. However……..

I want to pickle it and eat it…….

Hunting, gathering, and agriculture move the body.

Sweat comes out whenever I move.

If sweat flows, your body loses salt.

Recently I hardly consume salt.

If there is an opportunity, let’s obtain salt.

I made up my mind.

EPUB/PDF generated by https://lnwnepubs.com/

Chapter 11: Pottery

“How is it? Can you see it?”

“Yeeah, kind of. It’s blurry.”

Right now I’m doing magic training.

What I’m doing now is what can be called the fundamentals of the basics, practice to see the soul, but…apparently I’m no good at it.

“It’s not that you’re very untalented. It’s more like you’re just a bit on the ‘bad’ side for boys. Since it’s just the basics you’ll definitely be able to master it after about three years.”

“Three years, huh…How long did it take you, Julia?”

“For me, it was three days.”

“…Isn’t the difference a bit too big?”

I'm guessing Julia is just a monster. That's relieving.

"In the first place, in magic the difference between having no talent and a lot of talent is just that wide. Ninety percent of it is about talent."

"Then doesn't that mean that it's pointless to even try?"

"No, that's not the case. If you just want techniques to resist curses, as long as you're not some kind of super airhead anyone can learn it."

Airhead, huh…

So I guess that since I'm just on the 'bad' side it's fine.

"Curses, like chickens, come home to roost. That is common sense when it comes to cursing. It is much easier to defend yourself from a curse than it is to use one. For ordinary shamans, even cursing someone who doesn't know magic would only work about half the time. If the target realises that they have been cursed, the curse won't succeed. You can easily reject a curse with only willpower. Although when it comes to someone of my level, it would be easy to curse you to death."

"If I recall, I believe that it's easy to curse plants since they don't

have any will, right?”

I think I heard something like that before.

“That’s right. That’s why you need to protect crops with barriers. For the most part, I think shamans are better at defending themselves from curses than using them. Because you need at least three shamans worth of power to break the barrier that one single shaman set up. Because I’m as powerful as a hundred people, this law doesn’t apply to me though!”

Julia said and puffed up her thin chest.

Don’t brag about every little thing.

“Since we’re not going to be getting anywhere until you are able to gain awareness of the spirit world, make sure you try hard every day. You should also meditate a little each night before going to sleep.”

“It feels like I’m going to do muscle training.”

“Because those are the basics. I also meditate everyday. Before going to sleep.”

In the end I just have to keep on putting effort in every day, huh.

So nothing changes in terms of exercise and magic in that area.

“By the way, how valuable is salt? Do you take it from the sea? or from rock salt?”

“Salt? I guess it’s fairly valuable. Mostly rock salt. If we took it from the sea, to boil the water we would need a lot of firewood.”

I see. So they’re valuables.

I want to avoid trading with iron ware. Because I want to leave some of the ironware for self-defense. In that case, should we mine the rock salt ourselves, or make some kind of special product…

“Is there anything you want?”

“What’s this about? Are you going to give me a present?”

“No, not like that. I was thinking that I could make something to trade for the salt. I was asking just for reference.”

“Ehh, asking something like that all of a sudden…Let me think. If I

had to say, maybe some kind of pottery?”

“Pottery?”

Doesn’t everyone have pottery? It’s not anything special really, right?

“Occasionally someone crosses the sea, from a region called Karisha. The pottery that they bring is tough and entirely different from what we use. Also, they have a really beautiful colour. Because of that, it’s really popular among royalty.”

“I see. The pottery we use is fragile, and the colour is dirty. Thank you for the information.”

I’ll think about it as soon as I get back.

First we should think about the features of the pottery we use.

They are thick and fragile. They are also red.

This is caused by the fact that the clay contains oxidised iron. The criminal is ferric oxide.

Pottery in this area is mainly made by heating the clay in an open environment. Because of this, a large amount of oxygen is constantly being supplied, making our pottery like this.

Then what should we do?

We should just bake it in the ground.

We should make an anagama kiln. (TLC/ED: An ancient type of kiln made by digging into a slope. For more information, google is your friend.)

Since heat can't escape from a closed space easily, it can also heat objects at a much higher temperature than baking something open-air.

At the end we block the flue and the kiln's opening with firewood. By doing so, we can limit the amount of oxygen being carried into the kiln.

As the amount of oxygen decreases, we won't get a buildup of ferric oxide. Instead we will get iron monoxide.

Iron monoxide is black. So we will get a piece of black-coloured pottery.

In other words, Sue ware. (TL: type of unglazed pottery made from the middle of the Kofun era through the Heian era)

Well, I'm not really familiar on the subject though.

Anyway, I can make something better than the pottery used currently. Though I don't know whether it is superior to Karishan pottery.

Now then, an anagama kiln is necessary to bake the clay.

Since this 'anagama kiln' (lit. hole kiln) is, as the name suggests, a kiln in the ground…that means it's time for some hard labour.

Do we have the time for that? Don't we have to work on the farm?

That's not the case.

Rather, we are super free right now.

We've finished harvesting the turnips and are now raising clovers. Since clovers are half weed or something, we don't really need to trouble ourselves over them.

Although because of that they're so tough that I can see us having a

hard time trying to remove them next year.

So, we have plenty of time.

“That being the case, do you have the hoe with you? We’re going to begin making it right away.”

“Where will we make it?”

Soyon asked while holding the hoe.

“On a slope. I think that there was a slope that seemed just perfect for this over in that direction. We’ll make it over there.”

“Are we going to be digging just so that we can trade for salt?”

“We’re not doing this only to get salt. When we aren’t able to harvest wheat and the like, it would be handy to have something that we could use to trade for foodstuffs.”

We don’t have an unlimited supply of iron for tools.

On the contrary, there are trees that make firewood and clay in abundance. We don’t have to worry about exhausting those.

Also, we can use the anagama kiln to make useful things other than pottery.

We're not going to lose anything by making it.

"Let's do it!"

"Yeah!!"

Like that, we began working on the anagama kiln.

We began by cutting down the trees on the slope.

Everyone in the main workforce is 10 years old. Because of this, the work proceeded at a very slow pace…actually, it wasn't slow at all.

"Okay, the fifth one!!"

"…Almis, are you really a human like us? You are more powerful than a usual adult no matter what I think."

Tetora asks, her appalled voice hardly audible over the sound of a tree falling.

That's right, I have the divine blessing that increases my physical strength.

That bastard griffon dissed it saying its effect was questionable, but just that is more than enough to cut down a few trees.

Right now I have the strength of a muscular male in his prime.

It's truly convenient. But while it is convenient, I would rather have the ability to read people's minds, or have the physical strength be enough to uproot a tree with one hand.

I guess I shouldn't be asking for too much.

Anyway, the work is advancing smoothly.

Five days have passed since we began cutting down trees, weeding, and digging into the ground.

We finally did it.

Since as an amateur I just designed it in a way that seemed right, so I can't expect much in terms of performance.

Well, while it might not have the best performance, since I don't have any plans to make any super amazing piece of pottery, that's not a problem.

"Next is hand building time."

I knead the clay and re-arrange the shape.

To tell the truth, I'm actually quite good at this kind of simple work.

In fifth grade in elementary school, I was praised for my talent in ceramics at a crafts workshop.

For my score in arts for junior high, I got a full five.

"You!! You've done it now!! This is payback!!"

"Quit messing around, you shit head!!"

"Hey boys! You'll drop the clay. Ah!! It is stuck to my clothes! You!!"

“S, stop fighting…”

“…They’re all idiots.”

Do these guys plan on working seriously at all?

Ron, Roswald and Soyon, the three at the centre of the fight start a mud war.

The pacifist group, led by Tetora and Gram, gather around me and begin to take refuge. I guess because they believe the mud won’t come flying towards me.

I continue working silently.

A convenient-looking cup, and a large piece of pottery used to boil things. A plate and a jug.

Since they will be used for not only trading but also for our own personal use, we need to make a lot of them.

Shit, I’m the only one working seriously, aren’t I?

“Hey, make your own tableware yourself.”

“I know.”

Only the pacifists answered. It didn’t reach the ears of the guys fighting.

How depressing…

———————————

“It’s finally complete.”

I took out the pottery that had cooled down from being in the kiln.

It has a nice grey colour to it.

It rung a high-pitched sound when I tried flicking it. It seems like it’s fairly durable.

“Oh!!”

Looking at the cup she made herself, Tetora seems to be deeply

moved.

After all, it feels good to make your own things with your own hands!!

“Uuu…”

“Haa…”

Ron and Roswald are disappointed.

I don’t know if the pieces they made weren’t thick enough, but they‘re cracked.

“That’s because you were playing around.”

Soyon said as she crossed her arms.

From what I saw, all you did was play as well…

“Well, there will still be plenty of chances. Let’s make good pieces from now on. We have all the time we need.”

I say, and Ron and Roswald's eyes brightened.

Like that, while cultivating the clovers we continue to mass produce pieces of pottery.

"Here, a present."

"Eh! For me? Thank you!!"

Julia delightfully hugs the piece of pottery. Is she really that happy over it?

"This looks very durable. How did you make it?"

Julia asks as she checks by flicking it with her finger.

"That's a trade secret. By the way, do you think I can trade this for salt?"

"I think that it's good enough."

Is that so. That's relieving to hear.

"Where should I exchange it for salt? Since they're valuables, I would need to negotiate with some influential person to get it, wouldn't I?"

"Iet me think…then how about I bring it for you?"

Eh!?

Seriously?

"For three of these pieces, I will give you one piece's volume of salt."

"Is that fine? If you'll give me it then that would really help."

If it's just some village elder then it'd be fine, but I would rather not have to negotiate with some country's nobles or kings. I'm still a child. In the worst case scenario, we might get robbed.

As I'm only borrowing the Griffon's authority, it's not going to help me with being physically attacked.

So if Julia will bring it here for me, then there's nothing better than

that.

“Absolutely. In terms of value I think I’ll get one piece profit for this, but is that fine for you?”

“…I guess so. I don’t mind. Then, I’ll be counting on you from now on.”

Like that, the pottery-salt trade pact was closed.

Chapter 12

re. The last day of work will be the day after the day after tomorrow” (TL: in three days?)

Enjoy～

TL: Fraiziar, Pengu

ED: Manga Hunter

Protagonist’s group

CH	Name	Gender	Role
Ch3	アルムス	Almis	male
Ch4	ロン	Ron	male
Ch4	ロズワード	Roswald	male
Ch4	テトラ	Tetora	female
Ch4	グラム	Gram	male
Ch4	ソヨン	Soyon	female
Ch 9	ユリア	Julia	female

Chapter 12: Charcoal

I seriously dislike chemistry……..

“Hey? Is this really useful?”

“It’s all right. Believe in me.”

The children have the face [is it true?] when I said that I’m going to sow the ash on the field.

In this region, it’s rainy in the winter and recently its been getting

rainier.

The rain is slightly acidic because of the carbon dioxide in the air merges in the rain.

The field that had absorbed the rain most likely has become slightly acidic.

And wheat is vulnerable to acidic soil.

Therefore it is necessary to cover it in ash to neutralize the acidity.

That's the reason why you cover fields with ash.

Whether you are talking about plants that prefer alkaline or acidic, there are many varieties.

I must be careful in that area.(Concerning the acidity of the soil.)

This field is 1.5 times the area, which used to raise turnips.

Though there are various reasons, my physical ability have largely risen.

It's enough for just me to take care of it.

「Next is the homemade fertilizer I guess.」

I lift the earthenware pot containing the fertilizer.

I consolidated the undiscarded cow and goat feces along with fallen leaves from the forest and let it ferment.

It wasn't ready when we harvested the turnips, but we can use it now (during the wheat harvest).

The children were saying that putting the cow manure into the fields was impossible, but I persuaded them by telling them that the nuts that we always ate were also growing in the dung that was left around inside the forest.

I thought about human feces, but I hate the idea myself, and I'm afraid of contracting the parasitical worms that might come from

using human feces.

Thinking about those worms makes me feel ill.

I stir the fertilizer and ash into the pot one at a time. (TL: in turn, but one at a time sounds better)

It needs to be spread evenly throughout.

The joint force of me, the children, and the cows will plow the fields.

The working pace is quite fast.

My physical strength and the cow strength are huge.

Even using our lowest skills, we are probably more efficient than the average farming community.

“For now, let’s stop he

“Agreed! I’m already exhausted. Let’s go eat!”

“What is today’s meal?”

“It’s the same as usual.”

“In other words, is it nuts……?”

“How does Griffon-sama collect a large amount of nuts?”

Children talk while starting preparation for dinner.

They were rather stiff at first when I first came.

Everyone was strangers from different hometowns.

There were many children who were stunned and couldn’t get out of the shock of being abandoned by their parents.

There isn’t such a situation now.

Everybody looks happy.

“Let’s go? “

Tetora pulled my clothes.

“Ah. gotcha.”

I turned and faced everyone.

…..Next year, I wonder how many child will be abandon if there isn’t a famine next year.

“In agriculture, the difference between when we are busy and when we aren’t is unreasonably intense. “

“Yeah….”

It’s been a few weeks since we planted the wheat.

Even though there is no harvest, we still have to take care of it through pest extermination, weeding, and tilling.

Pulling out weeds isn’t too much of a pain if it’s done diligently everyday. Even a small child can do it.

In the first place, pests don’t breed so much thanks to the Chrysanthemum insecticide.

“By the way, recently human sightings in the forest have become more frequent.”

“Well it is almost winter. They’re having the pigs eat acorns, and collecting nuts for the winter. It is considerably serious that people who are afraid of the Griffon-sama’s anger enter the forest.”

Tetora said with an unpleasant face.

“Will there be children abandoned this winter I wonder?”

“Though I think in the summer most families cut off those they couldn’t feed, there are certainly those who didn’t plan ahead for

winter, so I'm sure there will be a certain number of abandoned children. However, if it's a bad harvest in the next wheat season, they will come in large quantities."

I have no choice, but pray that it's not a bad harvest.

Will the Griffon support the newly coming people?

It might be impossible……..

In our case, He's simply supporting us on a whim.

"It's not the time for King Domorgal and King Gellberd to do things like warring with each other. It's absurd to lose things like magicians and workforce for war. They should return the soldiers to farming, and magicians should go remove curses."

"Are there any abilities of black art not for war, but is useful beside curse and anti-curse?" "….Why don't you go ask that Julia woman?"

Tetora said with displeasure.

She's ill-tempered.

"Can you please tell me?"

"Then, pet my head."

"Here."

I stroked Tetora's head. Tetora smiled happily.

"Then, I'll tell you. Do you know how a soul can put into an animal?"

"Yes. I know."

"hen the story will be quick. A soul can be put in an eagle or dog to scout the enemy.」 Naturally, enemies will shoot it with a bow and arrow to prevent it. When it is shot with a soul inside, there will be

large damage to the soul. You can do other things like raise flames and wind too. Though that takes dozens of people.”

That’s amazing. The reconnaissance in particular.

Won’t it be like using an airplane depending on how it’s used?

I can make a bird carry something like a bomb and drop it over the enemy force.

It’ll literallly become a bomber.

Though simple, it is unexpectedly usable.

“Hey. I intend to call Julia to the village when autumn is over at the beginning of winter. Because I want everyone to be able to learn magic. Is that okay?”

“……I don’t have any objection against Almis’s decision in particular.”

She seems to be okay with it.

Thank goodness.

“By the way…….”

“What?”

“Hasn’t it been a bit cold recently?”

“……..”

Tetora confirmed it with silence.

Winter season is coming. (Fraiziar:Must. Resist. GoT Joke) (Pengu:I took the liberty)

For one reason or another I realized that the cold winter in this area isn’t the same as Japan’s. Rather, it’s much colder.

Though everyone is wearing clothes that were processed from the animal furs that the Griffon occasionally gave us, There is only one

layer per person. It's cold and uncomfortable.

"It seems we will be spending most of our daily lives indoors during the winter."

I want a warm fireplace.

I must prepare firewood before it's too late.

Ah…….Won't smoke be terrible is fire woods are burning in the house?

What should I do?…….

That's it. Let's make that. Before it's too late.

"What happened? Almis."

"Let's go cut some tree now."

It is a lucky day to make up my mind.

There are many advantages to charcoal.

One large advantage is that it burns for a long time. It's heating is also stable, and it produces no smoke

Of course, there are drawbacks.

By pure heat-to-fuel efficiency, it's faster to just burn wood.

In fact, it's common sense to use firewood to fuel things like fireplaces.

Therefore in truth I want to use firewood to make heat, but that produces smoke.

It'd be fine if there were chimneys, but there aren't any chimneys in pit dwellings.

If we were to use firewood, it would all become cover in smoke.

Well, Charcoal needs to be made, but it isn't that difficult.

If heated in an low oxygen place, firewood will turn into charcoal.

Heat in an low oxygen place.

I wonder where oh where I could find such a place?

"So in conclusion, we are going to use the Anagama kiln.
"(Anagama kilnhttps://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anagama_kiln)

"Was that introduction really necessary?"

Shaddup. I was explaining it so be thankful.

"Anyways, If we can make charcoal we won't be freezing during the winter nor being smoked out of our homes."

I pack timber into the kiln.

In order to prevent the atmosphere from entering too much, I fill the gaps with dry leaves.

"Well then, let's light it up"

I lit it with a torch.

The wood inside the kiln began to burn.

"For a little while, keep the fire opening and the smoke opening closed up. It'll become charcoal if we leave it alone for a day"

"This won't change the pottery?"

"Well, the lack of reaction with oxygen is the same in both processes so it's fine."

"Huh? What's oxygen?"

Explaining oxygen huh…..

I'm not confident in my explanations…..

"The thing I'm calling oxygen is the stuff you normally need to burn stuff. It's kinda like a type of air. If there isn't any oxygen then nothing will burn."

"Hmmmm. Does the oxygen not burn as well?"

Shit. An annoying subject was brought up.

I don't know the best answers for these science questions since I was a humanities major.

"Well, to start with, when I say carbon, I'm referring to anything burnable like trees. The substances our bodies are made out of are called polymers, which are compounds of oxygen and carbon. That's why, rather than oxygen being the thing that burns, oxygen combusts, right?"

"Yeah, I somehow understand." (Fraiziar:How the hell does he understand that explanation?)

I don't really understand it myself.

In the first place is this a good definition of burning? Isn't the linking of iron and oxygen combustion? Is it not limited to carbon? In the first place what is the difference between burning and combustion?

—Layman's terms versus chemistry terms?

Speaking of which, didn't my High School teacher once tell me that oxidation is a chemical reaction between oxygen and some other material?

Or was oxygen when a material was deprived of hydrogen?

Well, I'm certain at least that during oxidation the substance loses an electron. (TL check please)

Wait, that's acid reduction.

I don't know what that means anymore.

Stop using such misleading terms!

Basically, in junior high I learned that 「oxidation is when substances react with oxygen to make a compound」.

Stop spinning around my assertions!

I don't know how to decipher these things.

"Hey, Nii-san, what's wrong?"

"No, it's nothing. I'm just thinking a bit."

Chapter 13

no shrine maiden in Almis's village?"

TL: Pengu

ED: Manga Hunter

Protagonist's group

CH	Name	Gender	Role
Ch3	アルムス	Almis	male
Ch4	ロン	Ron	male
Ch4	ロズワード	Roswald	male
Ch4	テトラ	Tetora	female
Ch4	グラム	Gram	male
Ch4	ソヨン	Soyon	female
Ch 9	ユリア	Julia	female

Chapter 13: New Year

"Hey, Almis. You don't have to come here in the evening of the next full moon. I'm busy in preparation for the New Year."

"E! That's so? Is it New Year. Naturally, there is that."

I had forgotten it.

Anyway, the only thing that informs the time are only the height of the sun, temperature, and the growth of plants.

That's right. Naturally, there is New Year.

It is New Year in the winter, which means that this is a northern hemisphere. I feel relieved a little.

No, wait. It is doubtful whether there is a calendar when I think about this culture level.

In the first place, is it solar calendar or moon calendar?

"Naa, What's the standard that decided the calendar?"

"Well, was it the movement of the sun? I don't know the the detail either. It was imported from a foreign country."

I see, I was convinced.

It's so. It is a mystery on how Astronomy develops in this culture level.

However, a foreign country……..

The foreign country here is not a country in this area, it could be said that the country is in the point of the far sea.

If I'm not mistaken, a Karishian said this and that. (Pengu: Karishian = people from Karisha. I made it up since too lazy to type the whole thing)

The difference in development is great depending on the area.

I'll remember it.

"Naa? What do you do to celebrate the new year?"

"Let's see……we kill a pig which is raised only for this day to dedicate to the God and eat together. After that, we set up the great purification to expel evil spirit again. There is no need for putting it to New Year because it is possible to do it any time. These preparations are troublesome."

Indeed……

Because Julia is a magician, is it even more serious?

Is it so? A pig?

Unfortunately, there are no pigs. There is cow but it's an important labor……

Should I substitute with a deer?

Though, I have to search for a deer with everyone.

"That reminds me, there is

"Yeah, what about it? It's because it is made up of deserted children. They might not abandon a shrine maiden. Maybe not."

I refrain from inquiring into the past of the children.

Therefore, I do not know what kind of skill they have.

My biggest concern is Tetora……..

She might secretly be a shrine maiden. Somehow.

"Then, there is no other way. Should I perform it?"

"It isn't necessary for you to overdo it particularly?"

Somehow the other party had picked up on Julia being a noble individual.

She is able to prepare salt every month so she is considerably rich. However, I don't know why she is in such a place.

In addition, she is also a magician.

It is seriously New Year, soon. The New Year gets busier than for Japanese since this world is where magicians exist.

When the act isn't especially significant, I don't feel the necessity to

do it.

“That’s no good. Even if you are good, the other children may worry. There is faith in such a thing.

Umm, is that so?

I don’t know it very well.

“Nevertheless, you are plain to be a shrine maiden.”

Aren’t they normally more devout? Shrine maiden or magician.

“Surprisingly, that’s just what shamans are. Of course they have their beliefs. Barriers are useless without them offering prayers of gratitude to God. Or rather I believe that they revere God more so than the average person, but they don’t just blindly follow a belief. Or rather, God is surprisingly unaccommodating. Even if you believe in him, whether he’ll save you or not is completely up to his mood and how heavily he will be compensated. That’s why they inevitably become so indifferent.”

Is it feeling and value?……

It looks like a griffon. No, is that fellow like a God?

“Why is the Griffon respected so much?”

“You should be more respectful, he is a great person. the gentleman is one of the pillars of God, God of animal. Oh, he did something in particular, though it isn’t a bad thing……..But it is certain that he has great strength. He had a fight with a dragon, who has divine protection of storm and thunder, it seems that he won. Some forests were blown off by the aftermath of the fight at that time, a mountain also disappeared and the sea was split.”

“Is he a monster?”

Isn’t it a wonderful destruction of nature? (MH: Not sure on this one)

When it is my imagination.

God [Value nature more. The wrath of heaven is necessary for the people who destroys nature. Great flood!!] (Pengu:I think refering to the great float in Genesis.)

It have such feeling.

After all, isn't it an illusion?

It is so. The creature doesn't think like a person so they don't shows interest in grass or tree.

I don't know whether God belongs to nature.

"A, however, is it alright with one week later?"

"It doesn't matter. You will be coming to this side."

I can introduce Julia to everyone with this.

"By the way, won't you come to my village now? I will give you a ride. I want you to teach black art."

"Yes, black art huh?……..I want some compensation……"

"Then I will teach you mathematics, how is that?"

"I can also do it to some degree, you know?"

"Then, what is 1555＋20000?"

"Ummm…….those numbers have many numbers……"

"The answer is 21555. You can't do it, can you? The child called Tetora that I'm teaching can do division."

"Gunununununun…….I might be good. The deal is approved."

She seems to have been convinced.

By the way, it is only Tetora that is exceptional, but the other children aren't so.

I was able to deceive her well.

"Look here everybody. My name is Julia, I am always under Almis's care"

Julia said hello in front of the children brightly.

Today, Julia is wearing unusual clothes.

It is pure white with purple embroidery here and there.

It resembles a Japanese shrine maiden's clothes somehow.

The dye is very expensive in this world. In other words, I understand that it is considerably high-quality clothes.

"Can I ask one thing?"

"Alright! Hmmm……is it Ron?"

Ron stands up and asked Julia.

"What is your relationship with the leader?"

"We are lovers!!"

Julia inter-locked my arm.

Hey, don't say such stupid thing!!

"Are you serious!!"

"Amazing!!"

"I'm so envious…….with such a beautiful person!"

"No way…….can I beat such a beautiful person….."

"Ku, so mortifying….."

The children begin to get noisy.

"….Hey, Almis…….Is the story true?"

Uwa, scary!

Tetora voices out with such a scary face.

"It is just a joke from Julia. Oi, don't say misleading things!"

"Hahahahaha. I wanted make fun for a little. However, can we become such a relation?"

Julia winks at me and leaves.

Tetora stepped on my foot while scowling at me. (Pengu: LOVE INTEREST CONFIRM!!!!!)

"It hurts……why are you so angry?"

"Hmph."

Tetora looks the other way.

"Then let me have your attention, shall I hold a ceremony? If possible I would like a pig……..there isn't one?"

"Instead, we prepared a deer. Though I drained the blood."

"Yeah, though it is killed when alive actually……well, it doesn't matter. Then, Almis. Repeat the words I say from now on then cut off the head with a sword."

Understood.

I hold up an iron sword.

"Then, I will begin. The great several Gods and spirits of heaven, earth, and sea. I give a votive offering for we were able to live for one year with many thanks. I pray that you will watch us in the future……."

I said Julia's following words, the deer was beheaded with the

sword.

Blood didn't come out much because it had been drained.

"Then, the ceremony of the offering ends with this. Next is the exorcism ceremony!"

"What should we do?"

"For now, you shall wash your body. Because, you just have received impurity of the death."

I see.

It is surely unlucky to hold a ceremony after I killed the beast.

"Then, I will ask from the girl first."

"Almis. You mustn't peek."

"Am I good?"

"I won't look. It is not erotic at all even if I look at the body of a 10 years old child."

I'm very normal.

Are? However, it isn't strange to be excited about a girl's body of the same age……

"Then, I will hold the purification at once."

"……Please do it faster. It is cold and not suitable."

It is too cold because of entering the river in mid winter.

By Julia's reason, hot water was useless.

It is irrational.

"Right away."

Julia held up my hands.

When Julia muttered bleatingly, her hands shine palely.

My body became warm after a few minutes.

“This is…….”

“It’s a treatment which raises the temperature. It’s just a temporary thing.”

Is there also such a thing?

However, it is quite plain that it only raises in temperature.

Or is there another higher skill?

After I was finished, Julia gives all members the same technique.

There weren’t any color of fatigue either. Indeed.

“I will perform the dance ceremony next.”

“What is the significant of it?”

“I set a barrier against evil in the field. It will only last lightly.”

Julia says so and stands in front of the field.

“Just look at it calmly. Because it will be over immediately.”

Julia said so and took something like a folding fan and bell in hand and begins to dance.

Ring, Ring, Ring.

The bell viberated.

Julia sings and dances according to the bell.

It is sometimes bold and delicate.

The shrine maiden clothes based on a beautiful fan and white swing.

A bell lets out a beautiful sound from the movement, and Julia's throat trembles.

Her voice is more beautiful than that of a bird or insect.

It makes one think of a quiet and clear surface of water in a lake.

The hair of deep red purple lavender of Julia shakes.

My eyes naturally nailed to Julia.

Does magic even have enchanting work?

No, it only that Julia is beautiful. She is too beautiful.

I felt that there is so much beauty.

As if time hasn't pass for eternity.

Julia finished the dance before I noticed it.

Silence dominated a moment and thunderous applause happened.

"How is it? What is your opinion?"

Julia edged up to me.

It was beautiful……

I thought so while looking at Julia's face.

She a vile one. I asserted that it isn't a lolicon complex.

Currently, I felt a sexual charm in Julia.

"You were very beautiful. I would like to see it in another time."(Pengu: Player on a lose!!!!!!!!!!)

When I said so, Julia's face reddened.

“You, saying such a straight thing…….”

We make each other blush and look down.

It was Soyon who breaks the silence.

“Hey? Please come again the next time! I want to see you dance again!!”

“Me, too. Me, too!!”

Roswald also goes along with her.

“Of course! I will teach you if you like. Anyway, I was asked by Almis to teach everybody magic. There is a dance that is different from this one to give at the time of the wheat harvest, if you want to see it!!”

A crowd gathered around Julia’s surrounding.

She seemed to be able to fit in somehow.

It is good. It is good.

“Julia.”

Tetora called Julia.

The children naturally open the road.

“It is your win this time and I raise my hand. …….However, I won’t give up on mathematics.”

“Fufu. It is good. I’ll catch up with you immediately and defeat you.”

They look angrily at each other.

And they begin to laugh.

Suddenly, both children’s eyes became points. (TL: like this (ಠ‿ಠ))

“My best regards.”

“Same here.”

The two children shook hands with each other.

……..I don’t understand it well, but a friendship seems to have been established.

Chapter 14: Wheat

The main characters look skillful with their hands.

There are ten children before my eyes.

Four people are about 4-years-old, while the remaining six people are approximately 8-years-old.

In short, they are abandoned children……What with this timing?

Moreover, January, they couldn't endure until February?

If it's so serious that you can't endure, shouldn't they be thrown away in winter?

"There are 2 times to leave a child. First is wheat harvest season. In case of a bad harvest, the village chief elects them with authority. The second time is after New Year. If I'm not mistaken in my calculation, when you have to throw away more of them. It's slow because it seems not being able to get over the late winter and I understand at last. This is the desire of the parents that they want to send them off after New Year celebration."

"I see. Thank you for your explanation."

I assign the houses to the children after hearing their name.

If a life can be helped then I will help them.

As for the Griffon, he will support us until we finish harvesting

wheat, so it is all right.

I will return him next year, if it is a good harvest.

“Hey, Almis.”

“What is it?”

“Is wheat enough? There are around 50 people to prepare for next year if it is a bad harvest.”

If I follow Tetra’s reason, the storage will run dry after 2 years.

Will growing wheat suffice for now? That’s Tetra’s question.

“It is alright. Let’s make manure to grow the wheat. It is possible to harvest more than usual. The field was made quite wide too. In addition, we will also be raising barley.”

In this region, 2 fields system is the mainstream.

In brief, one field rests for one year, if we harvest wheat.

It is a bad efficiency to produce food.

On the other hand, we are doing a crop rotation agriculture. The production efficiency is entirely different.

Tetra’s worry is imaginary fears.

“However, isn’t it impossible for two years?”

“I don’t understand. But the people that needed set up

enchantments are a large group of highly skilled magicians, people who have financial power as sacrifice can be prepared. Therefore, there might be a second year. However,…."

"But?"

"Is Rosaith king country different?"

King Rosaith's country……it is a mid-size nation in the south side of Roman's forest.

"Can you assert that there are no larger countries and King Rosaith's country is peaceful?"

"Because there is Julia."

Is Julia a citizen of Rosaith King's country? I haven't heard of it.

Tetra looks at my face and answers.

"She is considered a celebrity."

"Although it seemed like it was the other children's first time meeting her?"

"……Among the people from the upper class. There is a story. She is 12-years-old in this new year. She began to work as Rosaith's magician."

Is Julia 12-years-old?…….

“I, would it be alright for me to change the setting making me 12-years-old instead of 11-years-old?”

“……..Do what you please.” (I don’t care anymore.)

Good. I’m 12-years-old from now on.

I don’t know my accurate age anyway. It doesn’t matter if it is 11 or 12-years-old.

In reality, I have exceeded 20-years-old.

“Shouldn’t you think of it as an increase in labor? The harvest could rise. It is old people that I’m more worried about. To make old people work…..”

Their efficiency is not so good.

It will be all about free meal.

“Old people don’t get abandoned so much.”

“Why is it?”

“……..There are about eight children, but none that have a mother and father.”

I agree.

“In the first place, you die when you reach roughly 50 years old. Because long lived elder people, who live is the proof of health,

they are not easy to kill.”

Are they just unlucky?

When they live for a long time, they can provide answers for the people around.

Is there more resistance than abandoning a child?

“Don’t you want to hear it?”

“What is it?”

“The reason why I knew about Julia.”

Oh, the story that [she is a famous person in the upper class” awhile ago.

“Though I’m interested, I don’t need to hear it. You can talk when you feel like it.”

“Oh…….”

Tetra looks down lonely, while feeling relieved.

“Amazing! The wheat grew so much. What kind of enchantment did you use?”

“I didn’t do such a thing in particular.”

The tip of the wheat shines golden gleams before my eyes.

Did you say bumper crop?

“What about on your side?”

“Fufun! It is alright thanks to me. Though it isn’t a good harvest, but I don’t have to worry about anybody starving this year. Father was very pleased.”

Is that so? That’s good for him.

“By the way, what is that?”

“It is barley.”

I hear Julia’s questionably voice.

“You don’t let your field rest?”

“It is alright. It is just a little secret.”

When I answer, Julia looks at the barley steadily.

However, she doesn’t seem to have much interest, she moves her eyes to the wheat immediately.

“Then, is it alright if I hold the ceremony immediately?”

“Yes. I leave it to you.”

Julia steps forward .

There is a pedestal in front of Julia’s eyes, there are wine, deer meat, grapes, and olives on top.

I exchange earthenware to obtain wine, olives, and grapes.

“Then here I go.”

Julia said so and begins to dance comfortably.

It is beautiful as expected.

My heart rises naturally.

I want to see it forever. However, the dance ends in a short while.

“How was it?”

“Yeah. You were beautiful.”

When I praised her obediently, Julia laughed a bit and became embarrassed.

“Then, I’m done here.”

“Yes. I’ll accompany you.”

I walk Julia to the lake.

“Another thing. If the bread is done, I will give it to Julia. It’s my gratitude.”

“Fufu. I look forward to it.”

It was natural, I can’t eat wheat as it is.

It is necessary to thresh it.

It is to separate the rice husk from the chaff of the wheat.

It is considerably hard labor, if we perform it all by hand.

Therefore, I borrow the wisdom of our pioneers.

“This, it’s such an amazing thing!!”

Soyon threshes the wheat with the threshing machine, while talking to me.

I’m glad that she praised the thing I made myself.

Although I stole the idea from someone else.

By the way, the comb is made out of wood but the original comb in thresher is made with bamboo or metal, but bamboo aren’t growing in the wild and we don’t have smithing technology.

Therefore it is very fragile, so please treat it carefully.

“Umu……the structure is simple. However, it is so much more efficient……..such a great idea.”

Tetra looks at the threshing comb and mutters bleatingly.

“Isn’t it wonderful if this spreads out?”

Ron showed a slight excitement and said so.

Well the work efficiency will probably go up.

Originally, threshing is the work of a widow, however, there is no good point.

I must consider the widower, if I’m going to spread it…….

I guess it isn’t something I need to worry about. After all, I’m the children’s leader. If the time comes, I will dissolve this group.

Then, I have to get the husk from the chaff.

In earth, before the machine is introduced, every region threshed with a stone mill.

There are two kinds of mortar, method one is to put a round stone on a board stone.

Another method is to stack two slates and rotate it.

At least, they seem to use the former mortar in the surrounding regions.

It is possible to thresh with this method. It will cause lower back pain if you continue doing the same work for a long time while sitting down.

I don't want to be troubled by lower back pain at this age.

Therefore, I made a disk-type stone mill.

It was extremely hard to make it.

Can the stone be flattened to a circle, if it rubs stone with stone together?

I gave up on doing the traditional way because I don't know how many times the devil whispered to my mind.

However, work will become easy all the time if it is complete. I believe in it.

Is it divine protection? Is it fortunate that grinding the stone wasn't hard because of divine protection?

Even if it's useful at such a delicate place, it's worthless.

By the way, I suffered a lower back pain because I continued sitting down while making it.

I look like a fool.

"However, this is amazing!!"

"Let me do it, too!!"

Roswald and Gram come over.

……Is it good that these fellows are pleased?

That thing is worth it to suffer from lower back pain.

“I will make it with everybody alternated cooperation next time. Did you say you made it all alone?”

“Because I wanted to surprise you.”

Tetra was amazed when I said so.
“The threshing machine was enough of a surprise.”

“Fufun, there is still another surprise tool!”

“Isn’t it a strange thing?”

“It is rude to call it strange. It is a winnower.”

I touch the winnower, which I placed in the corner.

It is the result of all my might.

It is natural because I am not a farming tool enthusiast and only saw its appearance in a history textbook.

But I know its mechanism is separate by wind force.

As long as the principle is understood, I can make it by trial and error.

It is hard to say it’s perfect, but I can improve it little by little.

After all, when I was in elementary school, I was good in art’s class enough to get a [well done].

I can naturally do this much.

“Is it good? I mixed wheat and chaff together first? I turn the handle.”

I proudly explain it to everybody, which I practiced as the winnower moved.

Crack

……

……

I think that it still needs improvement.

In the end, everyone works hard to separate them.

u were probably born in the country of Rosaith, weren't you?"

Chapter 15: Bread

The bread that we eat in modern japan is made from mixing things like flour, eggs, butter, and milk, and baked through, having it rise with yeast.

But ancient bread was different.

It didn't contain such luxurious things as butter, eggs, or milk.

Yeast also has yet to be developed.

They were made by just mixing water and wheat, having a texture similar to that of crepes.

It's by no means inedible.

But it doesn't taste good.

Although I've become accustomed to rough foods, I want to eat tasty foods if possible.

Eh!? There are people who eat centipedes, so I should deal with it you say?

No way, I don't wanna. They do that because it's an emergency, they have too. They are crazy.

Anyway, let's make some tasty bread!

We don't have any cows' milk, but we have goat milk. I don't know if it will work as a replacement, but it has to be better than water.

We will need yeast for later.

Just as the name implies by the ending, yeast is a bacteria. (TL: yeast = イースト菌, bacteria = 菌)

It needs to be cultivated.

It's a mystery whether or not yeast is present in this world's atmosphere, but it probably does.

Pigs, cows, goats, deers, grapes, olives, wheat, barley, turnips, and clovers all exist just like my world, so it would be strange if yeast didn't.

It's definitely there. Probably.

"That yeast thing, how do you make it?"

"Rather than say make, its better to say you grow yeast……but first you put raisins inside pots I think? Then you put in water. Then you seal it, and you let it sit for a while."

"That's it?"

"That's it."

You shouldn't doubt me since I learned how to make homemade bread during elementary school!.

What should I do when the knowledge that I learn in class is not useful in another world?

During the lesson, I did this using a bottle so I know the details…….

But we don't really have any bottles……

Can it be left alone for three days untreated? If we couldn't do it then that's too bad, then we'll just have to challenge it again.

“We did it!!”

I held the finished bread in my hand.

HOT!!

I unintentionally dropped it.

Careful not to burn myself, I tore off a piece and threw it into my mouth.

Delicious!!

It’s not possible to make bread like that, which is commercially available in Japan, but it’s much better than what we are always eating.

With this I will be released from my rough diet.

“Is it really that good?”

“If you try it, you’ll know”

I carry the bread towards Tetra’s mouth.

Tetra was wide-eyed.

“It’s soft!!”

“Isn’t it? From now on we will eat this every day.”

The children, trying to be first, pick up some bread.

It was a huge hit. (I think it sounds better than “It was very popular”

Well, now that the atmosphere has calmed down I broke the ice. (TL: Would break the news be better?)

“According to Julia, the countries of King Domorgal and King Gilberd have had a bad harvest, but the country of King Rosaith produced a decent amount of wheat”

“…What are you trying to say?”

Roswald gave a dubious look.

“Yo

“…..That’s right but…”

“If it’s now you could probably go home.”

I said so quietly.

There were eight people in additions to Roswald who came from Rosaith.

If they were to leave we wouldn’t be able to take care of our fields.

But that doesn’t matter.

Children should grow up in the same environment as their parents. As for me, I don’t have any parents, so it doesn’t really apply to me.

“Hey, Nii-san.”

“What is it?”

“Are you an idiot?”

“…. what do you mean by that?”

They suddenly started abusing me without reason.

What I said was correct. At least I thought I was right.

“It is true that we loved our parents, but you know, they discarded us. In the first place, even if there wasn’t any other choice in the matter, of course we won’t forgive them. Anyhow, we aren’t welcome so we can’t go back. We would just be another mouth to feed and even after that we might still be kicked out again. This time we might also be sold as slaves, so of course we don’t want to go back.”

…..

…..

…..

Certainly, that’s true.

In the first place, returning a child to someone who abandoned them, of course can’t be right.

If I calmly think, such a thing is obvious.

Rather than be given the cold shoulder, it's more likely for them to get screwed.

Why didn't I realize it earlier?

Ah, that's right.

It was just my complex I guess.

Since my parents aren't here, I glorify the presence of parents. (TL: since he misses his parents and home)

I was just arbitrarily pressing my ideals on them.

"And one more thing."

Roswald said, laughing.

"Since everyone loves Nii-san, since nii-san did not forsake us, but rather helped us. Despite having no relation to us. "

"I see….."

It was just me who was thinking such a strange thing.

"Hey! Is there anyone who wants to return to their parents?!! Raise your hands!!"

Ron yelled out to the children in a loud voice.

No one raised their hands.

“Then, those who want to stay with the leader, raise you hand!!”

Everyone raised their hands in unison.

“Oi, it’s fine not to go with the crowd you know. Those who want to go home, you can go home if the opportunity arises you know?”

Of course, there has to be one person right?

I mean, wasn’t everyone crying at the start?

You were crying out for your parents weren’t you?

But, still no one came forward.

And no one’s expressions changed at all.

Even if the atmosphere were washed away their expressions should be able to change. But no one changed.

They just stared at me.

What does it mean? (TL: why are the protags always this dense?) (pengu:jap thing)

“We may not have been loved by our parents in the first place, or the village could have been the one that disliked us, so even though we were sad at the start, when we calmly thought about it, we decided we didn’t want to return after all. Of course we always have thoughts of going back home. Besides if we stay with you we won’t go hungry and you are kind to us. Everyone loves you, are you convinced now?”

Tetra said, trying to persuade me.

I see, it's like that, huh?

I was loved by them that much, huh….

"Almis-san, are you crying?"

"I'm not crying!! I couldn't be crying silly! I'm the leader you know!!"

Damn, to cry this much….ah, right now I'm twelve aren't I?

"I understand. From now on I will continue being the leader of this group! Henceforth, follow me to the future!"

"""" ROGER, LEADER!! """"

The children shouted together in unison.

Why are did they all breathing in unison?

It couldn't be…..

"Were you already prepared for when I said this?"

"Ah, were we caught?"

Soyon stuck out her tongue.

“Tetra said that you occasionally seemed concerned about something.”

Gram told me.

I see, Tetra huh.

“The long awaited moment when the leader will cry!!”

Ron said

“Hey, wait a minute. Roswald was the one who was the most excited for this you know! You little… was this rehearsed?”

“Well, we knew this subject was gonna come up you know? It’s a long awaited thing so we wanted to say everything right and the one who proposed that we all shout at the same time was Ron!”

“Don’t put the blame on me!!”

A fuss has started.

It’s not like I was going to cry without exception you know…..

“Calm down. I’m not really angry or anything. C’mon, let’s eat the bread. Today is a party!!”

“…..there’s only bread though”

Tetra muttered quietly.

Don’t say unnecessary things, stupid.

Chapter 16

lake.

Chapter 16: Honey

Time flies.

Three years have passed since then.

I'm 15-years-old now.

After the wheat harvest, the village population increased to 70.

We gained as many as 40 people. It's not only little children, but also big children……the food situation is considerably bad because there were a lot of 10-year-old children.

There are was no famine in the next three years, but apparently the parents abandon the children because of heavy taxation, and the current population is 100 people. It is not laughable.

Judging from my eyes, no country has a big population.

Though I think the children born rate every year isn't very high……..

Isn't this considerably terrible?

Children are thrown away in this forest, naturally, there will be children sold as slaves, too.

By the way, the breakdown of 100 people is 30 people around the ages of 12-15-years-old. 40 people are 8-11-years-old. 30 people are 8-years-old or younger.

I cut down the trees and begin to increase the field as soon as the village fields become insufficient.

The domestic animals are four cows and then goats. In addition of ten chickens.

I want to introduce pigs if there is room for it……..

I was refused further by the surrounding villages.

I got those originally because there were a few coercive negotiations.

Oops, I should not forget about the animal incidents.

Soyon picked up three hawk babies (larva) recently.

I heard that apparently she brought home the baby from the nest that the parent birds disappeared from.

The hawk seems to belong to a large species, I would be eaten because they are large size birds of prey who stalk the sky.

I told her to throw them away because a lot of meat is necessary, it is doubtful whether she's able to raise it, but she said [They are a little different from us, because the parents can't abandon the children who aren't theirs.]

I finally recognized unwillingly as I told other children to help me.

Well, it is bad for the children's education, if I throw it away.

Soyon, Tetora, and another child called Lulu have begun to show talent in black art.

Therefore, it is possible to put a soul in the hawk…….

There was that ulterior motive, too.

By the way, according to the plan, the three hawks hunt with three people.

It is all good, if the result is good.

In addition, the investigation of the whole forest is finished in these 3 years and I find some dead villages.

They’re older than our village, but while they are completely worn-out, using them is still better than having to do the ploughing from scratch.

There is a plan to move the people there if the population increases even more.

In addition, the relationship with the griffon still continues.

We have liquor and talk periodically.

I want to have some protection in case of emergency.

Thus currently, I’m going to meet one person, it is Julia.

I’m going to the meeting with all the children to have them train magic with Julia.

However, recently, she said that we could meet 3 times a week.

I don’t understand the reason.

I try to hear the reason from the girls when I returned.

Let’s not try to understand what you don’t understand…….

“Hey, Julia. I just came……”

Julia jumps in front of my eyes when I push the grass aside.

Stark-naked.

“WH, WHAT, ALMIS!?”

Julia franticly gets in the

Sadly, only the back was shown.

It was a beautiful pure white back.

There is one thing to worry about.

“Naa, what is the small character on your shoulder?”

“E!? Oh, this is a sacred letter.”

The sacred letter is the same character used in the ceremony……It looks like a picture. The feeling is 70% picture and 30% letter. It has a very complex shape.

There is no practicality.

“Is it enchantment?”

“Yes. Everybody carves it when one turns five-years-old. However, it has little to no effect. By the way, the tattoo is difference since it shines when the person carves it.”

“However, none of the children have them?”

“The reason is only some magician can carve it. You must be some influential person.”

I see.

In other words, this fellow has been carved means that this guy’s birth place is considerably in a high position?

“I wish I have one, too.”

“Ahahahahaha. If Almis comes to my country, I can make it happen.”

“It is an impossible proposition.”

However, it is so at the moment.

The village has to be fixed someday if the population of the village increases. It would be bad if I got attached to some big country.

It would be an opportunity to be deceived for the time being.

I must make a lot of acquaintances, if I seriously consider to go to Julia’s place.

“…Or rather, how long are you going to keep staring at me?”

“Ah, I’m sorry.”

I turn my back.

Water and the sound of clothes rubbing against skin is audible for a few minutes.

Julia has considerably become a woman at the age of 15.

To be specific, her chest.

My son begins to show some reactions recently.

By the way, Tetora’s boobs is top quality. There are no small breasts. There are no mistakes there. I will be killed if I make a mistake.

“Almis. I changed my clothes. You can turn back.”

At last, she gave out the permission.

“Hey, why are you taking a bath here?”

“No, I made a blunder because you found me today. It seems like it’s become a game of tag. Though you managed to tangent it somehow, but you are drenched in sweat. I felt that having to meet with Almis like this is, you know…”

That is considerably serious.

I mean it is more mysterious not to be found for these past three years?

My vigilance is too incompetent.

“After this, I won’t able to meet you any more, I’m sorry?”

“It’s good. Please be careful.”

When I said so, Julia floated a little lonely expression.

Did I make it too blunt?

“Look, here is bread.”

“Hooray! This sure is delicious.”

Julia receives the bread that I presented in delight.

Julia is considerably upper class, but still the food doesn't seem to be delicious.

There is no helping it because they have no technique.

My bread is made with eggs, goat milk, and yeast.

It must be the most delicious bread in this world.

"Here is another one."

I hand Julia a small pot.

"What is it? This is!!"

"Honey"

Julia's eyes rounded. (pengu: O.O)

In this world…..It is still early to label honey as something valuable at least in the surrounding region.

Apparently their method to collect honey is by bring the nest back from the forest.

It is the most troublesome thing.

Therefore I decided to make a bee house.

The bees have a habit of willingly build a nest in a small place.

It isn't necessary to go look for bees if you make a bee hive.

By the way, it is questionable whether or not bee stung, but the orphan's director grandpa who is a courageous man got rid of a giant hornet without a hazmat suit and put deep-fried bee for a meal.

I understand the essential when I watch from afar.

It's doubtful whether anaphylactic shock is safe, but it is easily treatable. Because I have been stung twice before I intended to make the bee house.

I mean that this body doesn't have any problems about bees.

As a matter of course, I don't allow the children to do it. I don't know whether they have resistants or not.

"Delicious!! It is amazing. By chance you have a lot?"

"There aren't a lot. Though I only have a limited amount of it."

It is necessary to break the bee hive to collect the honey by all means. It is necessary to collect the bees one by one again.

There seems to be a method to collect only honey without breaking the hive in modern era……

Though I don't know it.

Because they used really advance machinery, but I can't make it with an imitation.

If only I watched different programs related to honey more, it could be useful in this case.

Though I didn't think I would expect it in a different world……

I would have checked on the internet if I knew beforehand…..

Although, it's not really going to help even if I keep thinking about these stupid thoughts.

Anyway, honey will become a weapon.

Though it depends on the man in power's mood.

This knowledge is considered life saving.

"Nee nee, will you teach me?"

"No way. We can't survive if we only have a few knowledge as a weapon."

Though it is really bad, it is important to not teach to another party who has the possibility of becoming my enemy.

Well, I talk considerably to Julia.

"Then, what shall we talk about today?"

"About Rosaith King's government……..your state politics' systems. I consider listening to the region situation slowly."

Well, I can imagine it to some extent.

"It's so. It feels like a coalition government of powerful clans led by Rosaith King. All countries are the same. Because our country is rather strong in power, so rather than alliance relations, it's more like subordinate-superior relationship. Actually, King Faludam doesn't belong to that thing."

"Is King Faludam's country independent recently?"

“It is, it is. About 4 years ago, it about the time when I met you. The masses that were dissatisfied with the the most powerful clan of the time – the Asu household because of the famine, took control of that land. From that, they became independent from King Rosaith He sends tributes to both King Rosaith and King Domorgal. That’s why we haven’t made any moves. We would be destroyed if we and King Domorgal’s country fight each other.”

Julia shrugged her shoulder.

There seems to be 3 times the difference in strength between Rosaith country and Domorgal country.

It is understandable if I think about the presence of ironware.

“King Rosaith is sick now. War is impossible. Haa……..”

Julia sighs sadly.

The magician seems to have been troubled.

“However, King Faludam seems to be dangerous recently. Even if the king changes, the farming technique doesn’t change. The dissatisfaction is being controlled with force. Is there anything else?……My best regard.”

“No, it’s enough. I don’t want to roll up in the killing if possible.”

I already killed 5 people in the last 3 years.

When they return without death, they will come in large numbers.

It was necessary to kill them for warning.

Many people were killed by my hand…..I don't want the children to do such a thing.

I don't know whether it comes true.

"By the way, Almis. Won't you meet my father?"

"I don't want to pay tax. You understand that."

You must pay tax if you become their follower. I hate it.

Even if it is a destiny that can't be avoid someday, I want to put it off as much as possible.

"Are? Did you talk about my father?"

"No, I didn't speak. However, your father is a powerful person. Then it is more likely to happen naturally."

"A, it is so. Ahaha. It is alright. It's safe. Is it related about tax? I think that I'm satisfied enough if I was given honey of this quantity every month even if you pay it. In addition, isn't it considered a benefit to have in times of need, don't you think?"

"Yes, it might be so."

It is sever to not associate with anyone in its own right.

Now that we increased in number, the necessities will be increasing, too.

Domestic animal for example.

I want to increase it more, but big business contacts is necessary to increase it.

Besides, is it clothes, salt, and medicine?

“Then I will meet him only once.”

“YAY! Then, tomorrow. Meet me here at the lake. Because I will bring clothes for you to wear, so you don’t need to worry.”

I will meet Julia’s father this way. (pengu: feels like a marriage coming up.)

Chapter 17

lt.

Chapter 17: Meeting

“I’m Julia’s father.”

…….Isn’t this development a little too rapid?

The man in front of me lieing on the bed. Rosaith King.

Julia on the side has a pleasant smile on her face.

I heard.

I imagined her to be a daughter of a powerful clan that aides the Rosaith King.

She couldn’t be the daughter of Rosaith King…….

“My daughter has been indebted to you.”

“No way, it’s not like that. Ah, this is honey.”

Honey is used as medicine in the ancient world. It is surely the same here.

I thought it has good reputation, so I intended to give it to a sick person……Indeed I will hand it to this person.

“By the way…….I don’t know you at all. I know you only after I asked Julia about it, last night. Therefore would you tell me.”

“Did Julia say nothing?”

“Oh. She has no tact. She didn’t talk about earthenware either. Well, I inquired about it because I personally want that earthenware…….I gradually want to meet the creator.”

I see.

The reason why Julia was able to slip out isn’t because the look out was incapable, but is because of this person acquiescing?

Consent.

“Then I will speak.”

Of course, I don’t want to teach everything that could be inconvenient.

“I see. I understand it well. Incidentally. Don’t you intend to belong to our country?”

“I’m thankful for the offer, but I have to decline.”

“As for the reason?”

I say the reason I thought beforehand.

“It’s because you are sick. When we are attacked by King Domorgal, can you protect us? Yourself is sick, in addition, you can’t even deal with King Faludam. I think that it’s premature to clarify a position.”

“Indeed. That’s right. Then, is it a trade?”

Is that a main subject?

Well, he probably heard from Julia that I dislike a position.

“There is no problem. Is it earthenware that you want?”

“Yeah. It is so. What exchange will be good?”

“I want domestic animals. Chickens, cows, goats, and pigs. If possible I also want horses.”

“Is it domestic animals?……We can’t let go of livestock in such a hurry. In addition, cows and horse have difficulty breeding. They are the only thing which I imported from foreign countries. It isn’t possible to raise in our country. Isn’t there something else you desire?”

“Then, slaves.”

The current workforce is insufficient for us.

If there are several male adult slaves then work can becomes easier.

I may feel sorry for the slave, but there are slaves ordinarily in this region. They seem to be easy to control because there is a curse.

“I understand. How about one slave for every 10 earthenware?”

“I don’t mind.”

The slave is quite cheap. However, is it such a thing?

By the way, is there purpose beside workforce when buying a slave?

A slave is not a slave from the beginning. They were assigned a proper occupation in the old times.

For example, a grape farmer family.

I don’t know how to raise grapes. It seems to be difficu

I’m lucky if I can obtain a person with technique to raise grapes.

Besides, is there a carpenter?

“I still want to exchange with her highness Julia from now on.”

“……..It is dangerous. Julia is my only daughter. I can’t say so.”

“Nee, Father. Wasn’t I safe with Almis for 4 years? It’s alright.”

I bet on Julia’s persuasion.

“There is no helping it. I’ll let you do it if you said that much. However! Almis, never dare to injure my daughter. You understand if you injure her right?…….”

“Understood. I know that she has some degree of social position.”

I probably don't have the heart to injure her.

Body….. more specifically, it will be the hymen.

Even I understand it that much.

However, I'm glad.

I have to employ a person to teach magic if Julia disappears.

Ah, isn't having acquaintance with Julia only for her to teach magic?

But in the worst case scenario, if I were to head to her place I could at least talk.

The number one damage is black art.

"By the way, do you have a wife?"

"There isn't one……."

"Shall I introduce one? What is your favorite type?"

What is? Suddenly.

Is it that? They are trying to strengthen our relation.

They said that they will attach a relative or a powerful family's daughter to me. Are they going to steal the techniques if things go well?

They think it is that easy?

I mean Tetra is scary. I'll be killed. (Pengu: BUSU*whipped.)

But, how do I decline it?…….

That's it!!!

“Is it Julia? Are you giving her to me?”

“That’s impossible.”

King Rosaith snorted.

He cut it skillfully somehow.

I hardened in an instant when I saw Julia make a deep red face.

Hey, don’t make that face while I am being serious here.

What would you do if you murdered King Rosaith? (pengu he means giving her father a heart attack)

“Oi, no way……..”

See, I am being glared at.

How are you going to clear this?

“Are you serious?”

“Now, how about it?”

I said jokingly.

It is consideration to Julia to not refuse flatly, because the truth is relative.

“You are a sly fox. Are you really 15?”

“In fact, I exceed 20 years old.”

“Don’t tell lies. Besides, in either case did you not change into this young thing?”

Well certainly.

I notice now that I’m not tense any more.

Is it because of the strong recognition from Julia’s father instead of a king? Or to say that I’m the strong type?……..

“By the way, your village seems to be near King Faludam.”

“Yes. It is so.”

“Are you sure you don’t want to co-operate?”

The troublesome talk has come.

In brief, it is an alliance.

The risk of involving in a war increases if I accept the offer.

I must defend myself if I decline it.

It is a very common problem even in the present age.

“……..Is it alright if I think about it? We have very little number of people. Therefore, I can’t go to war so easily. Please understand it.”

If this nation has considerable strength, it's still good.

But are there only approximately 30 people that can fight?

Fortunately, we have technology. It is valuable in a negotiation to some extent.

We must avoid war as much as possible.

If King Rosaith's country is smaller than King Faludam's country, I accept it with pleasure.

However, King Rosaith's country is bigger than King Feludam's country.

Therefore it isn't king Faludam who will start it, but King Rosaith that will start.

Mutual defense is good, but to bleed in a aggressive war seems to be stupid.

"That much, I naturally understand it. If possible, I expect for a favorable answer."

He withdrew.

I'll think that there is still time to negotiate.

Are we going to have these talks whenever we meet each other?…….

It might be better to prepare some weapons.

"In the end, it boiled down to the foreign people…….Was it a person from Karisha? I want to put in some order for livestock to them. Will you introduce me?"

“I don’t mind if it’s just that. There are some Karishian in colonial city in the south for a long time. I may put in an order of rare things in various ways if I go there. I will write an introduction letter.”

“Thank you very much. What is it?……”

“I don’t need it. Since I just need to write it.”

King Rosaith said so and writes a letter on a tree board with Indian ink.

There is no paper……..

“Then, I was going to spend significant time today.”

“Me too. Will you stay overnight?”

“No thanks, I’ll inform the group when I return to the village by the end of today.”

I said so and stood up.

It’s slightly rude to decline an invitation, but it is dangerous in various ways to remain here.

It is troublesome if I was made to drink liquor, and established the fact that I stole it in various ways when I got drunk.

Or rather, I’m going to be killed by Tetra.

Chapter 18

;…”

Chapter 18: Negotiation

“Fufu, Almis just the two of us,……..”

“Don’t stick so close.”

Tetra and I came to a city state of Karishian, the colonial city Lezat of Claris

In short, strike the iron while it is hot.

The things we brought include:

Food, earthenware and salt as a substitute for currency,

the letter of introduction which I got from King Rosaith as present for the honey,

and an iron sword for self-defense.

As I only come to meet influential person of Karishian, I did not bring anything fantastic.

I should be able to make various purchase with deferred payment.

If I can't, then I will bring a large number of people to carry the pottery over.

I want trade goods that are lighter.

"Nevertheless, I wonder why they have their own unique alphabet? It is troublesome."

I look at the message written in Karisha word on the narrow strip of wood.

Befor I can learn the Karisha language, I first have to learn their alphabet. It is too troublesome.

Though the numbers are easy, I must earnestly learn in order to understand sentences.

Even though I was able to master this region's language with much effort, now I have to learn Karisha's language.

"Then, why don't Almis make an alphabet? (ED: For their region's language, I think?)"

“It is a good idea. Should I make one if I have the opportunity?…..Not, I’m joking.”

It is should be faster to learn Karishian language (alphabet) than to make a new one.

“That’s remind me. Though we are talking about this region, does it not have a name?”

“This place name is called Adernia peninsula for the time being.”

“How does the Karishian see us?”

“As barbarians who talk in a weird barbaric language. Otherwise as the peninsula people, and complete savages.”

Well, we are barbaric when seen from the perspective of those who have advanced culture.

“By the the, may I ask you another question?” (pengu: you just did-lol)

“What is it?”

“I expected to see something like currency here. Is there such a thing?”

If i am not mistaken, I remember that we had such conversation.

When was it?……..

That’s it, it was after the time when I met the children.

If I recall, Ron asked me “What is money?“

“Only an extreme few know of money.”

“I see.”

So only the rich have currency, huh.

It’s on the level where there were several chikusenjoirei introduced in Japan, The average farmer doesn’t really know of it huh? (Osura: The chikusenjoirei (蓄銭叙位令)was a law that was passed in the October of 711 in order to accelerate the circulation of the zeni (1/100 of a yen) and measure the amount of money returning to the government.)

We arrived at the port while having such a conversation.

I seem to have walked considerably before I realized.

“This is the sea&hellip

“Is it your first time?”

Tetra nodded.

I smelled the salt, it is slightly different from Japan’s sea.

“That is quite a big ship.”

Some ships were docked at the port.

The full length is around 30 meters, so it’s considerably high class considering the cultural level of this world.

“I have heard that Karishian people have superior sailing technology.”

And so, they build a colony cities at far off locations for the purposes of trade.

Naturally, Our technology cannot compare to theirs.

“Now then, where is Einzo who sells livestock?”

Because I couldn’t make an appointment, I need to look for him.

“Let’s look for it at once.”

“Let check the value of pottery and honey commodity before that……. You might likely be deceived.”

That’s a good idea.

Anyway, other party might think this side is savage.

That is enough possibility to be deceive.

We show the pottery to a Karishian merchant who specialized in selling ceramics.

There are similar earthenware similar to ours on his open mat.

Its quality looks almost the same.

“How is it?”

“……..Well. If you’re going to sell them at Karisha, they’ll buy it for 30 blue coppers. If you sell them around here, then… 30 didals (500 grams) of salt.”

By the way, from what the merchant said, 100 blue coins worth one silver coin. I hear that ten silver coins worth one gold coin.

Salt is around one silver coin per kilo.

In other words, I can sell about 1.6 times the Karisha’s price when I sell in this region. It is a very good deal.

In addition, based on the Karisha prices, I would have enough to live for one month if I had one silver coin.

Although it depends on what you count as ‘enough’, but one silver should be around 10,000 Japanese yen (~$100).

“Did you make it? Who did you learn how to make it from?”

“I thought of it myself.”

When I said so, the merchant eyes widened.

“That is amazing. If possible, please don’t spread it too much.”

“I don’t want to do such foolish thing as teach people free of charge since we wouldn’t make profit either.”

It is an important card of ours.

“Another thing, How much does the honey go for? I want to buy it as a souvenir.”

“Give up on that. It is not something that you can buy as souvenir. It is roughly three gold coin for a container like this.”

The man held a pot in his hand and said so.

Isn’t it terribly expensive? Splendid.

I decided honey will be our main trade good.

“Incidentally, what does everybody getting?”

I sold the pots but the trading wasn’t over..

One sells to get money that can be used to buy items that will be sold in other locations.

That repetition is what trade is.

When a ship returns home, it’s important for it to have spent all it’s money.

Naturally, they are purchasing goods from this region……..

I don’t have any idea what though.

Since grain harvest is bad recently, it probably not that.

I mean in the first place this region is unsuitable for cultivating wheat.

There aren’t minerals like iron either.

There aren’t literature or art goods either.

“Right, Salt is the typical export. One can get good quality rock salt around here, and the salt demand is high because Karisha has high population.”

Salt is the main product here?

I didn’t know that.

I might have found some by accident if I had looked for it in the forest.

Should I look for it?

“Well after all, we trade slaves as well”

As expected, it happens after all.

Wars don’t stop because small countries divide this region.

So slaves will be available cheaply in large quantities.

“Thank you for everything.”

“Oh. Well then.”

He said so and held out his hand.

Is he charging for information?

I divide and and put the salt in a small sack and put on the mans hand.

_____

_____

“Then, is this where Einzo is?”

We stand in front of a very splendid building.

The house is a bit small but it doesn’t look inferior to king Rosaith’s castle.

The building is made of stone and seems stronger than the wooden

castle of King Rosaith.

“Hello.”

I knock the door and sound the bell.

A brown skinned man came out after a few minutes.

There is a collar attack to his neck.

“What is your bussiness?”

“I want to talk business with Enzio.”

“Unfortunately, My master is busy……”

“Then, please show this to him.”

I hand the wood strip that I got from King Rosaith.

The man receives the message wood strip with dubious face and disappears in the building.

He came back in a few minutes.

“Please come in.”

As expected of the introduction letter from King Rosaith.

Despite being a small country there is still a decent influence.

Julia has a large amount of salt, and surprisingly King Rosaith’s country might able to produce more salt.

“Hello, I am Enzio. You are?”

The young man who appeared before me said so in Karishianlanguage.

He sure is young. Because I heard that he is an important merchant, I thought that he would be more old man like.

“I’m Almis. This is Tetra.”

“My best regards.”

I return it in Karisha language.

Tetra can speak Karisha language perfectly in the beginning, but I can speak thanks to [Language Protection].

Moreover, Tetra's mother seems to be from Karisha.

It is enviable that she is bilingual.

Einzo was surprised that we spoke back with fluent Karishian.

"You are skilled."

"Ahaha, well just this much."

It's divine protection power~ like I would say that.

"Are you here to purchase livestock?"

"Yes. I heard I can come here since you deal them."

Einzo appraised me after I promptly answer.

Probably because I am 15 years old. Such a guy brought a letter of introduction from the king of a small country. That probably is a matter of concern.

“Excuse me for my rudeness but……what’s your position on the other side?”

“Oh yeah…….what should I express it? Well, the king didn’t formally appoint us, yet.”

Frankly, we are something like an independent state.

Territory, citizen, sovereignty. They are all exiles.

“I see…”

Einzo shows a thoughtful expression.

If possible, I want to make a magnificent misunderstand.

“Cows are three gold coins each, horses are four gold coins each. You have to pay more if you pay with goods.”

“I see. In fact, I didn’t prepare money this time……..I only came to check the prices. Can I revisit in two weeks?”

“I don’t mind. Incidentally, how much are you going to purchase?”

“Let’s see. I would like one horse and two cows.”

In other words, ten gold coins.

Three honey containers are necessary. (TL: erm… isnt 3 honey containers 9 gold? And didn’t he say that paying in goods will cost more?)

That’s just barely within our budget..

After all, it is hard to secure that amount of honey.

It maybe necessary to make a different product.

“Understood. I’ll prepare it. Then, I’ll see you in two weeks.”

I obtained new work force this way.

Chapter 19

I have trouble reacting when such candid affection is shown. (pengu……..)

Chapter 19: Paper

“Heee, so this is a horse.”

“Ah. Your first time Seeing one?”

“Yes. It is amazing”

Ron said so while petting the horse.

The horse is just eating grass with disinterested expression.

“Naa, nii-san. Can I ask something?”

“Hmm? what is it?”

“Who is that woman?”

Roswald said, pointing his finger to the woman who was brushing the cow.

“Ah. She’s Lia. She is a slave. I got her.”

Horses are valuable.

Both cows and horses are meant to be work force, but the horse's strong point is that they run faster.

In terms of transporting luggage, Horses are far superior.

However, some techniques are needed to handle horses.

Unfortunately, Soyon's parents did not keep horses at home. She was at a loss.

When I spoke to Einzo about this, he told me..

"Then, I'll give you a slave as a present that knows how to deal with horses. In exchange, let's get along well from now on."

That is what he said.

Thus, I received a female slave named Lia.

He purposely chose a female slave so she would be useful for "those" sort of things.(°ʖ°)

I don't really condone coercing someone into those kinds of things just because I claim to be their master.

"She seems to be from the mounted nomads in the east of here. For the time being, she can't speak this region language , but we can communicate because I have [Divine Blessing of Language].
Therefore, speak with me when you want to tell her something."

"E, hee……."

Roswald glancing at the Lia frequently, but Lia doesn't concern herself and takes care of the cows.

Is this guy in heat too?……

Both Ron and Soyon have been acting flirty recently whenever they have the chance.

Recently, the 14 year olds have been getting energetic. (ED: (°ʖ°))

No, I should be pleased with their growth, I get it.

“Almis! I killed a wild boar!!”

A loud voice entered my ears.

When I look towards the direction of the voice, I see a large man who carrying a wild boar on his shoulders.

It is Gram. (pengu:I knew it.)

His height has already surpassed me a long time ago, moreover his back is pretty wide too. Not a single trace of when he was all stuttery remained.

Who are you? that’s is the situation.

Well, archery does require considerably muscle strength.

“Heh heh! My magic was helpful! Isn’t it wonderful? I’m the strongest aren’t I?”

Beside Gram, a short girl puffed out her petite chest.

It was Lulu. This 12 years old girl magician is skilled.

She was the first in this village to be able to cast spells and set up barriers.

She has been with Gram quite a lot recently. .

“Hey, Almis. When will the slaves you bought from king Rosaith come?”

“In less than a month.”

“Are you going to act flirty with the sex slaves?”

“Yup!… wait No! In the first place I only asked for male slaves!”

Why would I spend money on something as useless as a sex slave? Stupid.

“That’s a relief.”

Tetora embraced me. (Fraiziar: woot woot ヽ(ˆ。ˆ)ノ)

……

“By the way, what are you making now?”

“I am thinking of making paper.”

Paper.

Its one of the four major invention of China.

Even in the modern age, it is used as a medium for storing information.

There is no paper anywhere around our region.

strips of wood , parchment (made of animal skin), and papyrus are what is used for writing messages.

There are two kinds of paper, western paper and Japanese paper. (Washi = 和紙)(Pengu: washi is a Japanese man-made paper)

The difference between the two is the raw materials used to make them.

Washi is made using tree bark, while western paper uses the interior of the tree.

Wood from the inside of the tree is durable, so special chemicals are needed to dissolve it. That's why I've decided to make washi in our case.

To make genuine, clean paper, various troublesome manufacturing processes are needed, but making primitive paper is a simple task that we can do.

Cai Lun (The inventor of Washi) boiled things like spare netting, scrap fabric, and bark to make paper.

Unfortunately, I don't have any fabric, but I have plenty of tree bark.

"Why are you making such thing? It isn't particularly necessary."

"Well, not for us yeah."

In the first place, there are very few literate people in this region so it really is unnecessary, (for here that is).

Could it be that that using strips of wood is enough?

However, I expect it's different for the Karishians.

If they have such advanced technology, It's a given that they will need paper.

Paper is advantageous for trade since it is light.

In addition, there is plenty of leftover tree bark..

Since I had cut down several trees in order to make charcoal fuel and earthenware.

It'd be good to use the tree bark too.

"Now then, what should I do first…..Should I start with tearing off the tree bark and soaking it in water?"

For now, we started with that.

As I have never made paper before, half of what I do is intuition.

I think I will be able to make it because I once saw a little of it on TV.

"Though, It has to soak it for the whole day, what will we do?"(ED: In the meantime)

"We'll tear off the bark I guess."

I removed the dirty portion with everyone. Only the white part is

left.

“Next is?”

“I boiled this but……..if I am not mistaken, it suppose be boiled in alkali.”

As for alkali, some ashey-water should do. It is lye.

It is easily melt because of the nature of the weakness alkaline solution. (pengu: I took liberty)

“Next, I think we should boil this but…..”

I looked at the peeled tree bark in the pottery.

I felt something was insufficient.

“Heym we should break apart those tree fibers right?”

“Oh, that’s right.”

“Then, shall we smash and cut it?

I see. Now that she mentions it, There was a step like that.

As expected of Tetra.

“For now, take one out, I will crush it with the mortar.”

She took out some of the boiled tree bark, and I grinded it, and once more put it into the pot, and she took out some more and I grinded that as well.

I repeated this many times.

“Good, it dissolved.”

There is no trace of tree bark anymore.

It’s all syrupy and mushy..

“It should be complete once we spread it out and dry it”

I put it on a wooden board and spread it carefully.

The thickness must be uniform, if i am not mistaken……

It was considerably difficult.

“I only need to wait for it to dry.”

I put the wooden board in a sunny location. Now it’s up to the sun now.

“Its light and solid. This is fantastic.”

Ron said so while touching the paper.

“It seems like it would be easy to write on since it is white. As expected of Nii-san.”

Roswald said while carefully peeling off the paper.

“Are you going to sell this?”

“Yeah, Its value as it is right now should fetch a reasonable price”

To be frank, it can’t be described as well made by someone who has seen modern paper.

He said it’s white, though that’s because it is higher standard than that which is used in this region.

“By the way,is it really necessary? Though trading honey would be enough”

“Well, normally we could just go about our daily lives without caring, But we don’t know what could happen. Like if harmful pests annihilated our wheat. We can’t depend on the Griffon anymore. I want a means to secure food in case of emergency.”

At worst, we can pass starvation by purchase grain from Karishian.

The more industries the better.

“Um…..Shouldn’t you color beautiful paper or something? I think its value would go up if you did that.”

“For something like being material for a folding fan?”

“That’s sound good! Incidentally, can this be use for that?”

“It’s light, and it’s so easy to carry!”

The three, Soyon, Tetra, and Lulu got excited.

“Nee, can this be made stronger? I don’t mind if the color become dirty.”

“What are you using it for?”

“How about a box? Wooden boxes are heavy. Wouldn’t it be easier if I substitute wood with this?”

“However, the problem is its strength.”

Ron and Gram began to argue.

These guys have become flexible thinkers recently. This is a good trend.

“AH!!!”

A scream broke out. It was an unfamiliar voice.

Well, this is…..

“Lia! Are you ok?”

Roswald runs up to the female slave who screamed.

You run too fast, you know?

I turn toward Lia, too.

Lia’s eyes were watery.

There is a goat munching something beside Lia.

“Nii-san! What is Lia saying?”

“……She said that the goat is eating the paper.”

” I am s-sorry.”

Lia lowers her head and apologizes to me.

“Don’t mind it. It’s the goat’s fault not yours.”

I laughed as I said so. I don’t know how to handle slaves.

Well, I don’t understand children either.

Should I treat her normally? What a pain.

Still, is it alright for it to eat paper?

At the zoo they ask children “please do not feed the animals paper, it will damage their stomachs” on posters but….

Please don’t die.

You are important asset.

Chapter 20

rtainly lighter than night in the middle of the countryside.

Chapter 20: Magic

「I messed up…」

I held my hands to my head in desperation.

We are currently experiencing an extremely serious problem.

The food for the livestock is gone.

As for how this happened, the reason is simple.

I didn't know that horses ate that much.

It's clear that the these horses ate four times more than the cows did.

Why?! Aren't their bodies about the same size?!!

Is it just pure bad luck and these specific horses all eat a lot?

「No, horses naturally tend to eat several times more food than cows.」

Ria hesitantly said.

So in short, it was my fault for not properly investigating beforehand.

Well, now, what should we do?

「Shall we cull them?」

Tetra asked while gripping the hilt of the iron sword she uses for self-defense.

「Culling, huh… That feels like a waste…」

I don't want to kill them since they were so expensive.

Isn't there any way we can keep them?

「Um… I'm pretty sure that the outskirts of King Ferim's (フェリム) country were covered in plains. Can't we just take them there? I think that since the horses are faster than cows, it would be quite easy to make the trip there and back in a day…」

Yeaah, but about that… well, there's no other choice…

For somewhere with plenty of grass that the livestock can graze upon, I guess *that*country is about the only place that fits the bill.

Which would mean that we would have to commit a form of infringement in letting our horses graze in a territory that we don't have the rights to.

I don't really want to have to deal with him. With King Ferim.

I haven't really heard that many good things about him.

Like how the king originally ascended the throne through a revolution, or how all those who opposed him are completely purged of their position, et cetera et cetera.

Well as a leader I guess it's the obvious course of action, but… the idea's still scary.

But now of all times. I've already gone through negotiating with King Rosaith.

Since I've on occasion gone to discuss and negotiate things with the neighbouring villages, by now the existence of this village should be fairly well known.

It's only a matter of time until they take some form of action concerning us…

It should be fine as long as we aren't found out.

「Then let's do that. And since Ria will obviously be coming as well…」

「Nii-san! I, I'll go too! It would be a problem if they ran away, and it would also be terrible if you were attacked by a wolf!」

Roswald raised his hand.

It's good that he's fired up about it, but you need to run away immediately if you see a wolf, okay? Since there's no way you can win.

Well, we've got a solution now. I guess?

In the middle of the night, I woke up.

「The full moon is beautiful as always」

A huge moon shone in the sky.

Although people say that for a satellite Earth's moon is huge, this world's moon looks several times larger.

Is it just closer than our moon, or is its size actually that much bigger?

Probably thanks to that, this world's nights are pretty bright.

Of course, it doesn't compare to the light of Japan's urban areas at night, but it's ce

Yuria said she would come here on the night of the full moon.

I should wake everyone up before she arrives.

Although most of the senior members have at least learned anti-curse techniques, the newer children still haven't learned them.

Also, some members like Soyon, Tetra, and Lulu are very talented and still have plenty of room for improvement, so I can't let them skip the lessons.

「For now, I guess I'll wash my face」

Out of all the children, Tetra is the worst at waking up.

Waking her up takes a ton of effort.

But if I put it off she will sulk so I have to wake her first before the others.

Since it will be a rather difficult battle, I won't be able to win for as long as I can't keep my eyes open.

Torch in hand, I head towards the creek inside the village.

We of course use it to wash ourselves, but we also use it in our irrigation channels, for cooking, and for drinking.

However as it is hard water, you can hardly call it tasty.

「Ah…」

There was someone already there.

The image of their snow white back burned into my eyes.

They turned around to face me, did they sense my presence?

It was Tetra.

Our eyes met.

After a few seconds, Tetra blushed furiously and squatted down.

Because of the shallowness of the creek, her body wasn't hidden at all.

「…Did you see?」

「I only saw your back」

「That's the problem. You really didn't see?」

Are you really so against me seeing your back? I don't really understand.

「I didn't see anything strange at the least」

「Okay」

Seeming convinced, she wore a look of relief and wrapped a cloth around her body as she got up.

「Grab those clothes over there for me.」

「Eh!? Ah, gotcha」

I pick up the clothes by my feet and hand them to her.

Looking at her like this, she can certainly be called beautiful.

Although farmwork is inevitably a job that will sunburn you and will be harsh on the skin, her skin is very beautiful.

Although it's a stretch to call her chest big, even by flattery, for a thirteen-or-so-year-old it's more than big enough.

We can certainly expect growth there in the future.

「Actually, I've made something amazing, so can you spare some time for me to show it off to you?」

「Although I don't really mind… just what did you make?」

I asked, to which Tetra laughed mischievously.

「That's a surprise for later」

"Hey, Julia. Do you know what Tetra has made?"
"ahaha. well, yeah. I think you'll be surprised"

Julia laughed happily.
I looked towards Tetra. The other member's looked towards her too.

"This is what I wanted to show you"
Tetra spread a paper before our eyes.

On the paper are some geometric patterns drawn using red ink.
what is this?

"The red ink is from my blood"
"oy, are you alright?"
"Yeah. yeah, Just as you told me to I properly washed it in water and soaked it in alcohol."

Tetra said while showing her thumb wrapped in cloth.
Although I taught you how to disinfect wounds I don't know what could happen so I don't want you to do something so dangerous.

"Now, please pay attention."

Saying that, Tetra neatly spread the paper on the ground, and placed her hand on the center.

"Shine"

Tetra muttered and the geometric patterns began to faintly glow.
What on earth…..

“Almis, try it”
“Eh?! Me? I don’t have such a talent you know”

Unfortunately my magic ability is normal, I can only cast magic resistance.
There are only a few girls who can do magic other than just curse resist.

Right now, in our village there are only ten magicians that can cast just curse resist. And those who have very high magical ability include only Tetra, Soyon, and Lulu.

“It’s fine, go ahead”
Tetra pushed my back.
It can’t be helped. I guess I’ll try.

I placed my hand in the center and muttered the same thing Tetra did.
And as I did so, the geometric pattern began to glow!

“What’s the meaning of this?”
“As you know, there are different levels of magical talent. There are two reasons. First is because of the strength of the soul……Each individual has a different strength in their soul. Typically Women have stronger soul power than men, and even among women there are large variances. Magic can only be found in a small handful of women. do you understand so far?”
“Yeah’
As I nodded, Tetra began explaining again.

“The trouble of low magical power can easily be solved. We can just pour magical power from the outside. If we sacrifice the blood of a magician, it compensates with a curse stone.”

A curse stone is a stone filled with magical power.
They are gathered from the ground.
There are theories that they result from the hatred and malice of humans coagulate underground, or that they come from the bodies

of fallen angels, angels, or fairies.
The truth is unknown.

“Second is that the technique of constructing(Magic?) is very advanced. This second part is the most important rule”

Great magicians can be born so that even if no one tells them how to do magic they are able to do simple magic.
hence it is very difficult to teach magic since it’s something that wasn’t taught in the first place.

the ability to breath isn’t really something that can be taught but rather something you are born with.
It’s that sort of thing.

Then, how does one get taught?.
There is a way to speak to one’s soul.

Powerful magicians are able to interact with souls.
When this technique is exercised on someone, they feel a sort of tugging on their souls.

If you don’t manage to do this technique within ten tries, it may seem that you have no talent, and it would be best to give up.

“The construction of magic can be supported to some extent by doing things like singing and dancing.”

Magic it seems, if you just try to do it in your head then you are able to do it.
Though, to cast magic with just thinking requires concentration as strong as steel.

That’s why things like magical encatations were devised to reduce the burden.
But in the end dancing and singing are needed depending on the talent. That’s why I haven’t come to a solution.

Julia has several times the magical power as a normal person, has steel-solid concentration, perfect singing pitch, and is skilled in moving her body.

“This is something that shows a magical glow using the pattern. Magical power is supplied with my blood. It takes roughly ten seconds”
“…in other words its that. The magical technique is represented… by the geometric pattern?”
“exactly. you can just draw the pattern on paper and carry it around. and since the technique is already completed it just needs to be triggered”
So in other words, having a bunch of magicians singing and dancing is unecessary. That’s a magic that was not able to be theorized before.
while singing and dancing, magic is likely to succeed. After all they are going to such an extent.

In the end the success or failure is based on the compitence of the shamans.
This girl just overturned all of that.

“How on earth did you figure this out?”
“I experimented little by little. finally, I tried this. I found that writing this geometric pattern works.”
Tetra handed five sheets of paper to me.
They were chock full of formulas written on them.

“This is the foundation of all of my work”

Where are you from, you greecian? (Fraiziar: Idk, he suddenly mentioned greece, maybe a typo and meant karishian? still doesn’t make sense., original:　お前はどこのギリシャ人だ)

“I decided to call this a Ritual Formula”
It’s an equation that represents a ritual, thats why Ritual Equation huh. It’s like that.

“Hey, wouldn’t this make the traditional magician useless?”

If that’s the case, Julia’s amazingness will become less amazing. Then she would just be a member of the royal family….. no that’s plenty to make her important.

“That’s not true. There are some things that cannot be expressed in

formulas”
“Exactly. Since there are things in this world that cannot be represented using numbers like PI and Square roots. While forces of nature like fire or wind can be reproduced easily, curses that rely on emotions are impossible.

Thank goodness.
I was worred that the concept of irrational things like square roots wasn’t used at all.

“In other words if you combine normal rituals with the ritual equations, it will be the strongest right!!”
Lulu said, raising the tension.

“By the way, everyone was silent until a while ago, was everyone able to understand?”
Tetra turned around to face Ron and the others who just stood in silence.

“I only really understand that it’s something amazing.”
“Well I guess if you understand that much it’s enough”

There were also some formula written that I couldn’t understand.
Since I can’t use magical rituals.

“But you know, I feel a bit uncomfortable pushing together magics that can and cannot be expressed when drawing those shapes. I mean, they’re different things right?”

I see. There is truth there.
It’d be better if there was some sort of distinction between the two.

“Then, lets let Almis decide.”
“Am I ok? Then how about calling it Sorcery?”

Doing things like flinging fire or blowing wind, the type of magic that appears in RPGs.
Though I want to call it all magic, I feel it’s better to call one magic and the other sorcery,

“I’m anxious over the “Ma” part though” (TL: ma = 魔 = demon, part of the word 魔術 that I translate as sorcery)

“Magic is curses right?”

Either way the dangerous part of the name stays.

“I guess that’s right huh”
“then from today onwards its sorcery. I am the worlds oldest sorcery huh….. yeah, That sounds cool. shall we make my second name is now 『Founder』?”

Tetra muttered while grinning
She’s around that age huh…..
I’m worried. (TL: is tetra a chuunibyou?? I hope not.)
After this event with Tetra, we created a prototype of what will one day be called magic tools.
In every textbook of ancient history Almis’ name is written down.

Furthermore, the names 『Worlds oldest Magician』 and 『Founder』 were passed down for thousands of years. Throughout the world.
you did it, Tetra!

(TL: If you had trouble understanding I don’t blame you, I am confused to. I believe that after this chapter you should understand that sorcery(魔術) is magic that cannot be written on ritual equations, while magic(呪術) is things like curses and the like which can be written. I think that’s what they were saying.)

Chapter 21: Refugee

Two have years passed.

I have finally turned 17 this year.

Our current population is 130 people. As many as 20 slaves and 10 children are expected to have joined our family.

I don’t understand how to treat slaves, but I won’t do something like beating them with a whip.

It might be the wrong thing to do.

However To keep myself sane, I don’t want to use slaves the ‘proper’ way.

Since they have been with me for many years, their sense of ethics have also become similar to mine

Therefore, abusing them isn’t an option.

The food supply is currently plenty sufficient..

There is a lot in storage.

In the end, it was a good idea to buy a horse. The horse food consumption is the hard part, it produces a lot of feces. Its affinity with Norfolk agricultural methods is outstanding. (pengu: norfolk: four systems) (Fraiziar: Crop rotation, right?)

In fact, we had a huge harvest this spring.

In addition, we have recently been cultivating grapes.

If I have one complaint, it is that the slaves' performance is poor.

Their physical ability is quite low.

That King Rosaith jerk…….

"This is wine made from grapes grown in our village. Please try some."

"Umu."

The Griffon thrusted its head into the large wine barrel jug that I had prepared and drank.

If it were us, it would be enough for 20 people, but for the griffon it is only one cup.

“Not enough.”

“Even if you say that……”

The remaining tribute disappeared like this.

“How are you all recently?”

“It is alright. You deserve the credit for this and that.”

“We’re fine. It’s all thanks to you for doing this and that for us.”

“Fun.Though I didn’t do anything in particular.”

The griffon snorted.

“I think you should become independent soon. How about it?”

“Though I would like it if you would defend us if possible…….well, I’d feel guilty if we had you protect us forever.”

I've already been blessed with such good fortune, I can't have the griffon help me so much.

However, the sense of security that we get from this guy is huge

"Nevertheless, people may be cute as children, but why is it that they become ugly when they grow to adulthood?" (Fraiziar: Correction would be "At any rate,even though human children's insides(Rather, personalities) are cute, why is it that when they grow up they become so ugly?

"Are you talking about me?"

"You were ugly from the start."

That's rude. I am cute. Visually that is.

"It's a joke. Though the fact that you weren't cute was the truth you know? Since you were an adult from the beginning." (pengu: check) (Fraiziar: Fixed)

"Haha. Because I had the body of a child and a brain of an adult, right?"

I shrugged my shoulders. The reason for reincarnating was a mystery after all.

It’s not such a big deal right now though.

“However, even you aren’t getting support from me, you have to bring me alcohol every year anyways you know.”

“Of course. My feelings of gratitude won’t change.”

The griffon spoke with an air of superiority.

“Then, shall I have you return the divine protection?”

“Yes. Please go ahead.”

When I said so, I felt a sensation as if of something left my body. I lost [divine protection of Language].

“Then, I will go home,Later.”

I said so as I turned my back to the griffon. We will meet again on New Years.

“Aah, I forgot to say something.”

The griffon said so and I stopped.

“When your group, or your group’s descendants are in trouble, I will help depending on your behavior at the time.”

“As for that……..Thank you very much. I hope such a time never comes.”

If possible, I want to overcome it with my own power.

“Ah. Since it’s troublesome for me you know. avoid it as much as possible.”

“Oi,I’m home now!!”

Tetra ran up to me as I called out from the village entrance.

“Welcome back, dear!”

Since when did I get married to you?

“This is no time to be senile. Come quickly.”

Tetra pulled on my clothes while saying so.

Her face seems extremely serious.

What happened?

“Leader! It is terrible, Big trouble!”

Ron ran. Ron’s face has completely stiff, too.

“What happened?”

“There is a group of about 30 people moving towards here.”

30 people?

What’s with that large number?

When I walked to the center of the village, I saw the 30 people mentioned.

There were various men and women of all ages.

“Are you this village’s chief!?”

One tall man ran up to me.

“Yes, for the time being. You people are?”

I asked back frankly.

“My name is Yal. We are…….”

The man began to explain their circumstances.

They seem to have been citizens of King Faludam’s country.

There are few magicians in King Faludam’s country so it is easily affected by curses.

That is why famines have frequently occurred, they say.

“In addition, a large rapid increase in tax……However, you will be killed if you can’t pay. I actually intended to run away to King Rosaith’s country, but he refused entrance. I was troubled of what to do and heard a rumor about this village.”

“In addition, every year the tax gets heavier…. But if you don’t pay it you will be killed. We actually intended to escape to King Rosaith’s Country, but he refused us entrance. We were troubled over what to do when we heard rumors about this village.”(Fraiziar QC/TLCheck)

“Rumors?”

“Yes. That there was a village deep in the forest that is under the griffon’s protection.” Moreover, it is the forest where the abandoned children live. I did not think it could possibly be true.”

“Yes, It was said that deep within the forest there was a paradise under the protection of the griffon. Furthermore they said that it was where children who were abandoned in the forest are living. I never thought such a rumor could have been true.” (Fraiziar QC)

No, that’s wrong. This isn’t a paradise at all. We do agriculture and grow our food normally, you know?

“In short. You want to live here?”

“Please. I will do any sort of work so…….”

The 30 refugees all lowered their heads simultaneously.

Now then, what should I do?…….

“Lulu-chan!!”

One of the refugees suddenly shouted..

What on earth?

“Lulu-chan! It’s Lulu-chan, Isn’t it?”

The woman shouted with tears floating in eyes.

Could it be……..

“Is it Mother?”

As I asked her, Lulu nodded.

Lulu’s mother approached Lulu and tried to embrace her,

But Lulu brushed away her hands.

“Wh, Why?”

The mother stepped backwards displaying a shocked face.

Lulu scowled at her.

“You’re acting as if you are my mother, even though you already abandoned me!”

Lulu shouted and turned towards me.

“Almis! I’m apposed to this. Let’s quickly send them back to Faludam. It would be stupid to make enemies of King Faludam for people like them!”(Fraiziar TLC and QC)

At Lulu’s words, the refugees showed various expressions.

Angry expressions, sad expressions, expressions of resignation.

“I also object. I hate this!”

Ron pouted.

“I agree with Ron. I mean, aren’t they outsiders?”

Roswald said, looking displeased..

“I think that we should accept them! After all, isn’t their reason for coming here the same as ours?”

“I agree with Soyon. I think that they are the same as us when we were in trouble. It is our turn to help this time.”

The two said while looking at the children within the group of 30 people.

If anything, the two are concerned for the children rather than the adults.

“Almis. I object for the moment. Because, they are untrustworthy. Possibly, it is King Faludam’s strategy to steal the village from us in the inside. First of all, let’s take confirmation.”

“Almis, for the moment I am against letting them in. I mean, We can’t trust them. It’s part of King Faludam’s plan to steal the village from us from the inside. First we need to make sure that isn’t the case.”(Fraiziar QC)

Tetra said so with a composed expression.

In other words, she would agree to let them in if they were trustworthy.

Well, I guess that’s right. It’s important to make sure, isn’t it?”

“Then, I will go to King Faludam’s country with Tetra to make sure they are trustworthy. In the meantime, you guys watch these people.”

After I said so to my friends, I turn toward the refugees.

“As such, I will have to make you to wait outside. I will offer a meal. I hope that you aren’t planning on doing anything.”

“Yes. Thank you very much for giving us a chance. At worst, it is alright for us to become slaves.”

Yal said so and lowered his head.

in?” (Tetra)

Chapter 22: Tetra

“For now, let’s go meet King Rosaith. I want to check whether the refugees really were trying to run away to King Rosaith’s country.” (Almis)

“Yeah…” (Tetra)

Tetra answered in a small voice.

She seems to be worried over something.

“Then I’ll head over with the horse.” (Almis)

I attach a saddle and stirrup to the horse.

By the way, I created these ones by myself through trial and error.

I was pretty surprised when I learned that Lia hadn’t heard of them before.

Since these kinds of tools are fairly convenient, I decided to hide their existence. After all, it would be no joke if our enemies ended up using them and became stronger.

“Here.” (Almis)

“Okay.” (Tetra)

I stretch out my hand and pull Tetra onto the horse.

We’re going to be riding together.

You couldn’t call it big by any means, but it’s strong enough to carry two people.

“Hey, Almis.” (Tetra)

After travelling a distance, Tetra, who had been silent until now, called to me.

“What is it?” (Almis)

“Would you be surprised if I said I was acquainted with King Faludam?” (Tetra)

“A little bit.” (Almis)

Tetra wraps her arms around my waist, and presses against me as if to embrace me.(pengu: kawaii~)

I can feel her tension in her arms.

“That person is a scary person. Also greedy. And on top of that, he is willing to do anything to achieve his goal. But since he has enough power to leave people in fear, those people naturally come to obey him.” (Tetra)

“I see. In other words, you’re saying that if he finds out about us, it is possible that he will try to take what we receive from our harvests.” (Almis)

Truthfully speaking, there is a chance that the refugees that come to our village are actually acting as the vanguard of his plans. Well, I’m going to King Rosaith’s country in order to confirm that theory though.

“How much national strength does King Faludam’s country have?” (Almis)

“The population is around thirty thousand. Therefore, their military force is normally five hundred strong. In war time it is one thousand. During emergency situations I think they can mobilise around two thousand.” (Tetra)

“So they can normally mobilise five hundred?” (Almis)

“He killed f… only recently became King by killing the clans belonging to King Rosaith’s country, Radou Ars. That’s why his position is shaky.” (Tetra) (Osura: making an assumption here in that the お was supposed to mean she was going to say something like 彼はお父様を殺して……)

“To maintain the unstable position, he would have to have constantly supported the soldiers by relying on heavy taxation, leading to an even greater instability.” (Almis)

“That’s right.” (Tetra)

But still, five hundred, huh…

For our population, we count one hundred. Within that, only sixty-two are male.

And within those sixty-two, we should have around forty people who might be able to fight.

A twelvefold difference.

No, it would be twenty-five-fold since they number one thousand in war times.

Either case, we wouldn't stand a chance if we fought against them.

Numbers mean everything when it comes to war.

"Can we w

"If we continue like this, it would be impossible." (Almis)

"And if we prepare for it?" (Tetra)

"A fifty-fifty chance." (Almis)

I should stock up on suitable weapons and while developing our guerilla warfare abilities, build an alliance with… or rather use the title of 'ally' to depend on King Rosaith, to be able to request for reinforcements.

It might also be a good idea to purchase some combat-oriented slaves from one of the Karishan merchants.

After that, all we need to do is divide the opponent's forces by cooperating with those who oppose King Faludam's rule… and then it shouldn't be impossible to win.

"I see…" (Tetra)

Lost in thought, Tetra looks down towards the ground.

“We’re only doing it as a last resort.” (Almis)

Tetra murmurs to me in a small voice.

“What if the girl from Radou Ars– the old clan, had survived? Would our winning chance go up?” (Tetra)

“I think so. If she would bring her status to light, then that would be great. Thinking from King Rosaith’s perspective, providing support is the obvious course of action as she is the daughter of a retainer, as well as since there would be people in King Faludam’s country who fondly remember of its clan’s rule.” (Almis)

“That so.” (Tetra)

Tetra falls silent again.

After some time had passed and King Rosaith’s country had come into view, Tetra asked me something.

“Will you protect me?” (Tetra)

“Of course. After all, you’re family to me.” (Almis)

“……Then I’ll cooperate.” (Tetra)

Tetra said and strongly hugged me.

“I see. So that means it was true that you refused, right?” (Almis)

“Yes. That is correct. We’ve had a shortage of food lately, and as such we had no room to feed them. If We were to approve for thirty people, we would end up with more flocking in. And it would be a problem if there was a spy mixed in with that group.” (Rosaith)

Strange. I heard King Rosaith’s country’s population was around 170,000 if I recall.

I’m pretty sure that a mere couple hundred people would be nothing for them, but…

In the first place our village had an abundance of crops. Which would mean…

“You’re plotting something, aren’t you?” (Almis)

“We have no idea what you are talking about.” (Rosaith)

What’s with that barefaced lie.

“The reason why the villages in King Faludam’s kingdom have been experiencing bad harvests is because of a curse cast by a different country. After all, it is true that my village hasn’t been experiencing bad harvests. This is because they didn’t cast curses on it due to fear of the Griffon. Including Julia, King Rosaith’s country has many excellent sorceror. They won’t end up with any bad harvests because of curses. Fact is, none of the villages we encountered on our journey were in any sort of deficiency of food. I also heard from Julia, who told me that the country was experiencing a good

harvest. In other words, there is plenty of room for King Rosaith's country to accept. You should be able to take in three hundred people no problem, let alone thirty, right?" (Almis)

"While that may be true, it doesn't change the fact that it is a bad debt. It's common sense to throw out good-for-noth–" (Rosaith)

"That is quite strange." (Almis)

I interrupted King Rosaith's words.

"If the population increases then that is beneficial to you. And those refugees are your enemy nation, King Faludam's country's citizens. You shouldn't be driving them away, but calling them in. By doing that, King Faludam's country's citizens will come flooding in to your country. While, yes, your food supplies will go down, in the long run you will be able to get back what you lost via taxes. And you should be jumping at any chance that will lower King Faludam's country's national strength." (Almis)

If King Rosaith's country was currently experiencing a famine then it would be a different story, but his country has food in abundance. So there shouldn't be any problems at all.(pengu: MC is ruthless.)

There is a divide in language and culture. If that was his reason then I could somewhat accept that, but on top of him being a fellow Aldernian, they also lived in the same country together until a few decades ago. Even if he was to invite them in, there would be no problem at all. Or rather precisely because they are his fellow compatriots, that should be reason enough to take the initiative and welcome them in.

He's got no shortage of undeveloped land.

Also, they told me that they wouldn't mind even becoming slaves. Of course, they should have said the same thing to King Rosaith.

You can get slaves for free, you know? There's no annoying human rights coalition in this world. You could abuse and sell them off all you want.

If he were to accept it, he could make some kind of folk tale called 'The Benevolence of the Wise King, Rosaith' or something.

Driving them away would be a terrible idea.

There is also one other thing that felt off to me.

"It also doesn't make sense that they would come to my village. It's not like you and King Faludam, the countries that you two rule are the only countries in Adernia Peninsula. If you were absolutely against taking them in you could have just sent them to a different country. In exchange for having them being escorted by some soldiers, you could give them permission to transit through to another country." (Almis)

King Rosaith's country was experiencing a good harvest.

Which would mean that neighbouring countries should also be experiencing good harvests. It would be impossible for the climate of only this specific area to be different.

The neighbouring countries have plenty of room to accept the refugees.

Yet they arrived at the forest. And in that vast forest, they were able to find our village.

That isn't any easy feat. It's hard to imagine that they just stumbled upon it.

"I'm guessing you just said something like 'I heard that that place is like paradise～', right?" (Almis)

“Fumu… as expected of you. You are ninety-percent correct. But you are still missing something.” (Rosaith)

“Are you talking about the reason you sent the refugees to my village? If that’s the case then the answer is simple.” (Almis)

I stare at King Rosaith, who is grinning.

“You came to the conclusion that I would have a high chance of accepting the refugees. After all, I’m such a good person, if I do say so myself. But you can’t sate hunger with kindness. Because of that, I would need to procure wheat from somewhere. Now, the place where I was to get the wheat is…” (Almis)

“That would be in Our country.” (Rosaith)

Although we could have also bought them from the Karishans, they live rather far away. Procuring them from a nearby location is a much more pragmatic approach.

“Were you planning on loaning me some wheat? After all, you would have a better chance of having the loan repaid if you loaned me the wheat instead of loaning it directly to the refugees.” (Almis)

“Yes. That is exactly right, and you are ninety-five-percent correct.” (Rosaith)

smirk

A face that irritates me to no end.

“And finally for the loan conditions, you were planning on getting our pottery, honey, and our paper manufacturing method, weren’t you?” (Almis)

King Rosaith probably wants them like the dead want out of hell. (Osura: replace ‘like the dead want out of hell’ simile with something more suitable)

But he can’t get the information out of me by abusing his military might.

There was the possibility that I could have run to King Domorgal, after all. And King Rosaith can’t leave due to sickness. Also, if he were to carelessly mobilise his army he could be attacked from behind by clans aiming for the throne.

And above all, if he were to do that he would be hated by Julia, who is close with me.

It would be tough, living while being hated by your only daughter.

And so he decided to use the refugees to get the information out of me.

It’s probably something like that.

When I explain all that, King Rosaith clapped.

Applause… does that mean I answered correctly? That doesn’t make me happy.

“You are ninety-nine percent correct!! Magnificent. If you were Our son, I would make you Our successor without hesitation. But you are still missing the last one percent. Do you know what that is?” (Rosaith) (Osura: The king uses 俺 twice in this entire chapter, as far as I can tell. The other one makes sense as he’s breaking his ‘kingly’ character, but I think that this one is a mistake by the author)

……

I don’t know.

King Rosaith shows an evil smile as he looks at my face.

“The one who cursed King Faludam’s country was I. How’s that? Wahahahaha-*cough* *cough* *cough*” (Rosaith) (Osura – important, so leave as ED note: The king uses 俺 (ore) instead of his usual 我/私 (ware/watashi) here. 俺 is an arrogant masculine way of referring to oneself, whereas his usual 我 is usually used by kings and the like, which is why I switched from royal we to I, which works especially well in this case in conserving the meaning I feel)

Don’t work yourself up. You’re sick.

As I look coldly at King Rosaith, he reclines arrogantly with a nonchalant air around him.

“Now then, how much do you want?” (Rosaith)

“No, we don’t need any, we’ve got enough.” (Almis)

When I answer so, King Rosaith’s face stiffens.

The most common form of farming in Adernia Peninsula is the two-field system.(Osura: http://www.britannica.com/topic/two-field-system)

And in my village, we use the Norfolk four-course system of crop rotation. Our productivity levels are fundamentally different! (Osura: https://www.britannica.com/topic/Norfolk-four-

course-system)

And we even use cows and horses for ploughing deeper into the soil.

Although King Rosaith seems to have expected that we would end up running out of food… that would only be the case if we applied the two-field system as well.

Too bad! You had based your entire plan on what was actually your miscalculation!! I-D-I-O-T!! (Osura: MC is acting childish here)

“That’s only at the moment, right? You’ll run out in no time.” (Rosaith)

King Rosaith said, with a nonchalant look as if what he was saying had nothing to do with him.

What are you saying?

I just said we’re doing fine, didn’t I?

Seeing me with a dumbfounded look on my face, King Rosaith said:

“You overlooked something important, didn’t you? Well, that doesn’t matter. After all, within three days you will come crying to Us for help, pleading ‘please lend me wheat’.” (Rosaith)

This guy, showing a look like he’s already beat me.

There’s no way that I will come crying to you.

Well, whatever.

“By the way, can I ask you something? What would you do if the child of the ruler prior to Faludam – Rago-san, was it – had lived on?” (Almis)

“We would… offer them protection. Rago-dono was a sworn friend of Ours. We could tell whether they were truthfully his child or not by the sacred character and crest on their back.” (Rosaith)

“Then what would you do if that child was to ask for forces to regain their land?” (Almis)

“That would depend on the situation, but… We may lend the forces if there was a chance of victory… could it be, you are Rago’s child?” (Rosaith)

“That is by no means the case. It is not me.” (Almis)

Although if that were true, then this would all be so easy.

“…May We also ask something?” (Rosaith)

“What is it?” (Almis)

“Who is that girl?” (Rosaith)

Before I answer, Tetra clings to me and declares, (pengu :3)

“I’m Almis’ wife.” (Tetra)

I don’t remember getting married though…(pengu: lol, she knock ALmis out and marry him) (Manga Hunter: LOL) (Fraiziar:Just accept her, she is best girl)

Well, it's fine.

Doing it like this is more convenient.

"Something like that." (Almis)

"Is that so…" (Rosaith)

King Rosaith fixedly looks at Tetra's face.

I look at Tetra's face.

Tetra gave a large nod.

"She is the daughter of Rago Ars, Tetra Ars." (Almis)

"We see. We felt like We had seen her face before. She looks exactly the same as him." (Rosaith)

"Do you need to confirm?" (Tetra)

King Rosaith shook his head in a grand motion in response to Tetra's question.

"There is no need for that. We can tell from your face. And besides, you are not one to make such an inconsequential lie. And also, what is most important isn't whether you are the real thing or not. It is whether you can do work of the same level as the genuine article or not." (Rosaith)

So it doesn't matter whether she is truly Rago Ars' daughter, as long

as those around her accept her as such.

It's definitely something he would say.

"But you are quite the crafty one. If you manage to give King Faludam a good fright and shake him up a bit, we will attack him and give you the rights to your own clan." (Rosaith)

"Haha. Thank you very much. Although I will only be giving him a fright if he comes attacking first." (Almis)

There's no guarantee that they will attack us, after all.

I don't particularly want power. All I want is to be able to make use of whatever I can.

If King Faludam turns out to actually be a peace-loving person, there won't be any war.

"Well then, I will be making my leave here. I have to be checking on King Faludam's country." (Almis)

"Yes. Be careful." (Rosaith)

We took our leave from King Rosaith's presence.

"Hey, Almis." (Tetra)

"What is it?" (Almis)

“It ended up with me taking the role of your wife, but is that fine? You’re not straining yourself, are you?”(Tetra)

Tetra asked anxiously.

“A bit late for that, don’t you think? I’m not straining myself. After all, you are cute. Rather, I’m happy more than anything. And in the first place, you were always trying to show off your appeal to me so what are you saying this late into the game?” (Almis)

Truthfully, I actually like Tetra quite a bit. (pengu: Fraiziar: your girl got accepted!!!!) (Fraiziar: PRAISE BE)

Although I don’t really understand the concept of love… well, I don’t mind if it’s Tetra.

I can come to truly believe that.

“What about Julia?” (Tetra)

“…Our social classes are just too different.” (Almis)

She is the only daughter of King Rosaith.

Sooner or later she will have to be wed to the son of some largely influential clan.

It wasn’t fated to be me. (pengu: soon…….)

I’m not so dense as to not understand the fact that Julia has strong feelings for me. (pengu:…… that’s new)

I also like her, just as much as I like Tetra. (pengu: why can’t we

have a strong mind MC?-not that i'm complaining.) She's also my type in terms of appearance. …Although it's strange for me to be thinking about this after having accepted Tetra already.

Well, if I were asked whether I want to marry her or not, I would say that I do want to.

But there is a difference in our social classes.

"By the way, how are we going to enter King Faludam's country?" (Tetra)

"Let's go with the 'merchant from the south' setting. So, when we were just passing through we noticed that there were abandoned houses wherever we went, so thinking that it was strange we asked about it… I think that should be good enough." (Almis)

The clothes we are currently wearing are fairly good.

After all, we were just returning from an audience with King Rosaith.

We could probably pass as some rich merchants.

"By the way, are there any acquaintances of yours that seem like they might be willing to assist us?" (Almis)

"Hmm, since all of my relatives aside from me are dead… there probably aren't any. Besides, I was ten at the time." (Tetra)

"Is that so. Well, it's been seven years after all." (Almis)

It felt like such a long time, but it wasn't that long ago.

Just thinking about that time feels like I'm reminiscing about a time

long past.

“Then, let’s just do the investigation for today.” (Almis)

For now, I need to come up with some way to deal with those thirty people

---

“Erm… excuse me. It doesn’t seem like there is anybody in this village… what happened? There are a lot of soldiers like you around as well. Is it some sort of epidemic?” (Almis)

I ask, showing a frightened expression.

“That’s not it. The citizens of this town have been running away at night. We are currently setting up a search party to bring them back. It’s been a real bother. Well, since the one who is leading the troops this time is His Majesty King Faludam-sama, I’m not so sure that it will end with just bringing them back.” (soldier)

“Running away? Why have they been running away?” (Almis)

“Well, you see…” (soldier)

The soldier looked around before whispering into my ear

“It’s because of the high taxes. They couldn’t pay the taxes

anymore. To tell the truth, I also want to resign as a soldier. If I don't do my work my relatives will also be subjected to the huge taxes, and they won't get my remittance." (soldier) (Osura: Honestly, I don't know if 'they won't get my remittance' is proper English)

That's serious.

It seems like there are a lot of sources of dissatisfaction.

"By the way, why did you guys come to a place like this?" (soldier)

"We've been peddling. We were planning to head north and so we've been transiting through this country, but we saw you soldiers gathered around this village and got curious." (Almis)

I just made up a suitable lie.

"Is that so? But still, the fact that you have a horse is quite enviable. Is that your wife behind you?" (soldier)

Tetra blushes slightly and gives a nod in reply.

"For this trip, we've come to have a look for things that we could possibly sell here. Do you know of anything that the people around here might buy? We could even arrange for some place's local specialty." (Almis)

"We don't need anything like that here. Well, I guess you could sell some food. After all, everyone here is starving. Although we

wouldn't have anything to exchange for it other than humans." (soldier)

The soldier laughs at his own situation.

We also make a forced smile, despite it not really being something to laugh about.

This country seems dangerous.

But is it fine for you to be this loose-lipped?

"Incidentally, how do you plan to bring them back? If I were one of the citizens then I would run to King Rosaith's country. I think they would have arrived there by now." (Almis)

"No, they aren't in King Rosaith's country apparently. I guess King Rosaith doesn't need more useless mouths to feed. We don't need them either though. Haa. I'd guess that they're wandering somewhere in the forest. After all, there was some rumour about some utopia protected by Griffon-sama. They probably believed that and went in there. What idiots." (soldier)

It seems like we've become the residents of a utopia without realising.

Maybe it was a bad idea to bring in too much prosperity. Or maybe I messed up in throwing around the name of the Griffon so lightly.

Or could it be that for starving people, just that much can qualify as a utopia?

"Wouldn't it be hard work to have to search for them in the forest?" (Almis)

“That’s not really the case. Although there aren’t that many, our country has somesorceror after all. If we use dogs it would be over in no time… although I would be glad if those sorcerorwould get around to making barriers though.” (soldier)

During the time in which a barrier is erected, curse power is constantly consumed.

King Faludam has been keeping the sorceror’s power in reserve as to be prepared to start a war whenever he wishes.

As a side note, the reason that Julia even went as far as to erect barriers over our fields is because she has way too much excess curse power.

If you were to compare the curse power of an ordinary sorceror to a glass of water, she has five baths full of power, apparently.

She is a prodigal beautiful sorceror, and a princess.

She seems to have received two things from the heavens.

Also, the person behind me is the (self-proclaimed) person who has been a magician for longer than anyone else alive, and the beautiful daughter of a former large clan.

There are too many people given two things around me.

“I’ve heard that Griffon-sama is there… will you guys be alright?” (Almis)

“About that… I’m worried as well. But King Faludam insisted that it would be fine if we sent in around two hundred people… well, King Faludam is much scarier than Griffon-sama, who we don’t even know whether is really there or not.” (soldier)

It seems like Griffon-sama's authority won't hold much weight here.

Or could it be that King Faludam just doesn't have any sort of sense of fear?

Or could it be because he's well-informed about the Griffon?

"Almis, this is bad. These guys are going to come to our village." (Tetra)

"Two hundred, huh. How annoying." (Almis)

I scratched my head.

For now, I now know for sure that those thirty from before are definitely innocent.

I guess we should hurry back.

"Well then, we will be taking our leave here Take care." (Almis)

"Yeah! Live in happiness, you two!" (soldier)

I hastily returned to the village.

Chapter 23

p >

Chapter 23: King Faludam

Soon, the stock……

“Leader! How was it?”

“It’s confirmed, it is almost white. But……..”

I inform everyone that King Faludam’s armed forces are coming.

“That isn’t good. Let’s return them.”

“In this case, contact with King Faludam’s country is troublesome. To begin with, it is too late.”

A really troublesome thing was brought in.

Well, what to do about it?

“Are you delivering those fellows to King Faludam or are you prepared to antagonize King Faludam by sheltering them?”

If King Faludam is not there, I may permit 30 people to stay.

From the beginning it will become a heavy burden, as the population won't increase if they didn't cross over.

Besides, it is a natural thing to help so I decided to help.

Naturally, children have top priority, but if I'm able I will help even adults.

However, I don't want to be falsely accused by King Faludam.

The top priority is everyone here now.

"Errr……..Is King Faludam really hostile?"

Soyon raised her hand and asked.

"Who knows? But when you see the details of the ruling methods of kings…"

"Even if you don't say so…….those people are ones that ran away once. If that's the case, I think it will be difficult to keep an a eye on them if they are brought back. "

It might be so now that you say that.

It is a group who ran away under the cover of darkness once, so they are bad assets. They will likely escape again even if they are brought back. There is also a danger in them joining together with a foreign country.

Is there a merit in doing so and securing 30 people?

I think it's normally [30 people produce taxes] < [Amassing the forces to observe them]. (Darknari: He is saying that the tax money from 30 people is not worth wasting the time, money, and resources

it would take to keep the possible rebels in check)

If it was me, I would give up.

It would alleviate discontent if the abandoned farmland is distributed to the vassals.

Eh?

If that is the case, why come and chase after them?

That reminds me that the soldier said something disturbing.

Possibly…….

“The people who escaped are rebels. Rebels are massacred.”

Tetra said something dangerous.

As expected, it is that? Killing to make an example.

That one is effective.

Though the revenue is affected if it is 1000 people, but it is not a problem for 30 people.

Probably, if it’s not conveyed that they were killed it would affect the morale of the soldiers.(Fraiziar: I’d say “Probably, if the killing of the rebels isn’t confirmed and reported, the morale of (The country’s) soldiers would affected.)

Because nobody would want to kill their fellow countrymen.

“Then, should I help? Those people are innocent.”

“That is also right. I agree with helping them.”

Roswald and Ron expressed their approval.

“I also agree.”

Gram also approved.

“I also think it’s better to help them. It would be pitiable if they got killed.”

Soyon also agreed?

If I remember correctly, Tetra also agreed.

“They are tentatively my parents……it would be the same as killing them if I just looked on…….” (Manga Hunter: Is Lulu talking about her mother here or all the people?)

Lulu was unmotivated and yet she expressed agreement.

“The other? Fellows who oppose please raise your hand.”

Nobody raises their hand.

“Those in favor?”

All hands went up.

With this it is decided.

“For the time being, everyone……it has been decided to accept you all.”

When I said so, the refugees…….the new villagers raised a shout of joy.

“However, the decision could possibly be overturned. It depends on your actions.”

When I said so, the villagers nodded with a serious face.

They seem to understand their standing for the time being.

I don’t have anything in particular to say as long as they act obediently.

“Also, Yal was it? Please come. There is a discussion.”

I call the representative of the new villagers.

First of all, we have to discuss about measures for King Faludam.

I gather Yal, Tetra, Ron, Roswald, Gram, Soyon, and Lulu inside the building.

These seven people are the executives of this village……..or positions like that.

Ron and Roswald have pure strong power and also a sense of responsibility.

Gram is the best at handling a bow in this village. There is a resignation in that.

Soyon and Lulu are the few that have magic war potential.

Tetra…… it goes without saying.

If Yal does not have the new villagers integrated after this, they won't become a part of the village.

"Now then, what is the agenda for the approaching King Faludam's army?"

When I said so, Yal had a startled face.

That reminds me that I didn't explain it to him. Oh well.

"For the time being. Is King Faludam trying to kill the people who had accepted those people, the premise here? What would we do if King Faludam is foolish enough to just come and get them back?"

"At that time……I will give a tribute to curry favor."

I feel like withdrawing, if he is that foolish.

I mean since I said that I accepted you, I would feel awkward to quickly change my attitude.

[At best, cling to me] as I recall King Rosaith's remark.

Does it mean that the tribute taken is wheat?……

"Is it no use?"

"…….There is no choice but to leave."

Yal looks down in silence.

After all, his right to speak is not equal in this place.

However, when King Faludam comes should I give tribute? The opponent is 200.

They will likely plunder if I don't hand it over quietly.

In other words, I can't do anything but give the wheat up. Shit…….I may really have to throw myself on their mercy.

"It seems this talk is already sufficient. I assume King Faludam will come to pursue the story and massacre everyone. I'll have the new villagers take off their clothes. It is possible that they might say I killed you if I have your clothes taken. There were animal bones that we had eaten yesterday. And then there's the foolish heroes' bones scattered about near the griffon-sama's bed. The credibility might increase with that. I will let you keep your face with this."

They need not have to kill the citizens particularly.

It only has to be a fact that they were killed.

There's no problem if the mouths of 200 soldiers are sealed afterwards.

If there is a chatty soldier I think it might be impossible.

"With this. It is a problem if King Faludam targets our village. It could very well work this time, but…….I intend to stave it off with the tribute first."

"Does it depend on the quantity? It will be painful if they collect a dreadful amount from us annually."

"For now, should we endure it for one year? In that year we can gather weapons. Let's negotiate for that weapon support."

Nevertheless, if they demand an excessive amount……

It can't be helped.

"The question is how much we can we take out? How much savings are there?"

"As it is, because our agrotechnology is higher than the opponent, the amount of reserves can be deceived. Let's take out 50% from 70% of the real harvest."

Tetra said the calculated stored amount with mental arithmetic.

Though the amount is enough that we can eat, but it can't guarantee the cost of the refugees' food.

As expected, I can do nothing but appeal to King Rosaith……

It truly annoying. That bald bastard. (pengu: I think he talking about Rosaith)

“Do we supplement the insufficient amount with honey, fur and liquor?”

Paper and unglazed ware are no good.

The value of that is too high.

They might come back and ask for the method.

Though honey is valuable, it isn’t problematic since there is a method to take from the natural honeybee hive.

Almost all objectives are decided.

“Ok! Please prepare the tribute. I will conceal the wheat reserves. Just to be sure.”

Afterwards it depends on my negotiation skill.

“Ah, that’s right. First, there is something I must say.”

All eyes pay attention to me.

“I, when this negotiation is over, will get married.”

“Good grief, they were troublesome with their escape. They might as well raise a revolt. It wouldn’t be necessary to chase if they did so.”

Faludam said in a troublesome tone.

The person in question doesn’t need to expressly go if it’s troublesome.

However, because the root is serious he especially goes out.

Good decisions and diligent character is what makes him a king.

“Should we really annihilate them?”

“Naturally. Isn’t it good? The same thing will happen again if I permit it even a little.”

Because it was only 30 this time, it wouldn’t affect many people.

However, it is a different story if it becomes 100 or 200 people.

It was better to crush the eye of the rebellion.

“Right. As for such a one time cruelty, it is important to do it thoroughly. What, the preparations for invading King Rosaith’s country are completed. I only have to fill people’s bellies with food at that time.” (Darknari: I think the ‘what’ there implies ‘what is there to be worried about’)

“Haa, is that so? No, I know well the king’s strength. Nevertheless, there is still the problem of the landlord group.”

Landlords who conspired with Faludam to overthrow the Ars House.

They were nursing dissatisfaction towards Faludam.

As their taxes are still high, no ranking in an important post, and unlike the time of King Rosaith’s reign luxuries become impossible to own.

The dissatisfaction can’t help, but dissatisfy.

“Humph, leave those guys alone. They can’t do anything anyway. There are no heavy loses in place where the people who conspired with King Rosaith. Rather, it is a chance for me to take care of it all together. Leaving that aside, the problem is those guys who still swear loyalty to Ragou.”

There is no person who can compliment that feudal lord Ragou is a wise ruler. Misgovernment was done many times.

It was guessed that he would lose the war to Faludam, too.

However, he is a gentle person so there were a lot of soldiers and generals who sweared fidelity to Ragou.

Superficially, they accepted King Faludam’s reign, but they will rebel if there is a chance.

Although, people’s stomachs aren’t filled with kindness.

In the end, they were killed by influential landlords, who played a central role in fanning the revolt on Faludam.

“It is painful to have overlooked that shitty brat now.”

“It’s already dead. A 10-year-old child can’t live by wandering alone in the forest. It must have become flesh and blood with the wolves by now.”

The close aide said that he worried too much.

“My king! The place of the group was caught hold of.”

“You did well. Where is it?”

“It’s a place a little south from here. But……..”

The shaman man hesitates to speak a little.

“There was a place like a village. The group’s scent is from there.”

“A village, you say?”

Faludam is lost in thought.

He has heard the rumor of the village protected by the griffon, too.

However, he thought it was a rumor after all.

It might be the perseverance of the abandoned children that united in order to live somehow.

They picked up the griffon’s feather as proof and stripped the iron swords from the corpses.

I thought so.

But it's a different story if there really is a village.

"This is bad……we can't expect to also win against a god."

"I heard that the griffon doesn't concern itself with human wars. It might not be a problem. Besides, that fellow's territory is deeper inside. No problem."

Faludam said.

In reality, the griffon considers Almis to be an existence that has become independent and has stopped supporting it.

Therefore his expectation is right.

"Is that so. At worst, we will retreat as soon as the griffon comes out."

The aide muttered so.

After a while passed the view opened up, the trees became sparse and the stumps increased.

"Is that it? It is of some scale."

Faludam muttered while looking at the village from a distance.

Judging from the number of houses and the size of the fields, the village's scale is roughly 100 to 150 people.

To ward off wolves the village has dig up and set up a simple fence.

“Hmm? Someone has come out.”

Approximately 40-50 people appeared from the village’s entrance.

They have bows and swords.

“Shall we exterminate them?”

“No, it isn’t necessary. Apparently, they seem to want to talk.”

One man stepped forward from within the group.

The man is mounted on a horse.

The man came forward little by little, and stood approximately 100 meters away.

“What business do have? King Faludam!”

The man shouted loudly so.

Though Faludam was surprised a little, he answered.

“You have to answer that first.”

“I am named Almis the person who governs this village.”

Faludam looks hard and observes the man who introduces himself as Almis.

His face is blurred, but it is understood that he is a youth from his physique.

“I am chasing after our nation’s citizens who ran away to this village! Deliver them quietly!”

“We can’t afford to let you kill the people in our presence. I can’t agree.”

“This guy, you have comprehended well that I was going to slaughter those people.”

Such a frightening idea doesn’t occur in normal people.

Is he considerably hot-headed or is he accustomed to politics?

“Then, let’s talk. Come here alone!”

When Faludam called out so, the youth began to advance alone.

It’s seems he is fairly bold.

The youth stopped at a distance of 10 meters.

If I approach just a little, his face can be seen.

His hair and eyes are ashen. His body is muscular, as I can see that his body is tempered under his clothes.

The clothes he wore were quite a fine article.

“Nice to meet you, King Faludam. Shall I approach more?”

“No. It isn’t necessary. Since you may not feel relieved.”

Faludam answered.

“Then, what is the reason to not agree?”

“Because our village population is few. There won’t be a problem for you to kill us anyway even if we accept, is there?”

The youth answered.

He doesn’t appear frightened of Faludam at all.

He seems to have considerable nerves of steel.

“It won’t be so. You have my honor. Only dead bodies are necessary.”

“Then, there is no problem. There is the thief’s body who invaded the village in the past. Though, it’s only bones. Though it was left to expose, before long I got tired of looking at it, so I’ll offer it to you.”

Faludam unintentionally frowned at those words.

Though an agreeable youth is seen, but he appears like a villain.

Still, Faludam isn’t cruel enough to have the hobby of displaying skeletons.

“The numbers are insufficient.”

“Is it alright if I supplement it with animal bones? That’s right. Also, please take their clothes at the same time. The credibility might increase.”

Faludam ponders about it a little.

There is no problem as long as it is a fact that they have been killed.

Therefore, it’s good to accept the youth’s suggestion. It won’t be a problem if I silence the soldiers in the rear.

The enemy is 40 people which is 1/5 of ours. (pengu: plus Almis’s population) Though, we can certainly win, but some damage will occur if they hold out a siege.

In addition, I want to avoid fighting as I consider about dealing with the refugees and other noncombatants.

It seems stupid to reduce the soldiers in such a place.

“Well, it’s alright. Apart from that, are you able to afford to feed 30 people?”

Faludam licks his lips.

“It looks like your village is in our country’s territory. You wouldn’t mind right?”

“I don’t care. But, I want you to promise self government.”

“That’s fine. As long as tax is paid. That’s right….. give me 80% of

this village's harvest."

Faludam doesn't intend to govern such a village in the first place.

We only need to tear off all that we can.

There is no need for hesitation, since they are not my country's people.

I only need to destroy them if they refuse.

By assaulting them only 80% or less is taken, as for tribute we should receive 80% or more.

The country can sustain a while longer as long as grain is obtained.

Afterwards such a village would be neglected.

It doesn't have value beside sending soldiers there since it is near King Rosaith's capital.

Besides, soldiers can be placed here if the man refused.

He may request for King Rosaith's help.

The soldiers who I send will exterminate them when it happens. There isn't a profit to obtain it. (Darknari: it actually said sen (1/100 of a yen) which is less than a cent)

"Will it be right now?"

"Naturally. You won't say that you have eaten all of the spring crops? It is useless to deceive me. I know how much you can harvest if I look at the village's scale."

If he missed this, King Rosaith's army will be called out.

It has to be now.

If I had a larger army, we might be able to storm it without great damage……in the first place, this village is a godsend.

There is no other way.

“80%, is it? That is too much. I can yield 60%, can you accept that? In exchange, I will supply honey and fur as this village’s special product.”

“Heehh, honey is it…….”

Honey is rarely eaten since it has a very high price.

It depends on the amount, but it’s not a bad deal.

“70%. And, I will come to an agreement.”

“I understand. I will prepare it immediately. Wait for a bit.”

The youth said so and went back to the village.

A short time later, a few men pull a cart with pots.

“By all means.”

“That is considerably fast. Did you already prepare it?”

The youth makes a ingratiating smile when Faludam said so.

“Well, fine. I obtained an unexpected profit. Let’s return. If it’s leaked I will come to execute that person.”

Faludam changes the direction of his horse and turns his back on the village.

EPUB/PDF generated by https://lnwnepubs.com/

---

we've still yet to hear the details of what actually happened though…." (Gram)

Chapter 24 War Potential

"Alright! We've somehow survived!" (Almis)

I was relieved.

Even so, when I mentioned the displaying of skeletons, I was surprised that King Ferme's face turned stiff.

I guess he was surely empathizing with them.

He wouldn't do something cruel to that extent, huh?

Well, concerning the result it was a success so it's fine.

But his impression of me has deteriorated.

While I was taking a breather with Tetra in the house, Ron, Roswald, Gram, Soyon, and Lulu those five people entered.

"Well then, Leader. Continuing from earlier, What's with the sudden marriage?" (Ron)

"What. Perhaps, don't tell me you wanted to marry me?" (Almis)

"You're wrong!" (Ron)

Ron shook his head forcefully.

That gives me peace of mind. He was surely too fond of me so his inclination might have warped.

“It was discussed a little while ago.” (Almis)

“As I thought, you…..in such a flow?” (Ron)

“When you say that, I am troubled.”](Tetra)

Tetra said as she looked at me.

No, I’m also troubled you know!

“Well, that’s fate, huh?” (Ron)

I didn’t know what I supposed to say.

It became like that. (Fraiziar: I have no Idea ;-;)

I don’t know when I was brainwashed by Tetra.

For some reason I feel no need to question the marriage whatsoever.

“Is it okay to decide to get married so easily like that?” (Soyon)

Soyon asked with a complaining face.

Is calling out “Please, marry me!” with a bouquet in one hand in a beautiful nightscape, your ideal Soyon?

No, I also thought proposing should have been something like that…..

I don’t understand.

Since my last girlfriend was in the third grade back in my previous life,.

I haven’t fallen in love since that time.

It’s a mystery.

Did I embrace the illusion of love too much, or was it that I just didn’t realize that this is love?

Could it be that I’m falling in love with both Tetra and Julia?

For me to fall in love with two people, I’m the lowest. (Fraiziar: No kidding, asshat.) (Manga Hunter: Very much the lowest) (Pengu: yayy! Harem comin’ up)

Though the relationship between me and Tetra was supposed to be a marriage of convenience, I became her real fiancé, huh?

Now that I think about it, I have no problems with this flow of events.

I mean, recently we had been sleeping in the same house, always sharing blankets.

Huh? Was that all part of Tetra’s plan?

“Waa… My image of ideal love…..” (Lulu)

Lulu held her head in her hands.

I get you, I get you.

I feel the same way.

“In the meantime, it’s a thing to be celebrated so….
Congratulations.” (Roswald)

When Roswald said that, everyone had looks of being caught and mumbled their congratulations.

Stop acting shy.

When I was about to say that, I realized I had actual feelings.

Ah, I see. I’m going to marry this person, huh…

Embarrassing, huh….

“Almis….. You’re blushing too late……” (Tetra)

Tetra said while also blushing.

“Umm,

Gram asked tactlessly.

“That concerns Tetra.” (Almis)

As I said so, Tetra stepped forward.

“There is something I have to say to everyone.” (Tetra)

Tetra began to talk about her circumstances.

“H~mm.”

Everyone seemed to have a very dull reaction.

How anticlimactic.

I was expecting more of an “EEEH?!!” or “REALLY?” reaction you know.

“I mean isn’t it a bit late to be surprised? And it was a mystery why Tetra had such a good intellect too.” (??)

“And when we first met Tetra, her hands were like those that had never done farm work before too.”(??)

“And she’s afraid of insects too.”(??)

Everyone had guessed.

Though, I did too.

“Mmm….. I thought I was hiding it pretty well. Was I the only one who thought that?(Tetra)

“Tetra, you always bathed alone! And also, whenever we accidently ran into each other you would hide your back instead of your breasts. Wasn’t it a bit too obvious?” (Lulu)

Lulu said while laughing.

“In the first place, we’ve known each other for six years now, How dull would we have to be to not realize?” (Roswald)

Roswald said with an amazed face.

“Well, this person is also a bit slow in strange places.” (Ron)

When Ron begins to laugh, everyone laughed in unison.

Tetra puffed out her cheeks.

“Don’t sulk, Tetra-chan. By they way, Almis-san. Is your marriage with Tetra a marriage of convenience? I think getting married for a reason like that just doesn’t feel right”(Lulu?)

“Well, yes that was true at the start. But no matter what the merit, I wouldn’t marry someone I didn’t like.” (Almis)

Tetra's origin was pressing down on my back.

I knew it was necessary to resolve her feelings at some point.

"Whether it's politics, or something else it's fine." (Tetra)

Tetra clung to me saying so.

Er, well… by her repeating such actions, the outer moat has been been filled up, huh? (Fraiziar: what? please TLC because I don't get it.) (Manga Hunter: I guess it means nowhere to go?) (Darknari: I think it means that after being inundated with Tetra's affection his defenses have been breached?)

"When are we doing the wedding?" (Tetra)

"It's good that things have become settled for the time being with King Ferme." (Almis) (Darknari: fixed, and he goes on to ignore Tetra's question)

It had become a confused mess.

Right now there are a lot of things we should prepare.

"First, we need to reinforce our war potential. We were fine this time, but it would be hard on us if they took from our stocks every year. Since we could starve if a famine occurred."(Almis)

"Will we fight?" (Tetra)

"I don't know. But we cannot even negotiate without a weapon."

(Almis)

Conflict does not occur unless both sides are at the same level.

When the level of power is too different there is only the dominator and the dominated.

The enemy could enslave us, and it's also possible for them to take our provisions by massacring us.

"A famine is occurring, it's possible they may try to solve it by taking our food from us."(Almis)

"What exactly should we do?" (Tetra)

Tetra raised her face that had been buried in my body.

"I believe there are enough iron spears for everyone? In the meantime we should adjust their lengths. Those are our main weapons. After that is the bow. How many people in the village can handle a bow?" (Almis)

"I guess about ten decent people, with a possibility of five more." (Gram)

Gram answered.

In other words fifteen people, huh.

That's not a bad force. The habitual hunting has borne fruit.

“Say, Yal. Of your thirty people, how many men are above the age of twelve and below sixty? Are there any sorcerers?” (Almis)

“Err, there are ten men. As for sorcerers….. Advanced sorcery carrying spirit cannot be used, but there are two moderate users.” (Yal)

I see. Originally our village’s war potential was forty people, and in all we have fifty.

Only three sorcerers in our village can carry spirit.

But the other sorcerers of our village are a total of ten.

So a total of twelve, huh. (Darknari: I think he means 13)

Even so, among all thirty of those people there are only two sorcerers, huh.

Out of our village of a hundred there are thirteen here. Moreover, they are mostly children.

“Rather, two out of thirty is in itself an unusually high number. Usually, a village would have only one out of a hundred people. Our village just has too many.” (Yal)

“Why is there so many?” (Almis)

“Who knows? Julia’s a talented teacher……Though that’s probably wrong. Since magic is 90% talent.” (Yal)

No, it looks like it’s just a coincidence that’s too good to be true.

“Also if I remember correctly, Ferme’s King has nine sorcerers that carry spirit under his command.” (Yal)

We have three people….

A village of 130 people has three capable sorcerers that carry spirit, and a country of a little under thirty thousand has nine.

…….As I thought, this is absolutely strange.

“Don’t mind the minor details. It’s probably by chance. Perhaps it has something to do with your relationship with Griffon-sama.” (Yal)

I see, Griffon, huh.

It could be his influence. It’s sufficient.

“Anyways, it’s a welcomed thing. The small difference between our number of sorcerers is a good thing.” (Almis)

Now let’s go towards a course of action where we don’t need to worry about the minor details.

“There are thirty-five infantry and fifteen bowmen. Not bad.” (Yal)

“No, there are only thirty infantry. The remaining five people will be cavalry.” (Almis)

Since there are saddles and stirrups, if we practice, we can ride properly.

It’s fine because everyone’s reflexes are good.

I don’t expect them to do something advanced like shooting a bow (while riding).

Just throwing a stone while moving is enough to become a threat.

If they can flank their sides and plunge into them, they may be able to break their ranks.

“We must not forget the defenses of the village.” (Almis)

“I think we should dig a palisade.” (Ron)

“I also think a watch tower is necessary. You’d be able to fire bows from it as well.”(Gram)

“Though I think stone walls are best, that’s impossible isn’t it…” (Roswald)

Ron, Gram, and Roswald said together .

Well, that’s gonna take some time so we should make it little by little.

It’s also important to do some research on the best way to construct it.

“Next is weapons.” (Almis)

Can we make those?…..

During the time I was in junior high I studied the method of their construction. Ah, the indiscretions of youth.

But that's too dangerous.

I look at everyone.

Everyone is going to fight for their lives.

Naturally, I'd like to avoid fighting if possible…… Still, if we don't fight back we could die. No, unless we were incredibly lucky we would definitely die.

This is not the time to be scared.

Let's make it.

Black powder.

Chapter 25

t the moment, I've come before King Rosaith to request for aid, and I feel like I'm gonna die.

Chapter 25 First time

The First Time. (Pengu: it's in the raw)

Black powder is one of China's four great inventions.

While it isn't something significant enough to require an explanation, it is what is generally referred to as explosives.

It can be made by mixing charcoal, sulfur, and potassium nitrate.

Though cannons can be made of wood, they are likely to explode.

The handling of black powder is complicated, so I'm unsure how to properly come into contact with it.

I don't want to die from doing a poor job.

It can be used to launch things like iron, or it can be set into the ground and be exploded using flaming arrows.

That'll be our main weapon.

I expect it's effectiveness will improve when combined with Tetra's magic.

But I don't expect it have the ability to cause bloodshed very much.

I wonder how far the crude gunpowder made by a novice such as I can go?……

However, the sound and shock wave should have quite the impact.

It may be able to lower the enemy's morale, and perhaps could be used to frighten King Ferme before the war.

Will they get scared I wonder?

Or maybe due to him drawing back because of my skeleton remark, it's probably impossible for him to be frightened.

Continuing from what I said earlier, black powder is made from charcoal, sulfur, and potassium nitrate.

The first ingredient is no problem, since charcoal can be produced by ourselves.

Although it seems hard to obtain sulfur, since there are a lot of volcanoes in this area sulfur can be found.

Worst case scenario, we can import some from the Kirishian merchants.

I'm sure the well informed Kirishians should know of sulfur.

There are two ways of obtaining potassium nitrate.

Either from mining saltpeter or from producing it ourselves.

Since I don't know where saltpeter is buried, this time around we will have to make it ourselves.

The material we will use is the black soil under the cattle shed.

Although the soil from under the cattle shed couldn't possibly be enough, however I plan on getting some from King Rosaith.

"Tetra. Can you develop an ignition magic matrix. Within a year." (Almis)

(Darknari: could also be called square or formation, but matrix sounds cooler)

"Roger that. But writing with my blood does not have sufficient

magical power. Curse stones….. it is one of the handy stones for using magic, I want to stock up on magic stones.” (Tetra)

“Gotcha. Since I don’t know what kind of stone is best, for now I’ll make an order for all types from the Kirishian merchants. Ron, Roswald, Gram. Will you come with me to where King Rosaith is?” (Almis)

My goal of course, was to get the black soil.

Soil is plentiful anyhow, so he should give it to us for free.

I want Ron, Roswald, and Gram to learn how to lead troops.

I must ask King Rosaith to have you mix in.

Of course I want to observe as well if I get the chance.

But before that I need to negotiate with that Kirishian merchant to prepare some high performance horses, bows and arrows, and arrowheads.

I might even purchase some combat slaves if necessary.

“I see. Tribute. Giving tribute for the protection of your home.” (King Rosaith)

“Unfortunately, it was a state of emergency.” (Almis)

A

But then….

“Cough, cough.” (King Rosaith)

“Are you okay? Father.” (Julia)

Lying on the futon, King Rosaith was getting his back rubbed by Julia.

There’s no way I can ask a sick person for help!

“Here. Some honey.” (Almis)

“….Sorry for the bother.” (King Rosaith)

I handed over the honey as usual.

“Now then, surely you didn’t just come to tell me that information, did you?” (King Rosaith)

King Rosaith was grinning. Shaddup you.

“I have four bits of business. To start, the first thing is…… wheat. Please lend us some wheat.” (Almis)

“Sure. How much?” (King Rosaith)

I firmly request King Rosaith for the wheat.

“Ha….That’s quite a bit. Didn’t you say before that you’d have enough? Just how much did King Ferme take?” (King Rosaith)

“Well, you know….” (Almis)

There is a different reason why I am demanding so much.

We need some time to strengthen the defense of the village. Which means we won’t have enough time for farmwork…..

That’s why that much is necessary.

“You must pay it back in three years. Ten percent interest will be sufficient. And in exchange you have to pay with your methods of making pottery, honey, and paper.” (King Rosaith)

“You ask too much. You know, I do have the means of negotiating with King Domorgal.” (Almis)

As I said so, King Rosaith shrugged.

“I understand. It was just a joke. Just choose one.” (King Rosaith)

Then…..

“I’ll teach you how to make our pottery.” (Almis)

Since it's the simplest.

I explain the structure of the climbing kiln to King Rosaith.

"My second request is that I want cattle shed soil. In large amounts." (Almis)

"I don't really understand what you are planning but…. oh well. Do as you wish." (King Rosaith)

King Rosaith gave us permission with a mystified look.

"Next is something I just want to ask but…. about a yellow stone that burns, are there any? We plan to mine some from a volcano." (Almis)

Unfortunately, I don't know what they call sulfur in this world.

Conversations with children rarely contain the word sulfur after all.

"Ah, we've collected some of those stones from near one of our hot springs, it's called sulfur isn't it? If so, quite a bit of it can be found in that mountain. Take whatever you like." (King Rosaith)

"Is that okay?" (Almis)

"Sure. Since you always bring us honey." (King Rosaith)

That's surprising.

Well, I guess it's cause they don't have much use for sulfur. Is it not

used very much to light fires in this ancient world?

During the Edo Period sulfur was used instead of matches a lot.

“Fourth, could we watch the military training of King Rosaith’s army?” (Almis)

“I see. Measures against King Ferme? I don’t mind. If it’s just watching, that is.” (King Rosaith)

“Is it okay if I watch with my comrades?” (Almis)

“Sure.” (King Rosaith)

Okay, we all got permission.

“Julia. You go guide them.” (King Rosaith)

“Ka～y!” (Julia)

“How is it? This is my country’s army.” (Julia)

Before my eyes a thousand men are training in ranks.

At a glance, it seems this corps is heavy infantry.

Similar to the so-called phalanx.

But…..

“Y~eah, is this skill level considered high?” (Almis)

I’m not sure since I’m an amateur, but frankly they don’t look all that strong to me.

In the first place, a phalanx needs a strong force of unity and a powerful fighting spirit.

That can’t be gained from a bunch of conscripted soldiers.

“Ahaha. It’s as you say. The same thing was said by the Kirishian merchants who visited before. As for this, we’ve been unsuccessfully trying to imitate the military tactics of Kirishia. From what I’ve heard, the Kirishians don’t have a king but rather everyone goes into politics. That’s why everyone’s morale is high, and whenever they have free time they train and get stronger. But in my father’s country, these soldiers are from two years worth of conscripting so….” (Julia)

I see. In that case it can’t be helped.

It may be a bit bad that the Kirishians are so advanced.

The drop in quality from indiscriminate imitation is blatant.

“Over there is where we are training archery.” (Julia)

Looking at the place where Julia pointed towards, I saw about 200 men training by firing arrows at targets.

“Those guys aren’t people brought in from the draft. So their morale is high.” (Julia)

Since archery is a more advanced skill, huh.

Conscripted soldiers wouldn’t necessarily be able to use them right away.

“How about it? Gram. Could you beat them?” (Almis)

“With the distance of that target I could hit it with my eyes closed. I don’t know how experienced they are at shooting arrows so I don’t know if i’d win or not but… I’m confident.” (Gram)

“And over there are the Imperial Guards. They are the elites you know.” (Julia)

Julia pointed her finger to about fifty men having a mock battle.

“Those are the elites? Ron’s or Roswald’s movements seem more precise to me though….” (Almis)

I used to do a bit of kendo.

I was taught by the orphanage’s director. (Self-styled Four Steps, validity unknown).

Looking at what was before me, I noticed a lot of unnecessary movement.

Of course, there might be a difference in technique.

The technique I taught Ron and Roswald was kendo, which has

been studied and perfected in Japan over a long period of time.

On the other hand, these people are all probably swinging their swords using a self-taught style.

Since I see no uniform movement at all.

Therefore it's obvious that the Ron and Roswald who know kendo would be stronger.

But that's not where I'm concerned.

It's physical ability.

It's blatantly obvious that these guys were less physically fit than Ron or Roswald. (Fraiziar: we get it, they are OP in this world due to japan's superior culture and shit.)

"Aren't these guys slacking in their training?" (Almis)

"Hey hey, don't just say whatever you want." (???)

A voice came from behind.

When I turned around, I saw a large man with a huge scar on his face.

He was pretty young. And smelled of liquor .

"Who are you to be deceiving our family's princess?" (scar man)

(TL Fraiziar: I'm assuming うち in this means "my spouse")
(Darknari: here it is one's family or household)

"Hey, Bartolo! What are you saying!" (Julia)

Julia blushed, shouting in complaint.

“I don’t really know what you mean by ‘deceiving’, but my name is Almis. Are you the person recognized as the general of this country?” (Almis)

“That’s right. The king entrusted me with the army.” (Bartolo)

That’s amazing.

He barely looks to be in his thirties.

Is he that talented?

He’s a drunkard though.

Maybe it was because he saw my surprised expression, Bartolo placed his arm on my shoulder in an overly-familiar way.

You smell of liquor, get away from me.

“You know how King Ferme recently attacked our country, right?” (Bartolo)

“Yeah, I heard. It seems to have been a crushing defeat.” (Almis)

King Ferme attacked with 500 soldiers while King Rosaith fought with his 1000 troops.

After King Rosaith’s defeat, he was deprived of much of his grain.

“And because of that defeat the responsibility went towards the head of the general (literally, not figuratively). So I was placed in

this position.” (Bartolo)

Bartolo said happily.

“Anyways, did you say our family’s soldiers are weak, eh?” (Bartolo)

“Well… yeah. At least that’s how it seems to me.” (Almis)

I answer honestly.

“Then, let’s find out, eh? You and our soldiers….” (Bartolo)

“That’s not necessary.” (Ron)

Ron interjected.

“There’s no need to fight our leader. I’ll do it. Since, sadly, I’m the weakest out of all of us.” (Ron)

Ron said while patting the hilt of his sword.

Maybe when Ron said “out of all of us” he meant out of me, Roswald, and Ron. Gram doesn’t count since he’s an archer.

“Sounds good! I love high-spirited guys. Let’s do it right away.” (Bartolo)

“”You’re kidding me……”” (Bartolo & Almis)

Those same words spill from both Bartolo’s and my mouth.

Bartolo probably thought that Ron’s strength was a lie.

And I thought that the weakness of Rosaith’s soldiers was a lie too.

No, I think I’ve somehow gradually understood that the ‘lie’ was Ron’s strength.

In front of my eyes, the ten men who challenged Ron to a rematch were downed with surprising swiftness.

Judging from how Bartolo had spoken, he should have had considerable confidence.

Which means that the basis of his self-confidence in the training of the Rosaith soldiers is appropriate.

Therefore, they aren’t weak.

Which means the only remaining option is that it’s just Ron who is too strong.

No, maybe it’s just that our village’s specs are too high.

Since certainly, Ron is the third strongest from our village (counting me and Roswald), but that doesn’t mean you can conclude that he was strong.

In fact, there is something I have been wondering.

Why have we never gotten sick?

In our village everyone was a weak child from the start, it wouldn't have been funny if someone died from disease in the first year. However, there wasn't even one death.

No, that has to be from our effort and good luck. (Darknari: denial much?)

The biggest mystery was about the fields.

Every year I expanded the fields, and plowed them.

Right now we are plowing fields 1.5 times the size of the original fields.

Despite the workforce being nothing but children.

And we even had time left over for studying and practicing martial arts.

That's just weird.

'Maybe it's normal' I thought, but after all it's weird. It's strange. It's abnormal.

Suddenly, I saw Julia laughing next to me.

She must have been holding her laughter back.

At my glance, Julia turned towards me and adopted a more effeminate demeanor.

"Sorry about that. The fact that you were surprised was funny. You weren't aware, were you?" (Julia)

"What do you mean by that?" (Almis)

"Heehee, very well, I'll enlighten you. Hey, Roswald-kun, Gram-

kun, I'm borrowing Almis for a bit, okay?" (Julia)

Saying that, Julia began pulling me away.

"What is it?" (Almis)

"Truth is, I also possess divine protection. In fact, quite a lot of them." (Julia)

Julia laughed mischievously.

'Also'?

"My handiest blessings are probably [Divine Protection of Perception] and [Divine Protection of Clairvoyance]. The former allows me to observe the divine protection of other parties. The latter is a divine protection that lets me see far away places. In truth, I found you after playing around with clairvoyance in the forest. I wanted to come meet you since it seemed to be very interesting. That's why I called out to you with a butterfly." (Julia)

(TL Fraiziar: I'm not sure if 「看破の加護」should be translated as Blessing of Mind Reading or something like "Blessing of seeing through shit", suggestions are welcome) (Darknari: I'm going with perception since that fits better with what it does)

This is pretty sudden…..

But it was a long standing mystery as to how Julia had found our

village.

This clears up one mystery.

“And, as for my divine protection?” (Almis)

“Geez. You sure are impatient.” (Julia)

Julia let her face become a little slack.

“That’s right. If I had to give it a name, it would be [Divine Protection of a Great King] I guess (大王の加護). The ability depends on the number of people who trust in you, the ability of that person would grow….. if it’s a man than physical ability and if it’s a woman than sorcery talent. And then, those who also swear absolute loyalty to you, even without a divine protection of their own their abilities will increase. It’s something like that. It’s an amazing ability isn’t it?” (Julia)

……

…..

Loyalty huh.

I never intended to be sworn to though.

“That’s unexpected. Are you not surprised?” (Julia)

“I have been aware of the divine protection. Though I didn’t know that it spread even to my surroundings.” (Almis)

Incidentally, I don't know the conditions either.

Well, I guess I've gotten used to strange things like this happening.

"So, why are you bringing this up now?" (Almis)

What Julia wanted to talk to me about wasn't such a insignificant thing…. right?

"In truth, I sorta thought it'd be interesting to just keep silent and watch you try to figure it out yourself. But you know, you still haven't realized so….." (Julia)

Julia's words cut into me for a moment.

"Soon, I won't be able to meet with you. Today is the last time. Father's death, it's coming soon. So I decided to get married while my father is alive….. it's necessary that I bear a child. That's why I can't meet you anymore." (Julia)

Julia was crying.

"That's why I am explaining to you now. Since there wouldn't be any more chances to explain. Aaaah, I wanted to see a bigger reaction you know~" (Julia)

Julia said with a bright voice, laughing while in tears.

“Before, I refused when my father told me to quickly find someone.” (Julia)

Saying that, Julia got closer to me.

Approaching with tears in her eyes.

“!!” (Almis)

Julia pressed her lips against mine. (Fraiziar: Though I feel a little sorry for her cause she’s crying, I still am upset Tetra 4 lyfe!)

Julia’s tongue entered my mouth.

She kissed me with a lot of force.

Unable to reject her, I remained as I was.

After what felt like forever, Julia and I separated.

There was a string of saliva between our lips. (Darknari: that was some kiss O.O)

“From here on you’ll probably get married to various people, right? Since you are cool and strong, and you have the calibre of kings. I’m sure a lot of girls will make a move on you. And you are too kind to refuse them. I also wanted to be part of your harem…..but unfortunately it seems impossible. But at least I can leave behind this memory.” (Julia)

Julia turned her back towards me.

“The memory that I was your first kiss.” (Julia)

Julia ran away.

……

……

“Damnit!!” (Almis)

I slammed my fist into a tree.

Julia completely had the air of dejection and loss. (TL: Idk how to phrase this) (ED: reworded it)

Is this okay?

But for now since she forcibly took ‘victory’ for the scramble of my first kiss, she has one win and one defeat. (Darknari: wow what an ego)

It has become difficult to gradually reply to all her thoughts.

Perhaps, it may become impossible to answer them all.

I should diligently look over all her thoughts.

From now on, please treat me well.

Her thoughts are very likeable so I want more of them. (Fraiziar: TLC please! idk ;-;) (Darknari: did my best, I think he found that the fact that she exploded on him adorable)

By the way, the Rosaith soldiers that were dissed by Almis, had a higher skill level and morale compared to Adernia Peninsula's standard.

They were the imperial guard so it's a matter of course.

Almis' standards had become a little strange since he was too accustomed to his divine protection.

hip. There are no complaints about such a policy?” (Almis)

Chapter 26: Preparation

“Now then, since we’ve got wheat, let’s go ahead and start seriously discussing what we’re going to do about the refugees.” (Almis)

I called the usual members + Yal together to talk.

Anyway, there will almost definitely be a dispute.

But that’s still better than not setting up any countermeasures at all.

“For now I’ll have you build your houses in a slightly separated area from us. You’ll all be living there together. Got that?” (Almis)

“Yes. Regarding that, I’ve got no complaints. Concerning materials…” (Yal)

“I’ll prepare and help you with them. In exchange, help me with the construction of the defense facilities.” (Almis)

“Thank you very much.” (Yal)

Yal lowered his head to me deeply.

The reason I separated our residential areas from the refugees’ is to prevent quarrels.

After all, humans are a species that can only see the faults of those they live near to. On the other hand, when they live a distance away from someone, they can only see their good side.

In addition to that, concerning Lulu and her parents.

It would be dangerous if they ran into each other.

Although, really, I want to help them reconcile… this just isn't something I can do anything about.

If I was to forcefully have them get together, Lulu would just end up hurt.

However, if they just keep staying away from each other, their relationship won't get any better.

That is something I need to think about.

"We'll build and perform farm work together as much as possible. Through this our feeling of solidarity will be strengthened." (Almis)

"I agree with that! Since there won't be too much chatter while they are doing farm work, there won't be as many arguments either." (Ron)

Ron agrees with what I said.

When you're put in a new class in school, you're sure to get really nervous.

But when it comes around May to June, those tense relationships suddenly get a lot more relaxed.

At my school we held a culture festival at around that time.

That probably influenced those relations somewhat.

I'm aiming to recreate that phenomenon

"Hey, nii-san. What will we do about training? Will they be doing

the same routine as us?"

"…Well, that would be impossible for them. Could I ask you to teach them with care, without treating them as a nuisance?" (Almis)

They're going to have to fight together with us.

While they aren't bad people, that doesn't change the fact that they are the root of this problem.

If they're just going to sit back and have us protect them, that would be a problem for us.

Well, they probably wouldn't complain considering their lives are at stake.

"What will you do about the food? Will it be the same as our portion? Or will you reduce it?"

"……I think that there are pros and cons, but I will make it the same quantity." (Almis)

Since food was borrowed from King Rosaith, there is plenty enough of it.

If so, there won't be dissatisfaction among the refugees if I distributed it equally, right?

Well, it is free food so it is weird to voice an opinion about the same quantity as our's…….

They have no choice but to accept and endure it…….

"Later, I will hold a banquet regularly to deepen our friends

I look around to hear all the members.

Other than Lulu, all the members nodded in assent.

…….Really, what should I do about Lulu?

Now, next is the black powder.

Presently, the materials for black powder have been obtained.

Next, I have to try making it.

It is not particularly difficult to make it. I need to pulverize each material, and simply mix them together.

“It is prototype NO.1 for now. It would be good if I succeed with this……” (Almis)

I just simply mixed an equal amount of each material for now.

I put a small quantity on a rock.

“Hey, Almis. What kind of phenomenon is an explosion?”

“Mmm, the phenomenon is when things burn up at once…….I guess? Since I also don’t understand the details, for now I think you will understand if I hit it with the hammer.” (Almis)

I strike the gunpowder with the hammer with all my strength. (pengu: a way to ignite gunpowder in the past was to hit a hammer to flint to make friction to create a spark to ignite the powder.)

Nothing happens.

Second time.

Nothing happens……

Eh? Did I make a mistake in the materials?

No no, it is charcoal, saltpeter, and sulfur. Yes, there is no doubt. (pengu: saltpeter is potassium nitrate)

In other words, is the ratio wrong?

For now, with the black powder placed on a hill, I insert a long string. (pengu: I imagine Wile E. Coyote in the Road runner show-haha)

I ignite the string after taking some distance.

The black powder begins to burn vigorously · · · · ·

It’s no use. (Pengu: black powder ratio is 75% saltpeter, 15% charcoal, 10% sulfur. You can find how to make black powder here http://www.wikihow.com/Make-Black-Powder)

“Oh! It burned wonderfully. But, can we defeat them with this?”

“No, this is a failure……”

Well, it won't go so easily.

I think that the charcoal needs to be decreased further. It has no explosive factor.

Then is it saltpeter and sulfur?

For now, saltpeter quantity is the same, and increase only the sulfur.

Because the quantity of saltpeter is small, I don't want to reduce it at this experimental stage.

Currently, it is black powder NO.66.

As such, it has come to look bomb-ish.

The quantity of saltpeter seems to hold the key.

But, it doesn't explode if there is too much of it. Adjustment is important.

Now, it is good that the black powder is completed, but there is one problem.

"Whinny!!!"

The horse is frightened.

No, I expected the horse to be surprised. Rather, it's better that it is surprised. The enemies' horses will be surprised.

However, I want our horse to be accustomed to it.

I try to make it accustomed to it many times……..but it didn't go well.

Horses are delicate creatures.

It went on a great rampage when I was going to attach the stirrups for the first time.

I can't perform the training frequently.

Therefore……

"It's alright, it's alright, there is nothing to be afraid of. Settle down." (Lulu)

Lulu strokes the horse's head.

"It's alright, I'm here. See….." (Soyon)

The horse behaved while Soyon is brushing its body.

"If a male is this……eh? Female?" (Tetra)

Tetra looks into the horse's stomach.

An excellent sorcerer can put their soul into a beast.

It is possible for a soul and soul to come into contact.

In short, it means that it's possible to understand each other's feelings.

As a horse is a smart animal.

If you speak to it properly it will settle down quickly.

In other words, if you can't train quantity, you should train quality.

Until the real thing, I want the horse to be accustomed to gun powder.

If I begin with the foals, this here won't be hard……

If that is the case then I don't know how many years it would take……

Two hawks circle over my head.

They suddenly stop, nose dive and soar.

The two of them seem like they are playing tag. No, they are actually playing tag. (pengu: onigokko – Japanese for tag)

One of them, the hawk with Lulu's soul in it, touches the hawk with Tetra's soul in it.

"Okay! It's Lulu-chan's victory!! Change!!" (Soyon)

Soyon called towards the two hawks.

The two hawks land on Tetra's and Lulu's shoulder.

Tetra and Lulu whose backs are against a tree open their eyes.

"Blech, tastes bad……." (Tetra)

"Cough, cough." (Lulu)

The two people spit out a green object from their mouths.

It's a poisonous plant called soul detachment grass. Its effect is separating the soul from the body.

Souls don't usually leave the body unless you die.

However, the method to separate the soul from the body while living exists.

First, you have to skip meals for 2-3 days to weaken the body to a near death state.

After that, you chew on that special poisonous plant — soul detachment grass.

It is possible for anyone to separate their soul from their body if they use this method.

And a sorcerer who has acquired the experience of repeatedly extracting their soul can also extract it without even skipping meals.

Though, it is a different story whether you can return.

For a normal human, the soul is separated from the body when they eat soul detachment grass. And then the soul has about 10 seconds before rising to heaven and can't come back.

Thus, death.

It is in fact a poison, as 3 to 4 times is considered to be the limit per day.

As this is training, doing more than twice is not allowed.

If you overdo it, antibodies will be made.

Fundamentally, unless a sorcerer's condition is just about driven to the limit, there is always a person to protect the empty body.

There are two reasons.

It is to assist when the sorcerer can't return their soul to their original body by themselves.

And, it is to prevent a different soul from hijacking the empty body and protect it from being cursed.

Although, if you form a barrier to defend against another soul from penetrating, if it's just left for a short amount of time, the soul will not go away and return too quickly. (Darknari: added soul in the last part so it's more obvious what it is talking about)

"Good work. First, have some honey to cleanse your palate." (Almis)

I hand a small bottle of honey to the two.

The two tasted the honey with a blissful face.

"Sorry to overwork you. Because the only sorcerers that are able to soul ride are you girls……." (Almis)

"It's alright. There is no problem." (Tetra)

“I’m glad to be of use.” (Lulu)

The two people laughingly answer.

Incidentally, my eyes meet a hawk.

It has turned to look away.

Somehow I seem to be disliked by the hawks that are raised by Tetra, Lulu, and Soyon.

I guess it was wrong to have said to throw them away back in the old days.

These three turned out to be splendid adults now.

According to Julia, it seems that these hawks are larger and stronger than the typical hawks used for soul riding.

In other words, that alone is an advantage.

In an aerial dogfight, it is a big factor on what kind of animal that you are riding.

It is understandable if I remember the fighter planes in modern warfare.

“I have a request for you guys.” (Almis)

When I said so, the hawks stuck out their chest.

They can understand words?

“Hey there, hey there, Almis-san. The items you ordered were prepared.” (Einzo)

Einzo smiled with a grin.

“I’ll make it slightly cheaper. So please buy a lot of it.” (Einzo)

“Thank you very much for that.” (Almis)

His good image rose a little.

“Then, I will confirm it.” (Almis)

Einzo takes the ordered items out as I said so.

It is a big bow. The bow type is the so-called long bow.

“It is the latest bow in Karisha. The arrowhead is iron. There is little equipment that it can’t penetrate in the Adernia Peninsula. But…….can you handle it?” (Einzo)

“Yes. Because there is an excellent archer among my companions.” (Almis)

If it’s Gram, he will manage it.

“Then, there is no problem. I filled the carriage with the same ones. I also packed the arrows.” (Einzo)

Einzo-san said so and handed me the long bow.

“Next is the shield. This is made out of wood with iron affixed to it. And, the protective gear is made out of leather.” (Einzo)

“Yes, no doubt.” (Almis)

I actually wanted iron protective gear, but I was still unable to buy it.

I heard that it costs quite a lot for a quality one.

“Next is iron fragments……What are you using it for?” (Einzo)

“It is a secret.” (Almis)

This will be mixed with the black powder.

It is in order to increase its ability to kill and wound. A bomb by itself doesn’t have so much of a killing ability.

“Then, these curse stones. What are you using it for? There are a lot of small ones. Well, originally the small articles aren’t marketable so it is good.” (Einzo)

“Yes, thank you very much.” (Almis)

Fortunately, curse stones that correspond to magic stones which aren't suitable for curses, were very cheap.

These magic stones are used to write the ignition magic formula as a substitute for a fuse.

It is inconvenient to ignite the fuse every time you throw it, and if the fire goes out on the way, it becomes an un-exploded shell.

"A very strong liquor. Is this also an order?" (Einzo)

"Yes. That's right." (Almis)

It's not to be used to drink in a party particularly. It is for sterilizing.

"Then, the last article is to be handled with care." (Einzo)

Einzo said so while putting on gloves. And he handed leather gloves to me.

A small jar is taken out.

"It is aconite poison. Pay attention to not let it touch you because it will be a catastrophe. When applying it on a arrow, you have to wear gloves and please use the method of dipping the arrowhead into the pot. You will die if the poison soaks through cloth and touches an open wound." (Einzo) (Darknari: aconite aka monkshood, wolf's bane)

"Yes. I understand it well." (Almis)

If there is poison, I can surely murder the enemy.

It's unknown whether it's a little cowardly, but I can't say such a thing.

Even feces and urine is enough to become a poison, but we have too small of a population for that.

I am aiming for a decisive short term battle. Therefore fast acting poison is necessary.

The enemy's main equipment is made of wood.

Then, I can sufficiently penetrate them with an arrow. And if an arrow hits…….

It means that.

Because the longbow has a range of several fold compared to the Adernia Peninsula's bow, so a one-sided attack is possible for a while.

"And this is on the house." (Einzo)

Einzo handed one sword to me.

What is this? There is a grain pattern…..

"The sword is made of Dragon Damascus steel. This metal can only be struck by the race that lives in the east side of the Karisha country called the People of the Desert. A special metal from the core of a dragon called dragon gold is mixed with iron and is forged in a dragon's flame sac for 3 days and 3 nights to temper it." (Einzo)

Though I don't understand it well……

In short, isn't it terribly expensive?

"Yes, but I don't want you to die yet. You have not yet taught me the method to manufacture paper. And, I would still like to be your patron in the future." (Einzo) (Darknari: he reads minds O.O)

"Really?……Thank you very much. Though I can't show you the method of paper manufacture so easily." (Almis)

I laugh and turn my back to exit Einzo-san's store.

"…….Fortunes of war." (Einzo)

"Yes, I will return without fail." (Almis)

Back TOC Next

Author's note:

It is Damascus steel.

There are two kinds in this world: the Damascus steel that does not use dragon gold which is equivalent to the Damascus steel on Earth, and the Dragon Damascus steel that is made by mixing Damascus steel and dragon gold.

By the way, the Dragon Damascus steel ranges from best to worst (Well, even the worst is much harder than ordinary steel).

Dragon gold's quality is proportional to the level status of the dragon.

The Dragon Damascus steel sword was made from dragon gold that was taken from a high level dragon, it is an excellent sword.

The Dragon Damascus steel sword turned out to be a divine sword made out of dragon gold from a myth level dragon.

The Dragon Damascus steel sword which Einzo handed to Almis is an excellent sword.

Though the People of the Desert literally live in the desert, they are excellent at striking iron in the flame sac that is removed from the high level dragon called Salamander that lives in that same desert.

Einzo heard the story to some extent from King Rosaith, and thought that this fellow might become a big shot as he handed over the sword.

It is an investment.

Chapter 27

;I should have ordered them not to approach you, right? Then what is this?" (Almis)

Chapter 27: Yal

"Haaa……." (Almis)

It's truly troublesome.

Currently, there is a little spark in the village.

In brief, the issue originates from the conflict with the refugees.

Although, relations have not worsened completely. It can be said that a rather good relation has been built.

The refugee's children and the children in our village are often playing together.

It does not matter to children whether they are from the supported or the supporting side.

Besides, the source of the complex relationships is because there are children with former siblings. Though, the children's relations are good.

By the way, for us adults, one part is good, the other part is in disorder.

Our village's group proved to be high in physical ability due to the influence of my divine protection.

Moreover, the refugees are afraid when they see the usual sword training.

They seem to be aware that I have been developing that place and they probably want to build a satisfactory relationship.

Of course I want to build it too.

Therefore, a feast was regularly held. It's drinking.

After all, liquor seems to be an excellent tool for communication, as such we can talk to some degree.

Moreover, I have us do some military training together.

It is in order to fight together when King Ferme comes to attack us.

The refugees understand that it won't end nicely if they surrender to King Ferme. Their position is running away from King Ferme's place anyways.

All the slaves agreed that it is common sense for them to be massacred.

Therefore, they work very hard in training. It's natural because their life depends on it.

The mood will improve as well if they are seen training this hard. The feeling of comradery will also sprout.

Ron with the spear, Roswald with the sword, and Gram with the bow; each instill their own specialty into the refugees.

Although, the spear is likely to be the main weapon because the sword and bow are difficult to handle.

After all, it seems to be good that there is a common enemy.

His majesty King Ferme…… No, because of King Ferme we ended up living together. (Pengu: Almis starts out with polite words but change to normal tone)

Well, the next part of unrest is……in short, the source of the fire.

For one thing, I don't want to hear children saying such things as,

“Hey, you’re not a person of our group.”

However, everyone became silent when I instantly killed the bear that invaded the village with a javelin.

It seems the people don’t know how to react, even though I thought with this ability the people will like it. In addition, Ron, Roswald, and Gram show off their abilities as well, and each person who witnessed it had become quiet and obedient.

This doesn’t become too much of a problem because Yal persuaded them in various ways.

Well, it is just the minority.

Secondly, this is the number one problem.

There is a faction that wants to reconcile with the abandoned children.

There are three such relations besides Lulu.

They seem to want to reconcile with the children by all means and are rejected by the children regularly.

By the way, Lulu threw a damper on the feast when she dumped liquor over her parents. Thanks to that, nobody was able to talk for an hour.

As there was no help for it, I banned the four former families with such relations from approaching.

But they seem to want to reconcile no matter what…….

&ldquo

I look down at the man and woman prostrating in front of me.

They are Lulu's parents.

The two people wanted to reconcile with Lulu at any cost, so they slipped out from the refugee resettlement ward to secretly meet her.

However, even if you meet, it is impossible to reconcile.

The two people got stones thrown at them by an angry Lulu, and a hawk set on them, but they still tried to approach Lulu causing her to start crying.

Gram walloped the two people hard to knock them out and carried them before me. That is how we came to this incident.

Lulu who was crying because the old wound re-opened is being attended by Soyon and Tetra.

I am human.

Therefore, I inevitably give priority to some people over others.

Tetra and Julia are foremost. After that, are those closest to my age who serve as my assistants, Ron, Lulu and the others. Then, it's the rest of the children. Incidentally, Roswald's bride is Lia. Up to here is the line of important people.

As I often talk with Yal who has been gathering up the refugees properly, we are on good terms to some degree. He is likely to be promoted as an important person in a little while.

And then, the slaves who work skillfully. They often exhaust themselves for me. You could say that they are semi-important people.

Next, it is King Rosaith who I am acquainted with to some degree…….Well, my impression of him is falling recently because of the set up. And then, the Karishian merchant Einzo-san. Because he lowered the price when I purchased the weapons, my impression

of him is rising a little. (Manga Hunter: It seems fine, but please double check) (Darknari: fixed)

And finally, it is the refugees.

Because the refugees with the lowest priority made Lulu with the highest cry, my mind is not calm.

To be frank, I want to hit them.

Well, it's fine because Gram hit them.

"Don't you have any excuses?" (Almis)

When the two hear me the second time, they say that they will stick together.

"It is a request! Will you please meditate for us?" (Parents of Lulu)

Haa……..

They don't seem to be reflecting. What should I do?

Because they ignored my order first of all, I must give a reasonable punishment. Since I need to think of the future.

However, our village doesn't have laws.

Well, because only children lived here so far.

But tension will run among the refugees if I directly give the punishment.

What to do about that…..

“You people pried open Lulu’s old wound. She doesn’t even want to see your faces. Lulu gets wounded just by seeing your faces. Do you understand?” (Almis) (Pengu: it is super effective!)

“But we……” (Parents of Lulu)

“The reason doesn’t matter!! You abandoned Lulu. This does not change. Thus Lulu dislikes you people. This does not change, too. Give up!!” (Almis)

I unconsciously shouted.

Yal enters the room while I was shouting.

Yal approaches calmly, seizes the two people’s collars and hits them hard. (check)

“Oi!! Why did you disobey Almis-sama’s order!! Do you know what you did?” (Yal)

“But Ya……..” (Parents of Lulu)

Yal’s fist hits their faces once more.

And then, Yal knelt on the ground, while pressing down on the two’s heads.

“We are terribly sorry. I will pass the punishment. Somehow…….will you please forgive these two?” (Yal)

“……Then I will drive them out if the same thing happens again. Am I clear?” (Almis)

I said so and leave the room.

Yal's value rose within me.

Advancing him as an important person was decided.

"Oi, Yal. In fact, there was something I wanted to ask." (Almis)

"What is it?" (Yal)

Tetra and Yal are walking with me.

"Were you the village headman when the territory was under the reign of Ragou-san?" (Almis)

"No, my father was the village headman at the time." (Yal)

"Is that so? Well, it is ok in either case. Do you know if the people still swear loyalty to Ragou-san?" (Almis)

"The influential people were all executed……As such, the people with the position of warriors are all that remain." (Yal)

"Please come in contact with those people. And will you ask them to act in concert if the time comes?" (Almis)

"Yes, well, I will just say this, but….isn't the prospects slim? I do not think that we will win at all." (Yal)

"It doesn't particularly matter. If you can confirm that the loyalty to Ragou-san is genuine, the hatred for King Ferme is certain, and that

their character can be trusted……” (Almis)

I whisper into Yal’s ear.

“Reveal that Tetra is Ragou-san’s daughter.” (Almis)

Yal’s eyes open widely.

“Listen, including you, only six people know this. Never let it leak. If you leak it……Do you understand?” (Almis)

“Yes, of course. We are in the position of receiving help from you, we will never return your act of kindness with insult. However…….really?” (Yal)

Hmm, he doesn’t believe me.

This fellow knows almost nothing about Tetra.

Eh? That reminds me that I have not seen the concrete evidence, either.

“Hey, Tetra. Can you show me your sacred character?” (Almis)

“Understood.” (Tetra)

Tetra said so, turns back, and pulls her clothes up a little.

The sacred character [Wisdom], which signified the family crest,

was carved onto her lower back.

“It is surely the Ars’s family crest…..There is no mistake……” (Yal)

Yal looks at Tetra’s family crest steadily.

Don’t look at my bride’s back so much.

“Thank you for the trouble. Then, I will infiltrate them.” (Yal)

“I’ll count on you. You don’t need to over do it. I will be troubled if you die.” (Almis)

At any rate, this is the only person who can unify the new citizens.

“Please also write a will. Please nominate the next successor.” (Almis)

“I can not write Karishian?” (Yal)

“Tetra and I can take dictation for you.” (Almis)

Yal was visiting King Ferme’s country.

In King Ferme's country, there are hundreds or more villages ranging in size from 50 to 200 people.

So there are a number of village headmen.

Yal's village is in the most remote region of King Ferme's country, so the number of residents are few.

Moreover, Yal became the village headman because his father suddenly died three years ago.

Therefore, most don't know his face.

Although, you would think that he would become famous as he was the headman of the village who ran away just a little while ago.

But then, there is no need to mind it since he is supposed to have died.

Now, the problem is how we will get in contact with the Ars faction who hold dissatisfaction against King Ferme.

Yal had an idea about a person who might be in the Ars faction.

The name of that man is Volos.

He is a warrior descendant of the former Ars family, he has many achievements in the war against King Domorgal's country.

When King Ferme rose in revolt, he took leave and stayed in his home.

He had been easily caught because of that.

At first, King Ferme was going to kill Volos.

It is because Volos's loyalty to Ragou Ars seems to be genuine.

But, he couldn't be killed.

The reason is simple.

It is because the soldiers who supported King Ferme's revolt were

residents of Volos's territory and appealed for his mercy.

As one would expect, even King Ferme cannot kill him when his supporters appealed for clemency.

Afterwards, Volos was permitted to pledge allegiance to King Ferme, and was relegated to defending the border territory.

In addition to other similar reasons, he judged that it wasn't necessary to kill him because most warrior descendants originally have a low status.

The problem is that I don't know whether the reason why Volos swore loyalty to King Ferme is either because he valued his life or to take revenge.

Nevertheless, Yal believes that he is almost certainly in the Ars fraction.

This is because there is a rumor that he also contacted the other pardoned warrior descendants.

Although, in the end, it is just a rumor.

King Ferme wasn't able to execute him because he wasn't able to collect conclusive evidence.

He franticly denies it, too.(Darknari: it's Volo denying he is in the Ars faction)

Nonetheless, there is no choice but to bet on this.

First of all, Yal came to the village where Volos had been relegated

to.

It is near the border with King Domorgal, but there is no great value strategically.

It is such a place.

Therefore, Yal disguised himself as a merchant.

The product is fur and wine, which he received from Almis.

To start, he goes to a small mountain near that village.

And then, he climbed a tall tree that bore fruit…….waited until a villager happened to pass by then he fell.

He forcibly broke his right leg. (pengu: Now the “break a leg’ expression sounds so real)

The kind resident helped him…..though it was a little unnatural he sneaked into the village.

Then, he fluently chatted using a fake name and birthplace.

And then he asked for the expense of his logging to be paid with his commodities until his leg recovered from the bone fracture.

The resident of the village was very much pleased with this.

This is because the commodities which Yal paid the cost of logging and food with had more value.

Then, Yal comes into contact with Volos through the village headman.

They drank liquor together and became friends.

This way, he understands that Volos is a very good-natures man.

And, cautious.

Even if Yal uses King Ferme and Ragou Ars as a casual topic, he did not speak of any dissatisfaction against King Ferme.

However, only just a little, his expression changes.

Apparently, he is poor at lying.

Thus, Yal is almost certain that Volos is in the Ars faction.

However, there isn't conclusive evidence yet.

More definite evidence is desirable.

However, one unexpected thing happened here.

The recovery of the bone fracture is more earlier than he thought.

Normally, though unpleasant, it takes two months.

But it closed in one week, and he was able to walk in two weeks.

Therefore, Yal went with the lie of it wasn't healed yet and decided to secretly observe Volos in the dead of night.

However, he can't go around Volos's house either.

While Yal has crutches, he walks around the village sneakily.

If the worst comes to past, he could forcefully make excuses that he is practicing walking.

But, evidence wasn't found so easily.

As expected, do I stake out Volos's house even knowing of the danger?……

While thinking so, Yal looks at the full moon.

And a small shadow crossed in front of the full moon.

It is invisible to normal human eyes, but Yal faintly saw it as he has begun to be affected by the divine protection.

The shadow was an owl which had something like a pipe tied to its foot.

The owl flew straight to Volos's house.

In the first place, even if it is an official messenger of King Ferme it can't be because they don't use owl post.

In other words…….is it a friend of the Ars fraction? King Rosaith? Or a secret communication with King Domorgal.

In either case, it is certain that he has dissatisfaction towards King Ferme.

Thus, Yal obtained firm evidence.

The next day, Yal took off to Volos's house.

"In fact yesterday, I saw an owl when I practiced walking in secret. It had a letter tied to its foot." (Yal)

When Yal said so, Volos almost instantly pulled out his sword.

The sword barely stopped at the nape of Yal's neck.

"What do you want to say?" (Volos)

"Do you not want to know the whereabouts of Tetra Ars?" (Yal)

At that moment, Volos's face was very much worth seeing, after that, Yal started to speak.

"Are you fine with Almis-dono?" (Volos)

“That’s fine.” (Almis)

Before my eyes is an amazingly large man. And an old woman carrying a walking stick. (Darknari: he’s being sarcastic)

Beside them is Yal.

And beside me is Tetra.

“May I see it?” (Volos)

“Understood.” (Tetra)

Tetra turns her back towards the large man and rolls up her clothes.

The old woman touches the sacred character on Tetra’s back. It begins to shine slightly.

“There is no mistake. This is the sacred character and family crest which I carved onto the 4-year-old Tetra.” (Old woman)

The old woman asserted.

“Tetra-sama!!” (Volos)

“Woah!!” (Tetra)

As soon as the large man saw that family crest, he kneeled in front of Tetra.

“I’m sorry for my doubt. However……thank goodness. Truly thank goodness!! For this Volos, there hasn’t been such a wonderful day as this since the defeat!” (Volos)

Woah, a grown man is crying…..

You were adored weren’t you, Ragou-san. Let’s make a visit to the grave sometime.

“Almis-dono!!” (Volos)

“Woah～!” (Almis)

My shoulder was suddenly gripped.

His nails are digging into me!

It’s painful, it’s painful so get away!

“It’s inexcusable! However, thank you very much! Thank you very much for protecting the young lady until now. From now on, all the vassals including me swear loyalty to you.” (Volos)

“Ah, thank you. I understand so wipe your tears.” (Almis)

I hand him a handkerchief.

Volos wipes his tears with the handkerchief.

Oi, don’t blow your nose!

“However, you will not necessarily fight? There is a difference of forces between us. I would avoid war as much as possible. You understand right?” (Volos)

“Yes. I understand that the winning rate for a war is low and we should not start a war as much as possible.” (Almis)

“I hope that’s true.” (Volos)

To the bitter end, my purpose is to protect everyone and this place.

I don’t want to become a king or a powerful clan in particular.

I’m just doing this because it is advantageous to win over allies.

“Nevertheless, the facilities are considerably good for a small village.” (Volos)

“We put all our effort into construction. It will be complete when I dig a large amount of pitfalls.” (Almis)

It has been 10 months since we started.

It was considerably difficult.

“By the way, is there something like a secret weapon?” (Volos)

“Well. Do you want to see? As a matter of fact, it was completed a

little while ago.” (Almis)

I take out the black powder prototype NO.100.

The memorable 100th. It’s a success!

The saltpeter, sulfur, and charcoal ratio is 75:10:15.

And then I put it in an airtight container.

In doing so, it becomes a bomb.

“It was made after 99 trial and errors. I consider it to be the perfect ratio combination.” (Almis)

It is easy to make black powder.

However, it is very difficult to change this into a bomb with the ability to cause casualties.

It explodes if I give it a strong shock, but only burns when it is set on fire.

Just such a thing is completed.

I put the black powder on the magic formation and put my hand on the formation.

The magic formation begins to shine slightly.

I had Tetra develop this magic formation.

The effect is that it ignites 5 seconds after I pour some mana in.

I leave the place in haste.

Five second pass.

The deafening roar penetrates my head and the ground shakes.

“It is more or less successful for the time being.” (Almis)

I look at the site where the explosion happened.

The gouged ground became visible when the white smoke cleared.
The killing power seems to be considerably promising.

“Th-this is wonderful. What sorcery is this?” (Volos) (Pengu: SCIENCE, BITCH!!)

“It is not sorcery. Well, I did use some sorcery though.” (Almis)

Volos shows a little bit of a frightened expression.

A grown man is frightened. If it is King Ferme’s soldiers, they won’t able to be collective.

“If you have this, victory is certain!” (Volos)

“Hmm, I wonder.” (Almis)

Such a thing is considerably doubtful.

At any rate, the number of enemies is large.

“If war will really happen, will it be two months later?” (Volos)

“Right. Because it is the harvest time. So it would be exactly one

year later. There is a high possibility of them coming to collect tribute. I think they will have a bad harvest over there, since this year was colder than average. They would definitely try to forcefully take it. Naturally I will refuse. We don't have any reserves either." (Almis)

In fact, I would like to gain 1 more year……

"The basis is a charge after they break their ranks because of the bomb." (Almis)

The reason why the phalanx is powerful is because the troops assemble in solid ranks.

If it collapses, it is because of that.

In the first place, the phalanx's weak point is that flexible movement is not possible.

Furthermore, those soldiers' skills and morale are low.

If possible I hope that they would withdraw before arriving to this village.

Chapter 28

ile Ferme was sighing.

MTL: Pengu

ED: Puru

Chapter 28: Sorcery Battle

Robert Ferme, that is the full name of King Ferme.

His father said this before dying.

“Well, Robert, If you’re a man you must aim for the top.” (Robert’s father)

Robert followed those words.

He increased his influence within the clan and his favorability with other clans.

The Chief Ragou Ars was a man whose only worth was being gentle while the misgovernment continued.

He gradually obtained the trust of the people under him.

And one day famine occurred.

The famine was large enough to make people abandon many of their children. Ragou was unable to find any solution to that.

Naturally.

It's not that the amount of harvest would increase nor would the bread gush forth from something.

Unfortunately, however, dissatisfaction with the unreliable large clan continued to rise.

"Ragou extorted wealth from the people and is living a luxurious life!! Do you forgive this as it is?" (Robert)

Robert shouted loudly.

Many of the clans and the people supported him.

The rebel army which lead by Robert in no time surrounded Ragou's residence and took it by storm.

He succeeded in taking Ragou's neck.

But there was one problem.

He couldn't grasp the whereabouts of Ragou's wife, his two sons and the daughter.

Robert lead the search with his elite.

He found them as they were trying to escape in the forest, and killed the wife and the two sons.

And raised the sword to kill the last child.

He thought.

(Isn't it too young?)

Robert looked at the little girl-Tetra in front of him.

It did not resemble Ragou at all. He remember it being a very clever child.

The Ars and Ferme families were relatives, and Robert had taken care of the girl.

Naturally, he had no option to keep it alive.

There was nothing to gain from allowing it to live.

He couldn’t make the child his wife, as it would hold a grudge.

There was the possibility that he could raise it while he confined it.

It was out of the question to let it go.

But he did not kill it.

He overlooked it.

The child would be killed by the wolves or it might die by consuming poisonous plants.

He kill the husband, murdered the wife and innocent children, but overlooks the youngest daughter.

His behavior seemed mysterious.

Was it him being indebted, or was it with the intention of expiation?

Anyway, he committed the biggest mistake of his life.

“A bad harvest…….” (Ferme)

Ferme sigh while looking at the field.

Even though the harvest was a month away, he understood that something was discernibly bad with the wheat.

Last year’s famine was somehow managed with the tribute from the forest village and the loot from plundering the country of King Rosaith’s……

I seems to have to do the same thing for this year.

A soldier came in wh

He hold a small tube in his hand.

The soldier handed the cylinder to Ferme.

“Is there something wrong?” (Adjutant)

An adjutant asked Ferme.

Ferme broadly grinned and answered.

“It is the carrier pigeon from the rat lurking inside King Rosaith’s country. It says that the King Rosaith had collapsed.”(Ferme)

After hearing that, the adjutant grinned.

“Well, he won’t die. Attack like usual. Nonetheless, it does not take leadership into account. We will attack the Kingdom of KIng Rosaith.” (Ferme)

“However, our war preparations are insufficient.”(Adjutant)

The adjutant said.

He grinned.

“What are you saying, don’t we have the place that can guarantee the rations for the troops? We can secure meal worth of 3 days. We can plunder it later.”(Ferme)

Ferme stares at the forest.

“Until now I have been avoiding a massive march to the forest to avoid the wrath of the Griffon, but now I understand more from the last time. It is clear that he won’t intervene as long as we don’t violate the forest. He did not complain over people living in the forest or passing through his forest.”(Ferme)

“Is there a possibility of the Griffon loving them?”(Adjutant)

“No. If that was the case, the Griffon would have come out when I demanded 80% of the food.” (Ferme)

Ferme declared it confidently.

With 80% food being extorted, it wouldn't be funny if the people died from starving, yet the Griffon did not intervene.

In other words, the Griffon was neutral.

"We will pass through the forest and do a surprise attack on King Rosaith's palace."(Ferme)

The adjutant widens his eyes.

I can certainly say so if I go through the forest.

After all the palace of King Rosaith is at a short distance by passing through the forest.

But no one has ever passed through it.

As they were all afraid to anger the Griffon.

At any rate, many people thought that the cause of bad harvest was due to the anger of the Griffon.

Therefore, they abandon the children in the forest as sacrifice.

Even though it actually is the curse of the people themselves.

“But prepare to withdraw if……”

I must always think about the time to withdraw when leading an armed force.

In case of a defeat, we will definitely be destroyed. I must avoid fighting with our back against the wall.

Naturally, that place would be the forest……

“If that’s the case, that place will be the base. The village which became my territory last year.” (Ferme)

“But that village has not completely yield to us.” (Adjutant)

“If that’s the case, just destroy it. We can secure food so it’s killing two birds with one stone.”(Ferme)

It is too early to decide.

Ferme calls the sorcerers together.

“Go for reconnaissance.”(Ferme)

“”Understood”” (Sorcerers)

————Sorcerer leader’s POV————

The three sorcerers used the hawks for reconnaissance.

The soul loading is very difficult.

First, you have to take the soul out of your body while you are conscious.

An average sorcerer die if the soul is unable to come back.

Furthermore, it is necessary for the user’s mind to communicate with the creature carrying the soul.

A bond is born by raising it and taking care of it everyday from its infancy.

I came to be able to see the world with the eyes of the hawk and the nose of the dog through rigorous training.

The hawk’s eyesight is approximately 8 times better than a human’s.

It is the best species to use for reconnaissance.

(The defense is more solid than the last time I come here…..)

The leader thought so while overlooking the village from above.

A deep cavity was dug, and an abatis, a huge wooden fence, was set up in the interior and exterior.

The wooden tower construction seems to be the most troublesome.

Perhaps, the facilities are used to shoot arrows. drop stones or pour hot oil.

It seems to be a facility to shoot arrows, drop stones and pour hot oil.

(The facilities seem to be excessive against wolves.)

In other words it is a defence facility to counter an army onslaught.

The target……it would be a no brainer.

The three sorcerer strain their eyes and observe the village's state.

I beat the village topography into my head.
(There won't be any problems anymore)

I should be especially cautious…… that there are no mercenaries etc.

The population of the village doesn't seem to have changed.

(We should return)

They chirped once to convey its thought in change direction.

Right when they were about to turn to leave.

"Kya……."

The screams rose from behind.

As soon as we turned back there was a hawk, larger than ours which was glaring at us.

In the large hawk's talons was a hawk with whom we set out to do reconnaissance together until a while ago.

The talons dug deep into the throat, it can be understood from a glance that it is dead from the fact that it isn't fluttering.

The leader orders the hawk as it cries, to fly away at full speed.

It cannot win based on the difference in physique.

(Shit! Why does it come at such a time……..)

The leader cursed his misfortune

It is extremely rare that I encounter the animal's natural enemy when I'm reconnoitring with an animal.

It's because you concentrate too much on reconnaissance, and the vigilance towards the surrounding tends to diminish.

(You have to escape quickly. If the animal dies while carrying your soul you die there!)

As I thought about this, my other companion flying in front of my eyes has disappeared.

When I looked down, another big hawk fought with my companion.

That companion was desperately trying to escape from the talons.

But resistance was futile, his companion was flung against a tree and killed.

(Two of them!)

The leader desperately flies while being confused.

As it is, my and my companion’s life is in danger.

(tsu!)

A chill run through the leader body and he twist his body in the right in a hurry.

As talons of a big hawk pass through there.

(There's three of them!)

Hawks don't form flocks.

I can think two of them have to be coincidental, but the story is different if it is three of them.

(Sorcerer!)

The enemy fly as if to enclose the leader and gradually shrink the distance between them.

(Why! There shouldn't be three high class sorcerers in such a small village! What does this mean…… could they be the sorcerers of the King of Rosaith?)

I must report it in either case.

The leader lower his altitude.

The enemies are bigger then his partner.

The shouldn't be easy to maneuver.

There's a possibility of escape if I go in the forest.

(Just a little more!)

A shock hit the whole body as soon as it entered the forest.

(?)

Something like a rod stuck through my partner's chest.

When the leader understood that it is an arrow, he lost conscious.

———Almis's POV———

"YEAH! I killed it!!"

Gram picks up the hawk which he shot down.

His skill was as wonderful as ever.

“Gununu…..I intended to defeat it.” (Tetra)

Tetra whose soul had returned to her body stood up and grimaced in vexation.

“Though I ate the bitter grass with much effort.” (Tetra)

Tetra said so while taking out Soul detachment grass out of her mouth.

“Fufun. How was it? I made the first success surprise attack!” (Lulu)

“As expected of Lulu. You are the strongest!” (Gram)

Gram shows appreciation for Lulu who returned.

The sacred barrier which I set in the village was useful.

There are various kind for protection against evil, but it informs about animals with soul in it. I set it up beforehand.

When you think that it wasn't caught in the sacred barrier, there are three hawk in the sky……

To be frank, I don't want our village defense facilities to be seen.

Therefore I had the three go in front.

I have some worry that they can't return because of flying little away from the village.

"Was it alright to kill it? Although we will be fighting each other with this."(Tetra)

Tetra said anxiously.

"It's alright. There actually are cases where the sorcerer is attacked in duty by a natural enemy and dies. King Ferme wouldn't think that the village with a population of around hundred people could

have 3 sorcerers. Beside, I believe those fellows intended to attack us when they sent the scouts.” (Almis)

I can say that negotiations have already been broken by half.

“Let’s take a rest when the meal is over. It’s not necessary to do anything.”(Almis)

By putting up scared barrier, it’s possible handle attacks from several sorcerers.

But only these three people can do soul ride.

I would be troubled if they collapsed.

“Then it is my duty to prepare the weapon next.” (Tetra)

“I’m sorry but I have something to do.” (Almis)

I must check the pitfall and weapons such as black powder.

"…… I will make it up to you when it's all over." (Tetra)

Tetra said so while puffing her cheek in dissatisfaction.

But before that……

"Yal, could you go to King Roasith's country and call for reinforcement? there wouldn't be any spirit if it's only us." (Almis)

"Understood" (Yal)

Yal said so and head to King Rosaith's country.

However, the report which returned immediately from Yal wasn't very good.

"King Rosaith seemed to have collapsed because of a seizure….."

(Yal)

“What! Then the reinforcements?”(Almis)

“That’s…… while King Rosaith collapsed, King Ferme moved 400 troops immediately. In addition, neighboring countries and powerful clan seem to be making suspicious movement….they said the reinforcement can be sent three days later…..” (Yal)

Three days….

By that time it would all be over, would it not?

Well, it’s alright.

It’s still within the assumption for the time being.

“Leader! The black powder inspection has completed. There is no problem” (Ron)

“Niisan! The horse condition is all good. We can go anytime.” (Roswald)

“The arrow and food storage are safe!”(Gram)

Reports fly out from Ron, Roswald and Gram’ mouths.

There is no problem for the time being.

“Ok, the pitfall and scared barrier don’t have any problem either. The preparation is complete.” (?)

Should we go through the strategy later?

“Prepare the wheat for the time being because it’s possible to make peace later.” (pengu:psshhh!)(Puru:seriously….)

“Is there such a possibility?”

“There is 40% that the opponent will make a move.”

There is 60% that they aren’t hungry (standard of 2 fields system)

It is plenty of compromise this way.

It’s impossible beyond this.

“Almis-san!” (Yal)

I heard a voice from the gate.

It’s Yal.

“King Ferme is gathering soldiers. I don’t know the number……”(Yal)

“Will he fight as expected? What about Volos?” (Almis)

“He will raise the revolt while observing the situation.”(Yal)

Volos’s group is approximately 60 people.

They will be defeated in no time if they fight up front.

You must look at the situation properly before you rise a revolt.

————————-Ferme’s POV————————-

“My King. The sorcerers haven’t returned.” (Adjutant)

“What is it? Were they attacked by some natural enemy?”(Ferme)

Sometimes hawks get attacked during reconnaissance by natural enemies.

They inevitably become negligent of surrounding because the sorcerer’s soul takes the lead.

It rarely happened, but I won’t said that it never happened at all.

Also the terrain is forest after all. The possibility of being attack is high.

“Or…..”(Ferme)

Did the youth call Almis and King Rosaith join hand?

But this is likely low.

If we assume that the three sorcerers were defeated by King Rosaith’s sorcerers, then there are three or more that were

dispatched to that village.

But Ferme has let Sorcerers reconnaissance many times in King Rosaith's country these days.

And he grasp the number of sorcerers that come out to intercept.

There was never a day where three person were missing.

Moreover, even if they join an alliance, it is unnatural where three sorcerers are placed in such a remote village.

Beside, the possibility of the other thing…..

"Could there be three excellent sorcerers in that village too? It couldn't be"(Ferme)

Impossible. Though there are only nine people even in King Ferme's country.

They might have lost to natural enemy by chance. It's unlucky.

In other words, it is expected that there are still the same natural

enemy around that village.

Then, the same thing will repeat again.

Is it safe to give up scouting?

“There are only 6 sorcerers that able to do soul ride……two of them can successfully defend the country. Four people can go to fight King Rosaith.” (Ferme)

The sorcerers nodded that King Ferme instruction and put Soul detachment grass in their mouth one after another.

“The soldiers are ready.” (Adjutant)

“Yoshi, you lead 200 soldiers to occupy that village. Take the battle ram this time. It’s too excessive to take archers. I’ll stay behind with 400 troops. (check) The forest is hard to march into. You will attack King Rosaith’s country with 300 and destroy it.” (Ferme)

Among the generals who was ordered by King Ferme, the general who was ordered to attack King Rosaith’s country directly said timidly.

“My King……can I at least have another 100? The enemy is at least 1000……” (General A)

“No, maximum is 400.”(Ferme)

Ferme asserted.

“King Rosaith’s powerful clans have completely shrunk by the last defeat. They won’t cooperate with King Rosaith. It is up to 2 thousand that those retainer can move alone by considering the damage received in the last war. King Rosaith’s country has to be on a look out for King Ebill’s country and King Belvedere’s country since they are already incited. Well, if I put the soldiers in the border……The lowest is 500 for these two countries, you must have at least 1000 to respond.” (Ferme)

King Ferme continue while smirking.

“And it is requesting the ambitious powerful clans in King Rosaith’s country to move the soldiers. Well, they wouldn’t move unless they actually win, I purposely let’s King Rosaith find out that there is a revolt movement. That guy has stick 500 with his personal clan on the border territory for defense to direct control over the place. And hundred are assigned to protect the palace……it’s exactly 400.”(Ferme)

The generals held their breath unintentionally.

The aim is to occupied King Rosaith's country capital.

And the securing of food.

The odds of winning is plenty.

"Then, I will raise my toast at King Rosaith's palace next.
Kanpai!" (Ferme)

Ferme poured wine in a glass and raised it high.

Chapter 29

s the gate while forming ranks.

Chapter 29″ First campaign

——————————— Almis's POV ———————————-

Though the advance company of King Ferme's army arrives at the village, it took them about one and a half days

"You will surrender the village to us. And then we can offer provisions to our 200 soldiers! If so it will save lives." (Commander)

"For 200 men? Is it really only that? Are you not planning to take away everything after occupying the village?" (Almis)

"No way, we just want to secure provisions. I do not want more than that." (Commander)

It's the truth.

But I cannot say how much provisions 200 soldiers will need.

Possibly it is the entire harvest of the village……Well, if that's the case there is no other way……

Almis thinks about it just a little bit.

Negotiations are done on an equal basis or under the supervision of a great power.

Will it really be fulfilled? If positive proof doesn't exist, terms cannot be accepted.

The commander..said..provisions.

In other words, the enemy's purpose is the palace of King Rosaith.

Ordinarily they wouldn't march through the forest due to fear of the griffon, so to make surprise attacks they will take this village as a base. That is the enemy's purpose.

Then, if this village surrenders, sparks will start with Julia and King Rosaith.

What is with that?

"Evidence?" (Almis)

"Swear in the name of King Ferme." (Commander)

"Then, it is impossible." (Almis)

The negotiations break down.

Both sides thought that a battle would occur from the beginning, so the negotiations ended quickly.

“Take your time. What can you do with a measly 40 or 50 soldiers? We have 200. We will crush you solely using force!” (Commander)

——————————— Enemy’s POV ———————————

The commander often observes the village.

There is a high wooden fence dug deep.

There is only one gate.

A village of this size will be difficult to siege with only 200 soldiers.

Since the purpose of the battle is meant to be a short-term decisive battle, it would best to focus their strength upon destroying the entrance.

There are 40-50 enemy soldiers, but if the other inhabitants of the village are counted it exceeds 100.

Nonetheless, the main goal is to secure provisions and a base.

There is no particular reason to massacre them.

Once the enemy general's head rolls, they would most likely kneel if you give them the suggestion of surrendering.

Though there might be many sacrifices, our role is that of the vanguard.

The important thing is to force a surrender by the time the main army arrives. Even if that is not possible, we need to at least weaken them.

Unlike last time, this time there were battering rams and many archers that were also prepared.

"First of all, secure the surroundings of the gate. Then strike it with the battering ram!" (Commander)

The soldiers who are accustomed to war rush toward

But suddenly, the ranks began to fall into disorder.

"Pitfalls?……How troublesome……we must make a detour." (Commander)

It seems that spears were buried upwards underneath the pitfalls, 20 people were killed, but the pitfalls only caught them at the beginning.

You can tell where the pitfalls are if you look at the ground very carefully.

It's very easy to avoid.

But it would take a lot of time to make a detour and reach the gate.

"Shit. I did not hear of them having such defensive facilities." (Commander)

The commander complains.

It is necessary to be prepared for sacrifices after all.

Nonetheless, pitfalls are a basic tactic for defense.

Therefore, I am not particularly surprised.

"But if we occupy the village, then we can secure provisions. We must secure it as a base before the main army arrives." (Commander)

"Yes. That's ri-……it's dangerous!!" (Adjutant)

The adjutant pushed the commander off his horse.

Causing the commander to tumble onto the ground.

“You bastard! What the hell……” (Commander)

The adjutant was dead.

There was an arrow stuck in his head.

The commander looked around.

“Shit! This arrow pierced through the armor!” (Soldier A)

“It’s made of custom bronze…….” (Soldier B)

“Is it made out of iron?” (Soldier C)

The soldiers are being shot with arrows one after another.

“How could this be! What is our archery corps doing?” (Commander)

“With this distance the arrows don’t reach!!” (Archer Captain)

The archer captain replies.

Though they had no way of knowing, the bows that Almis and the others were using were long bows that were purchased from the Karishian merchant.

The range of it is different from the bows used in King Ferme’s country.

Also, unlike the stone arrowheads that King Ferme’s troops used, they were made of iron.

By shooting from a high tower it is possible to attack from outside the range of King Ferme’s archers.

“Raise your shields! While defending against the arrows in front……” (Infantry Captain)

The arrow, which was shot at the captain’s head, pierced through his bronze shield.

With the shield that they had relied on being useless, turmoil ran among the soldiers.

“Hey, are you ok?” (Soldier)

“It’s alright. It penetrated the armor, but it’s just a scratch. It will recover with just some spit!!” (Infantry Captain)

The soldiers who had been struck with the arrows began to writhe on the ground.

Naturally those who were struck deeply, but the ones who were only grazed as well.

“A poisoned arrow! Coward!!” (Commander)

The commander shouted.

A poisoned arrow stabs at the feet of the commander in reply.

“Eek!” (Commander)

“Please commander, fall back!!” (Soldier)

The commander fell back so his subordinates could protect him.

——————————— Almis's POV ———————————-

"Does it seem we will win?" (Villager) (Darknari: no idea who is talking here)

"Yes. The enemy numbers have already been reduced by about 50 people." (Almis)

There were 150 people remaining.

They would probably retreat if they lost another 50.

The enemy's weaponry consisted of bronze spears.

And then they mostly had wooden armor, with some made of leather. The captain class had bronze armor, and finally the commander's was made of iron.

This bow is a long bow I purchased from a Karishian by using up a large sum (of paper).

And the iron arrows were smeared with aconite poison.

Being defeated would be strange.

“The enemy’s arrows will soon be in range. Almis-san, be careful.” (Gram)

Shouted Gram from the top of the arrow tower.

Although the enemy was confused at first, they began to organize and raised their shields to protect themselves, before slowly but surely advancing towards the village.

“You be careful too, do not think about dying.” (Almis)

“I know.” (Gram)

Gram answered while grinning broadly.

I am worried, but I have no choice but to leave it to him.

“Ron, you should get back to your post soon. When the enemy reaches the gate……Do you understand?” (Almis)

“I understand. I’ll teach them a thing or two.” (Ron)

Ron said as he went back to his post.

Well, I should also return soon.

Otherwise I will get shot by an arrow if I stay.

I gradually began to hear the the footsteps of the enemy, moreover it was accompanied by the sound of arrows piercing the village buildings.

The enemy has about 40 archers.

Because they had more numbers than ours, the more the enemy's attacks are intensified, the less gaps there are to shoot.

While Gram and the others hid behind large iron shields, they found gaps and preferentially shoot at the archers.

The progress of the battle has tilted in the enemy's favor.

……For now.

"Leader! The enemy seems to have gathered around the gate!" (Ron)

Ron reported happily.

"Ok, do it!" (Almis)

When I say so, Ron grins and nods.

He held something similar to a spear in his hand.

Ron calls out to his nine subordinates.

“You guys! Do you have your bomb spears? Do it like you did in training. Absolutely do not hit the fence, you hear? If you fail, you will be castrated!!” (Ron)

Ron calls out as he holds a bomb spear……a spear which was prepared with black powder fastened to the spearhead.

When Ron stood ready with the spear, it began to shine faintly.

The magic was invoked.

“One, two, three, haa!!” (Ron)

Ten spears flew over the wall at the same time Ron called out, and fell onto the soldiers flooding outside the gate.

They ignited at the same time they landed.

The black powder caused a massive explosion.

The arrows from the enemy all cease immediately.

White smoke rises, as I hear lots of screaming from the other side of the wall.

“Ok, it’s a success. Prepare the second volley!” (Ron)

Ten spears impacted on the enemy once again.

More screams rise.

“I guess that’s good. Stop. I will go, Roswald.” (Almis)

“Understood. Big brother.” (Roswald)

I straddle the horse Roswald brought.

And lined up besides Roswald.

There are six members of the cavalry, including me and Roswald.

“Open the gate! While I charge, Gram and the rest, stop shooting arrows! Ron, you guys continue from there!!” (Almis)

The gate opens.

Then we charged.

“Woah, this is horrible.” (Almis)

The situation outside of the gate was more severe than I thought.

The corpses were scattered about and looked like crushed tomatoes.

The corpses looked so wretched it made me question if some of them were human.

I realized again the frightening things I made.

When I thought about if my enemy used black powder, I felt a chill.

We have to keep the recipe secret.

The enemy in the noise and white smoke was plunged into chaos by the sudden death of their comrades.

There is no need to do anything anymore, and yet……

“I will attack the enemy’s commander!!” (Almis)

I call out and charge into the chaos of the enemy.

There was no need to swing my spear.

Because when the enemy saw my form they gave up and opened up a pathway.

I had basically won already.

Before long I will pierce through the enemy's troops.

There is no need to charge again.

The white smoke begins to clear, allowing me to see the enemy's garments.

Most soldiers had wooden and leather armor, and some wore armor made of bronze.

"You, over there mounted on a horse and wearing iron armor! You must be the enemy commander!" (Roswald)

Roswald kicked his horse's abdomen as he sped towards the man who seemed to be the enemy commander.

The enemy commander was frightened and began to escape.

"Like I'll let you go!!" (Roswald)

Roswald then hurled the spear he had been carrying.

The spear arced in the air and struck the enemy commander's back.

"Roswald has defeated the enemy commander!!" (Almis)

When I shouted so, my allies cheered in response

At the same time, the enemy fell to the ground in defeat.

It's a victory for the the time being. As I had said.

Though in truth I had thought about using guerilla warfare in the forest, when the enemy sieged they had concentrated on the gate, but we won so it's good!! Did it become easier at the moment of the explosion, I wonder?

As soon as I thought so…

Chapter 30

Chapter 31

ace the wrath of the Gryphon. Even if you do find yourself deep in the forest, you won't be killed without a warning. The Gryphon is a generous one." (Almis)

"Listen, this is serious. How many sorcerers do you have? Ah, I'm talking about sorcerers who can use 'Soul Ride'?" (Bartolo)

"Three people. According to Tetra, King Ferme had nine magicians who could use 'Soul Ride'. Three of them were taken down in a surprise attack." (Almis)

I answered and Bartolo gave a satisfied nod.

"Really. We're bringing in five. Two of King Ferme's sorcerers are with him. (this phrase is confusing and I don't really get it そしてフェルム王の魂乗せ使いを二人、葬っている。) That leaves four remaining sorcerers…." (Bartolo)

Bartolo rests his chin on his hand.

"Okay, let's do this. We will send three to the rebel army, the three of you and the rest will devote themselves to breaking the enemy's barrier." (Bartolo)

"Okay. That's fine." (Almis)

There are two types of barrier.

Anti-magic barriers that prevent witchcraft and physical barriers that reinforce substances.

The barrier in this case is a physical one.

Substances reinforced by magic are of moderate strength and become obstacles when destroying defensive equipment.

That being said, it's only moderate.

If it was a stone wall, then it would be a threat, but it's just wood.

It is evident through experimentation that the barrier can be destroyed with gunpowder.

After all, the barrier only has the effect of reinforcing defensive equipment.

We gathered together and started our advance.

After traveling for a while, the hawk returned.

It landed on the shoulder of the sorcerer riding in the wagon.

The sorcerer opened his eyes.

"I've delivered it." (Sorcerer) (not too sure about this「届けて参りました」)

"Okay, by the way, did the battle begin yet?" (Bartolo)

Bartolo questions the sorcerer who nods deeply.

"Yes. The rebels have already attacked the capitol and sieged the palace. King Ferme is planning on attacking them. The rebels are in a sticky situation. When we were returning, we had to engage the enemy's sorcerers and defeat them." (Sorcerer)

I wonder if King Ferme is attacking the city……

It's the opposite state. (Not sure about this 逆の状態だな。)

"This is our chance. If we attack now, we can catch them in a pincer attack." (Bartolo)

'"Ah, but the magician we spared for the destruction of the barrier has become useless……." (Sorcerer) (not sure about

this「ああ。でも結界の破壊用に温存した呪術師が無駄になっちまったけど……」)

We increased our marching speed.

“By the way, aren’t your men exhausted. What kind of training do you do?” (Bartolo)

“Nothing in particular. Isn’t it good enough that they hunt every day?” (Almis)

“I guess so. Alright, let’s try hunting in the future to train our men. By the way, can we hunt in the Romano forest?” (Bartolo)

“Yeah. The Gryphon’s territory is deep in the forest. As long as you don’t hunt in the depths of the forest, you won’t f

“Seriously!? That said, the King of Ferme did march his army through Romano forest. We seem to have had a terrible misunderstanding…..” (Bartolo)

Bartolo drops his shoulders.

Of course, the reason why he was so dejected was because he had missed out on hunting all the beasts in Roman forest.

But can’t having too much fun be a bad thing?

The Gryphon has a short temper.

(Almis point of view)

On top of a small mountain.

The sound of battle can be heard from below.

Overlooking the city of King Ferme.

Two flags are swaying heavily.

“I’m going to do some reconnaissance. There are no more magicians who can watch for an enemy’s attack. Our surprise attack will definitely succeed.”

“Oh, that’s dangerous.”

I saw the enemy’s lookout approaching us and pushed Bartolo’s head down.

The lookout quickly averted its gaze.

“Hey, it hurts. I hit my jaw against the ground.”

“Okay, let’s assault them quickly!”

Bartolo and I descend from the mountain.

Then we issue commands to the hidden soldiers.

“Alright, get into formation!”

The soldiers formed up into ranks under Bartolo’s command.

We also followed Bartolo’s example and formed up.

“Hey, why are you better than us?” (Bartolo)

“Since we’re all like family, we work well together.” (Almis)

It’s easy to form a formation.

The difficult part is to move while in formation without breaking ranks.

Since the soldiers drafted from farmers have never worked together, they must be trained. But we had that from the start.

“….I might lose if I attack you….” (Bartolo)

Bartolo mutters while watching us.

There are three hundred and fifty men here.

Whatever you think, I think Bartolo would win….

“We’ll charge first!” (Almis)

“Damn… I don’t want you guys to hog all the credit….you really act quickly…” (Bartolo)

Bartolo glares at me feeling frustrated.

You’ve had enough credit.

I don’t think there is a reason for you to get anymore.

It isn’t as if we want the credit anyway. It’s much more important to preserve the lives of our men.

However, it’s troublesome when Bartolo is in the lead. For a variety of reasons.

We advance to avoid disturbing the formation.

We’re getting close enough to see the enemy. We’ve probably been noticed.

We speed up our advance.

“Let’s go! All troops, charge!” (Almis)

We all charge at once.

I couldn’t stop even if I wanted to, I would die. I would be

crushed from the back.

They seemed to have noticed us, the army of King Ferme begins to shake in fear.

The rear of their formation turns their spears towards us.

Do you feel like taking it?

Is it King Ferme?

They formed up quickly.

However…..

“Alright, get the explosive spears ready!” (Almis)

I raised the spear I had in my hand.

My companions who were in the front row with me raised their spears one after another.

“Release!” (Almis)

The spears drew a parabola and landed on the army of King Ferme.

The ground greatly shook.

The enemy soldiers who had been waiting with their spears at the ready were wrapped in a white smoke.

It’s going to be a mess.

I mean, you’re dead because of a direct hit.

Ron, Roswald and Gram lined up beside me.

“Take the King’s head!!!”

I went into the white smoke.

As you can imagine, the enemy was in chaos.

They couldn't even wield their spears.

They were no longer in formation, they just ran.

But it's difficult to find King Ferme.

Suddenly, I see a man wearing luxurious clothes in my sight.

It's not King Ferme, but I am certain it is someone important.

"You there! Commander! I'm here for your head!" (Almis)

I strike with my spear towards the luxurious bastard.

"Well, come get it!"

Shouted the luxurious clothed man as he parried my spear with his sword.

"Okay!"

I beat down the sword with my spear. The sword made of bronze was broken in half.

Sorry.

The difference in our weapons and in our strength is too great.

Why don't you hate God if you hold a grudge?

"I did it!"

I felt an intense pressure from behind.

Looking back, a soldier was swinging his sword.

How tasteless!

"Die!!"

The soldier falls to the ground.

An arrow is stuck in his forehead.

“Are you alright, Almis?” (Gram)

Gram came forward on is horse while holding a bow.

Ron and Roswald came up behind him on theirs.

“That was a little too dangerous, don’t you think?” (Gram)

“Yeah, sorry. You saved me, thanks. By the way…” (Almis)

I stared at the Longbow in Gram’s hand.

“You… who uses a Longbow in a battle like this, and on horseback too.”

“So? What’s wrong with that?”

“No, nothing, it’s fine.”

At the same time as I withdraw, an enemy soldier slashes at Gram.

“Die!!”

“You’re dead!”

Gram calmly grasped an arrow in his hand and stabbed it into the eye of the enemy soldier.

That must hurt.

That’s just wrong.

You should have just used your spear from the beginning.

“It’s normal for Gram to be this weird. Let’s go look for King Ferme. I will go first.”

Ron kicks the stomach of the horse while saying so and disappears into the enemy.

We chased after him.

(King Ferme's point of view)

A little bit back in time.

"Fuck, why did the capitol fall?"

Ferme glares at the flag with the crest of the Ars family on it.

The defensive structures have burn marks all over them.

Ferme had left a hundred soldiers, they even dug trenches and there's a wall around the capitol.

The barrier was even multiplied and should have been strengthened.

"I'm sorry, suddenly flames…." (Officer, don't know who is speaking here)

"I don't care about your excuses! We'll get it back once our pincer attack is complete!" (Ferme)

Ferme ordered all of his soldiers to attack.

The number of his soldiers had increased to six hundred because he had drafted more on the way there.

However, morale was low due to that.

"Do not go anywhere."

"Why are you so demoralized?"

"You know, I really want to hear why."

Suddenly, the appearance of a girl floats into King Ferme's mind.
The girl he once let go.

If only….

No way.

King Ferme shakes off the bad memory that came to mind.

It's time.

The soldiers in the rear begin to make a buzz.

At the same time, the earth echoes in King Ferme's ear.

"What happened?" (Ferme)

"It's serious! Rosaith's army is behind us!" (random officer)

"What did you say!?"

Ferme is panicked for a moment.

But he calmed himself in an instant.

"Order the soldiers in the rear to intercept!"

Ferme orders his commander.

Ferme says to his officers and guards.

"This country is already lost, I will flee to King Dommergar. We will try to gather our strength there to retake the country!"

Ferme got on his horse and rode to leave the battlefield with his guards.

But as soon as he began to flee, a loud roaring sound occurred.

His forces quickly fell into chaos.

“Fuck, this is the fire and smoke they were talking about…. It’s troublesome!!”

Ferme desperately ran.

The front is no longer collapsing.

He couldn’t even waste a moment.

“Hurry! Until the horse collapses, oh!!”

A deputy screams as his horse falls.

When Ferme looks back, there are four horses charging towards him.

Among them is a young man whose name is Almis.

The soldiers around Ferme are shot one after the other.

Ferme stops.

“On my own…… You’ve often disturbed my dream. You guys are also companions!” (Ferme) (this sentence is confusing「おのれ……よくも俺の夢を邪魔してくれたな。お前たちも道連れだ！！」)

Ferme readies his spear and charges Almis.

Almis attacks with his sword of Damascus steel.

Both spear and sword connect.

“Fuck…..” (Ferme)

Ferme is groaning and fell while staring at Almis.

Almis’s sword is stabbed deeply in his belly.

“Your mistake was not making the best use of Tetra. Well, I am grateful that I could meet her because of that.” (Almis)

“Haha, I guess so…… that was a mistake……”

Ferme looks disappointed as he laughs.

“You should be happy then. I missed out.” (Ferme)

Ferme says, while breathing his last.

Chapter 33

ロズワードがあきれ顔で言う)

Editors Notes:

I was bored and had some time on my hands so I translated another chapter. Some of the phrases are really annoying to figure out haha, but hopefully I did it justice. Just so you know, the author's phrases are simplistic but he uses weird sayings I don't quite get sometimes. Well, the translator doesn't translate them well enough for me to understand I guess.

If you haven't checked out the Light Novels, 'Fayde of the Void' or 'Empire of Souls' yet, check them out and let me know what you think. They are also already both on RRL.

By the way, I am translating this by using google, bing and microsoft translate and then scratching my head trying to figure out what the author is saying sometimes. I think I am doing a pretty good job so far which may be thanks to the author's simplistic way of writing. If I don't get a phrase, I will just try to make an educated guess and go with it.

Please give me feedback on my translation, my other novels or the site itself so I can improve anything that needs it! Thanks.

If I have time tomorrow, I may translate another chapter.

TL & Editor: Keriv136

"Be happy….."

I didn't think he'd say such a thing.

It's surprising.

There's a bad aftertaste to it.

Was this something you were aiming for?

If that's the case, this guy had a bad personality after all.

"It's over brother."

"Yeah."

"What do we do now?"

"What do you want to do? I'm getting married."

"Either way, we go wherever you go Almis."

Said the three men grumbling.

"By the way, I'm the one who killed all the guards. I was the most active, wasn't I?"

"What are you talking about?"

"You're cunning, aren't you!!"

The three start fighting with each other.

Really, how annoying…..

I'm the one who cut the king's head off and broke his spear.

I Look back

We're far from the battlefield.

I have to hurry back.

I charge again to the battlefield while holding my head high.

I see the state of my friends.

I was worried because I ended up rushing away from the battlefield.

Apparently, there seems to be no dead. We're really lucky.

There are a lot of people with just injuries.

They may die of tetanus if they don't treat it soon.

"Almis!"

Volos called out to me while running.

"It is indeed Almis! With this, I can finally rid myself of my regret towards Ragou!"

Volos said while crying.

I'll shut up and give you my handkerchief. (Not sure if he actually has a handkerchief or maybe he is just saying it sarcastically 俺は黙ってハンカチを渡す。)

"Almis!"

This time it's Yal.

"Sorry, how did the battle go?"

"Look for yourself."

I show him Ferme's spear.

Val opened his eyes wide and then bowed.

"Ha! You guys killed King Ferme, this is a decisive win. Let's drink some wine next time! I'll hold on to that spear for now."

That said, Bartolo tore away the spear from me, pointing backward with his thumb. (little confusing this one そう言ってバルトロは俺から槍をむしり取り、親指で後ろを指した)

Tetra was here.

"Almis…."

Tetra hugged me.

"Tetra…."

I gave Tetra a tight hug.

"Ha, don't be nervous."

I go around the room.

This is the third lap.

"My older brother, he is a leading figure….."

Ron said with an amazed expression.

This is the former King Ferme's palace.

I am preparing for my wedding ceremony now.

It will start in ten minutes.

"When this is over, will there be any rewards? King Rosaith and the other clans are coming. Be firm."

Roswald said with a clever face. (not sure

Do I really need to meet with the clans?

I must be blessed. (Sarcasm? Not sure)

"We're ready. Come quickly."

Urged on by Soyon, I went outside.

The sun is shining.

It is the perfect day for a wedding.

In front of me, all the clans including King Rosaith, are looking at me as if putting a price on me.

I bow to them and thank them for coming to my wedding ceremony.

My speech should be perfect because it's the content Tetra and I came up with together.

When my speech ended, Tetra came out.

Tetra was wearing a wedding dress based on the color blue.

Half of her face is concealed with a thin veil.

It's a very expensive dress purchased from the Kiri people. (translation says Kiri, but pengu translations translated it as Karisha, or maybe the people themselves are called Kiri People?)

"Beautiful."

Those words escaped my lips.

Tetra's face turned slightly red and she smiled.

Tetra turns to King Rosaith and the clans.

She thanked them for their help in the war. (tch, the clans didn't help at all heh)

I couldn't take my eyes off Tetra.

She is so beautiful I can watch her forever.

It doesn't matter if it is King Rosaith or all of the clans.

You can all leave.

……. I want to say it, but I won't.

Tetra bows.

Her speech was finally over.

Julia came up on the stage.

Magic also serves a purpose in wedding ceremonies.

That's what Julia said.

"Congratulations to the both of you."

Julia smiled.

"Thank you."

Tetra returned the smile.

As for me……. I couldn't say anything.

Julia makes an expression like she doesn't care.

"Do you both swear to love and help each other forever and ever?"

"I swear."

We answer together.

"The heavens, the sea, and the gods of the earth. The gods have been watching, helping and guiding us since the time when this world was a whirl of chaos. Bless these two in their marriage."

Julia cut her words short. (Not sure on this one そこでユリアは言葉を一度切る this might have something to do with the fact that what she was saying was too long so she just cut it short)

"The fairy's blessings on you both. Hopefully your love with last forever."

Julia looks at me, laughs and says.

"We have an agreement."

I know.

I was told many times.

I raise Tetra's veil.

There is Tetra's face, who stares at me with feverish eyes.

I press my lips against hers.

Loud applause follows.

After the ceremony, the banquet was held.

I was given congratulatory gifts from the clans and a lot of celebratory goods.

They gave me their best regards from now on.

Even a wedding is a place for politics.

There were no manners.

Ron and Roswald got drunk and fought, Lia got into some trouble, but it's not a big deal.

The only notable thing…….

After the banquet was over, Julia's eyes were moist because she had returned home. (this one is confusing, don't know if it is correct, 宴会が終わった後、帰る時のユリアの瞳が潤んでいたことだけだ)

his coins, Qing Ming decided to purchase a pastry, called Dolfitz, which was sold at the stall.

TL & ED: Keriv136

The Kirisha Peninsula

It is one of the world's most developed regions, but it is a war-torn peninsula where many city-states vie for power with one another.

In a city-state at the eastern end of the Kirisha Peninsula, a stranger set foot there.

"So, this is the trade city that connects the Persis Empire with the Kirisha Peninsula…"

The man said as he looked up at the huge walls towering over him.

Claris has a population of 250,000 and it is the second most powerful city-state on the Kirisha Peninsula.

This city-state was originally a colony of another city-state on the Peninsula, and it is the only place connecting the Peninsula to the Persis Empire. Facing the Ash Sea in the north and the Inland Sea in the south, it has a natural harbor facing the Horn Bay, so naturally merchants gathered here. These powerful and influential merchants, who controlled the East-West trade, eventually rebelled against their colonial masters and gained independence.

This city-state has flourished as one of the wealthiest trade cities in the world.

“Hey! Older brother, go ahead!”

“Ah, excuse me.”

The gatekeeper showed an amiable smile on his face.

“Hmm, is there a tax to enter…..”

“No, it would interfere with trade here. Well, if you stay more than a month you will have to pay a tax to stay in the city, is this your first time here? I’ve never seen your face before…..where do you come from?”

“I’m from the Scarlet Empire. You know, the country known for its silk in the far east. My name is Yang Qing Ming.” (I am not sure if the name is right, 陽青明)

“Oh, you’re from the country of silk…”

The gatekeeper stared intently at Qing Ming.

“I see. Let me give you some advice. Keep in mind that there are two kinds of people in Claris. At the top, you have the first-class citizens. These are wealthy citizens who can pay the high head tax. The others are second-class citizens who are poor and unable to pay the tax. It would be wise for you to stay away from the second-class citizens. You may know this already, but the part of the city where the second-class citizens live is dangerous. By the way, I am a first-class citizen.”

“This is….. your advice, thank you sir. I’ll try to be careful.” (I think here the author is trying to show that the character is surprised that the gatekeeper is giving him this advice. これは これは……ご忠告、ありがとうございます)

Qing Ming gave a friendly laugh and passed through the gate.

“That’s five copper coins.” (Not too sure about this 青銅貨五枚 だ)

“Uh… you don’t accept coins from Persis?”

Qing Ming wasn’t expecting to hear that and the shopkeeper frowned.

“…….You have to exchange your money over there.”

With the money changer that the shopkeeper pointed out, Qing Ming exchanged his Persis coins for Kirisha coins. There would be a fee for the exchange but there was nothing he could do about it.

“Here.”

“Thank you, sir.”

After exchanging

The pastry-shaped dough is fried with oil and skewered with a skewer. (This sentence was difficult to translate but it’s not important)

It seems they use sugar, it’s a good price.

Perhaps most of their business comes from first-class citizens.

Qing Ming eats the Dolfitz while thinking this.

He enjoys its simple sweetness, but it’s too oily.

While Qing Ming runs through the city with a carefree attitude, a dirty man appears from out of the crowd.

He had a leather bag in his hands.

“Someone!! Capture him!! Thief!!”

Qing Ming kicked the man’s feet out from under him and the thief fell to the ground.

Qing Ming grabbed the bag from the thief's hands.

"This must be a second-class citizen…."

Qing Ming took a good look at the thief.

This is a crime committed because of a troubled life. There is room for sympathy….. but a crime is a crime.

It's not something that can be allowed.

City guardsmen, who were nearby and heard the commotion, came over to arrest the second-class citizen.

"Please stop!! I promise I won't steal ever again!! I don't want to be a slave!!"

"Shut up! Do you want to be sent to the mines?"

The city guardsmen dragged the thief away until they were no longer in view.

"You there!! Thank you!!"

"Don't worry about it."

Qing Ming returns the bag to the black-haired woman who was chasing the thief.

Her skin was an olive complexion and she had a well-defined face.

There sure are a lot of beautiful women in the world, Qing Ming thought to himself.

The woman hugged the bag she received from Qing Ming to her chest.

"Is the bag that important?"

"Yes. My goal is to become an architect. This bag has all my sketches of the architecture I saw in Persis and all of my own designs too…"

Qing Ming is a bit surprised at her words.

One must be proficient in mathematics and physics in order to be an architect.

Not many women learn these skill.

Women are meant to watch over the home, they do not need to study, and there isn't anyone who would hire them even if they did learn them anyway.

This is common sense in the Scarlet Empire where Qing Ming was born.

In the first place, there aren't even many daughters of nobility in the east that learn to read or write. That's why, even if she is a first-class citizen, it's surprising to run into a girl in the middle of town who is aiming to become an architect.

"What? Do you find it strange for a woman to aim for a job like that? A woman can only be a witch, or has to wait for her husband at home?"

The woman in front of my eyes raised her eyebrows in disgust.

Qing Ming quickly shook his head.

"No, of course not, I was just a little surprised. Where I grew up, there were very few women who could read or write."

"I see."

The woman makes a face that seems a bit convinced.

"By any chance, can you read or write letters?"

"First of all, all first-class citizens have to be able to read and write letters at a minimum. That's why all of Claris's citizens, except for maybe the really young or old, can do it. Well, I don't know about the second-class citizens."

Qing Ming really admired that.

It truly is one of the largest commercial cities in the world.

“By the way, I would like to do something to thank you for your help.”

“Well then….. could you show me around? The city that is.”

The woman happily nodded at Qing Ming’s proposition.

“Right. My name is Ismene. And you are?”

“Qing Ming Yang. Yang is my surname, and my given name is Qing Ming.”

…….. It’s not the correct way to say my name, but it is best to explain it as such to the people of Kirisha. Qing Ming thought while he spoke with Ismene. (this is just about how in many Asian countries, surnames come before given names, but Kirisha is more like western countries)

“By the way, how much do you know about Kirisha?”

“Let’s see….. there were two wars between Kirisha and the Persis Empire, and your specialties are olives and grapes. There are dozens of city-states on the Peninsula. That’s about it.”

“I see….”

After they finished walking around the city, they went to dinner at a restaurant. It was Qing Ming’s treat. Out of consideration for all Qing Ming had done for her, Ismene told him everything she knew about Kirisha.

“Well, all the city-states on the Kirisha Peninsula are in various alliances with each other and have signed non-aggression treaties among their allies. There is also an agreement between the different alliances. Every four years they hold a festival where all hostilities cease and even foreign enemies can participate in the festivities. Also, if the Persis Empire attacks,

they all cooperate to fight against them."

"I see. I was wondering about how the city-states were able to defeat the Persis Empire twice even though they are so divided. So that's the reason."

Qing Ming wrote down what he learned on a notebook made of parchment.

He writes down everything that he sees and hears on his journey in his notebook.

"If I'm not mistaken, isn't Claris the leading power of the Eastern Alliance?"

"Yeah, that's right. There's also Alto of the Southern Alliance and Tel Aviv of the Western Alliance. There's also Layme of the Northern Alliance too. (Not sure about last part, 北部同盟のレイムなんかがあるわ)

"Aha, this is very informative."

Qing Ming enters all the information into his notebook.

"Alto is a Democracy with a popular assembly made up of all adult men, Tel Aviv is ruled by a senate consisting of a privileged aristocracy, Layme is ruled by a king and the nobility, and Claris is ruled by powerful merchants. Relations are bad between them because of the different political systems."

"But when you fight the Persis Empire, there is peace. That's interesting."

Qing Ming doesn't stop moving the pen in his left hand while he eats with his right. This is very bad manners.

"Can you tell me if this is right?"

"What?"

"Ismene is a first-class citizen, right? Doesn't that make you an

aristocrat? At least that is how I understand it……

Ismene laughs at Qing Ming's question.

"Good question. First-class citizens are different from aristocrats. We're just commoners. There are no aristocrats in Claris, we are all equal. There aren't any in Alto either, but there are aristocrats in Tel Aviv and Layme."

"Really… the world is bigger than I thought."

Qing Ming's pen moves frantically and Ismene grabs it annoyed.

"Stop it, you're eating."

"Haha, I'm sorry."

Qing Ming puts his notebook in his pocket and gives a shy laugh.

"By the way, why are you traveling?"

Ismene listens casually as Qing Ming's eyes shine as he speaks.

"The farthest sea… to see all the oceans to the ends of the Earth! I was born on the eastern edge of this content. When I was five years old, I went on a journey with my parents to see the end of the world……but my parents died while on the journey. At that time, they told me to continue my journey to find the end of the world."

"Is that your dream?"

"No, my dream is different."

Ismene leaned over with interest.

"I am going to write about everything I see and hear on my journey. Then I will share what I know with the world."

"When you say it like that, I really can't hate it."

Ismene smiles.

“It’s a good dream, and I believe it will come true soon. The day after tomorrow, there is a ship leaving Claris and heading towards Lezat city on the Adernia Peninsula. It’s a short distance from there to the Western Sea.”

“Is that true! Then my long journey is finally over……”

Qing Ming couldn’t help but look at the ceiling. His expectations on finally seeing the West Sea rose.

“Do you think that I could go with you?”

“Huh? I don’t mind… but don’t you have things you need to do here?”

“There are too many good architects in Kirisha. It’s too difficult to find a job as a woman here. The Adernia Peninsula is different, it’s an underdeveloped region. Those countries would be dying to get their hands on an excellent architect.”

“I see….”

The Kirisha Peninsula is a good place to hone your skills, but there is a lot of competition. It’s just not a place where it’s easy to make a name for yourself.

In that respect, an underdeveloped region would have more opportunities for employment.

“I understand, then let’s go together!”

“It’s decided then!”

The two of them shook their hands in agreement.

The next day…

“ugugugugugu…” (vomiting)

“Are you alright Qing Ming?”

She asks while Qing Ming groans over the toilet.

He can’t afford to answer.

“Sorry. Kirishan cuisine uses a lot of oil……I forgot to mention that people who aren’t used to eating it have a high chance of stomach problems. Forgive me, okay?”

had their eyes on him and hoped to catch him for a husband. However, he refused all such proposals.

Editors Note: Someone had suggested for me to use a translation aggregator program and I was able to find one and get it to work, although not the one originally suggested. I also found a translation assistant program. I tried them out when doing this chapter which is why I decided to do this one earlier than I planned.

Also, I was saying that my translations were machine translated but that is not correct. I was using the wrong term, the correct term would be machine assisted. I put a lot of work into making sure the translation is as natural as possible. Please give me feedback on this chapter to let me know how it reads. I am steadily improving my translation writing, I think.

This is the last chapter of Volume 1. The next four or five chapters are part of some kind of in between stuff. I am not sure, since Volume 2 doesn't start until chapter 41. I only briefly read through chapter 36 and it is talking about some philosopher and his philosophy. I hope it isn't too difficult to translate

One last note, second Volume of Fayde of the Void has also been started.

Not far from the southern tip of the Adernia Peninsula is the island of Trishkia.

Even further south from Trishkia island is a country named Povenia.

The nation of Povenia is a republic where a senate, consisting of the aristocracy, are responsible for national affairs.

In the maritime nation of Povenia, there is a huge economic disparity between the nobility and the commoners. The nobility are able to acquire vast wealth through maritime trade while the commoners must rely on agriculture and livestock. Because of this, there is a clear divide that distinguishes between the classes.

A perfect example of this would be the fact that commoners are not permitted to participate in government.

Only the aristocracy are allowed to become members of the Senate and commoners are forbidden membership and the right to vote.

There is also a significant gap between commoners and aristocrats in regards to the ownership of land and slaves.

Also, aristocrats and commoners are not legally allowed to marry.

This matter is so important that it needs to be said twice.

Aristocrats and commoners are forbidden to marry.

Alexis Barqah is one such noble in Povenia.

Alexis was born into a distinguished aristocratic family known for their military exploits and he himself served in the military.

He was only twelve years old when he fought in his first military campaign.
Since then, he has accomplished many meritorious deeds and was even in placed in command of his own force by the age of fifteen.

After receiving the command of his own force, he participated in numerous naval and land battles. He was even victorious

against rebel uprisings and at the age of 23, he is one of the most decorated generals of Povenia.

Anyone who saw him for the first time would pay especial attention to his right eye.

His right eye was covered with an eye patch and he had worn this eye patch for as long as anyone could remember.

He was known as the 'One-eyed Knight'.

His appearance was that of a brilliant and handsome man, with great military prowess and a promising future, even despite his eye.

There is not a single woman who would ever leave such a man. Many a daughter of the aristocracy

He had no intention of participating in any arranged marriages or settling down.

Many had asked him the reasons why he hadn't married yet.

He simply replied, "I am not interested in women. I like young handsome boys."

Among the sorcerers of Povenia, there is a woman named Melia.

She doesn't have a surname. This is because she is a commoner. She has only three friends.

The first is a wolf dog which is a crossbreed between a dog and a wolf. Her second friend is small owl around fifty celica (fifty centimeters). Her last and final friend, is a large hawk with a total length of one hundred and twenty celica (120 centimeters).

Her hawk has no rivals in aerial combat and has excellent

sight.

Although she is only 22 years old, her contributions to the Povenian military are considerable, and she is known as the 'Hawk Bearer'. (The nickname could be Hawk User, or Hawk Trainer, Hawk Tamer, etc.)

She is swarmed by marriage proposals practically every day of the week.

It's only natural. They could only see great future prospects in marrying a sorceress and there isn't a man alive who would leave one to remain single. Even more so if that sorceress were to be known as a beautiful woman.

It is also said that magic ability is genetically inherited in the child of a sorcerer.

Thus, she is extremely popular.

Despite the endless marriage proposals, all of them were refused.

She is considered a treasure among the common folk, and she even declined marriage proposals from those houses who were affiliated with aristocrats.

Someone once asked her, "why do you refuse to get married?"

"I'm not interested in men. I only like animals."

Late at night.

In the night sky, the crescent moon which is a symbol of Povenia, shines brightly.

While most Povenians were asleep peacefully in their beds, two figures move stealthily in the night. These two are Alexis and Melia.

“I’ve been wanting to see you my dear Melia!”
“And I’ve been wanting to see you as well, Alexis!”

They desperately embrace each other and share a passionate kiss. A crescent moon illuminates the surroundings of the two brightly.

After embracing for several minutes, the two finally get down to business.

“Tomorrow morning a ship to Trishkia will be at the harbor. When we arrive on Trishkia island, we will walk to the colonial city of Trishkia and then from there we will immigrate by ship to the Adernia Peninsula. Do you understand?” (this sentence was difficult because I’m not sure about the colonial city of Trishkia part でトリシケリアのキリシア人植民市に)

“Yes, I understand. This is the exact reason why I have endured being called a perverted animal lover.”

“I know all too well, I’ve endured being known as a homosexual.”

They both laugh together.

It was during the war that the two met. Melia was dispatched to Alexis’s unit, as a sorcerer under his direct command.

They were immediately attracted to one another and their relationship soon blossomed into love….
However, one of them was an aristocrat, and the other a commoner.

Marriage was not a possibility for them.

Alexis really wanted to marry, but having a concubine on the side would not be allowed in a marriage. In Povenia, bigamy was forbidden by law.

But, it’s a fundamental principle that aristocrats can’t marry a

commoner, so even if a concubine would be allowed, they would never be able to marry. (this sentence gave me no end of headaches もっとも平民とは結婚出来ないのは大原則なので認められていても結婚は出来ないだろうが。)

If their relationship was ever discovered, they would be forever separated. Therefore, the two of them lied about their circumstances.

But lately, it was becoming more difficult to keep up the facade. Because of this, the two planned to elope and escape to another country.

They had to find a place to elope to first, staying in Povenia was out of the question.
Povenia's overseas colonies were considered as possibilities for their elopement, but because of how well the two of them were known, they would be too conspicuous and so they were removed from consideration.

Another candidate was the Persis Empire.

They are a powerful country in the east that even once destroyed a former suzerain state of Povenia. (in this case I think there was once a country that ruled over Povenia, or it could be the other way 東の超大国で、ポフェニアの元宗主国を滅ぼした国でもある)

You would think Povenia had a hostile relationship with them…….. they don't. (I'm not sure here だからポフェニアとは敵対関係……ではない。)

The reasons there is no hostile relationship is that the Persis Empire protects Povenia's overseas trade and because of this, both countries have established good relations with each other.

There are many ships that travel to the Persis Empire from here, so it would be easy for them to escape by ship to the Persis Empire. However, it is just too far. Courage is indeed necessary when defecting to a place where the language and

culture differ significantly.

There is however a third option, the Kirishia Peninsula. Povenia has terrible relations with the countries on the Kirishia Peninsula. It is because they are competitors and fight over control of maritime trade.

The problem with this is that Alexis has fought against the armies of Kirishia. So he thought it might be dangerous to escape to one of the nations of Kirishia.

Therefore, they decided that they would defect to one of Kirishia's colonial cities on the Adernia Peninsula. Since the Adernia Peninsula was such a backwater place, no one would know their names.

These were their thoughts.

"Is this really okay? I don't like my family that much, but…. you have a good family don't you?"

"What are you talking about…. I'm supposed to be into bestiality remember? Who other than you would want to marry me?"

"Haha, that's right."

"You are the only one who would marry a homosexual like me."

They had made up their minds and prepared themselves mentally.

The next day, news had spread throughout Povenia, that a male aristocrat and a female commoner, had run away together.

A large search was conducted by the Povenian military and

word was spread throughout the cities of Povenia, but they were never found.

al annual parallax which could be observed.

Natural philosophy.

Natural philosophy is, in short, the idea of trying to elucidate naturally occurring phenomena theoretically.

Kirishia …. …. Especially in the Alto city-state, a system of slavery has been developed.

All of the work in Alto is done by the slaves so the citizens enjoy a life of leisure.

In this environment, they devised ways of passing the time.

In other words, why is fire hot? Why does water become ice when it cools? Why do the sun and moon rise and set regularly…..
They saw it necessary to cut to the truth of these phenomenon, that they had spoken of as being determined by God, and unravel them.

Therefore discussion was necessary, something which they found to be quite enjoyable.

Thus from this, Natural philosophy was developed.

Nikolaos is one of these natural philosophers of Alto. (1)

He was married at the age of seventeen, and his first daughter was born when he was eighteen.

Currently Nikolaos is thirty-eight years old. He has two daughters at the ages of twenty and twelve, and he has two

sons who are fifteen and ten.

He owns ten slaves and his area of expertise is astronomy.

Astronomy is a means of understanding the laws of movement of the sun, moon and stars. It's purpose is to grasp the identity of the universe and to discern fate.

In current day Kirishia, the Earth is understood to be a planet in the shape of a sphere and both the Sun and Moon revolve around it.

At first, Nikolaos also supported this theory. However, while continuing his own research over a period of time he began to realize something.

This is strange? The calculation doesn't fit the theory? What this must mean is that the calculations just don't fit a geocentric model. It must be a false theory. **(2)**
Or it's much more complicated than that. **As he thought more about it, he began to realize that the geocentric theory may be wrong. This led to Nikolaos formulating his own theory about it.**

Namely, his theory was that the center of the universe is the sun and all of the celestial bodies, not excluding the Earth, revolve around the sun. Only the moon actually revolved around the Earth.

He named this theory the heliocentric model and announced it to the philosophical world.

His theory was poorly received and many reactions were cold. He was treated as a madman by those who believed that Humans were a race chosen by God, and that the celestial body that they inhabited was the center of the universe.
It was a total loss.

If those were the only arguments that he faced, it would have been possible to sufficiently refute them.

“You say that you are God’s chosen race and that man is at the center, but try to think of it like this. It shouldn’t be that strange of an idea to think of the Sun as the center of the universe, which is a symbol of the kindness within our heart.” (3)

However, he was refuted by the supporters of the geocentric theory.

Why you might ask, it’s because his theory had a fatal weakness.

If the sun is at the center of the universe, then an annual parallax should be observed. Unfortunately, there was no actu

On simple observation alone, the geocentric theory proved to be superior to the heliocentric theory.

Nikolaos insisted that the reason the annual parallax could not be confirmed was because the distance between the Sun and the Earth was too large, but no one listened.

He should have buried the hatchet there. Science doesn’t develop without those who doubt and question and Alto’s natural philosophers understood this well.

However, he was insistent and would not give up. Naturally, this type of behavior was not well received.

“That guy, isn’t he annoying?”

This slander towards him would spread to his family before long.

“Dammit!! Why doesn’t anyone understand!! My theory is perfect. Damn, these fools with their fixed ideas all have rocks for brains!”

Nikolaos rumpled up the papers he had used for his calculations and threw them away. He slammed his right arm on the desk. However he knew all to well that hitting a desk wasn’t going to convince Alto’s natural philosophers.

“Nikolaos, sir. There is a letter for you.”

“Hmm?”

Nikolaos received a letter from a slave. The letter was made from a mysterious material. It was thinner and lighter than parchment and it was white.

Dear elder brother, (4)

How are you? I am doing well. It seems that the choice I made in migrating to the Colonial City Lezat of Claris was the right one. What you have in your hand is a thing called ‘paper’ and it was obtained here in the Adernia Peninsula. My intelligent elder brother should understand well the usefulness of this. It seems that the barbarians of Adernia should not be taken lightly.

When I returned to Claris to replenish my stock, I heard rumors about you elder brother. Rumors of you are well known throughout Kirishia. I believe that your theory is in fact correct, but isn’t it time you relented? I just can’t endure my elder brother being treated as if he were a madman or a fool.

Isn’t your family also suffering? Someday my brother’s theory will be accepted.
It may be hundreds of years later, or even thousands of years, but…. isn’t that good enough?

The Adernia Peninsula is a good place that has a lot of potential. It’s warm and the meals here are quite

delicious. There is also an abundance of salt to be used.

Isn't it difficult for you to live on the Kirishia Peninsula? There isn't anyone who knows of you on the Adernia Peninsula. If my elder brother wishes to emigrate here then I will welcome it.

Well, until next time. I look forward to a favorable response.

Best regards.

Adernia Peninsula Lezat, Ainsworth company chairman Ainz

"Hmph."

Nikolaos rolls the letter up and throws it on the floor. He had no intention of giving up.

"Nikolaos, sir. The preparations for your meal are complete." Another slave informs him.

"I'm coming."

Nikolaos stood up from his seat and headed to his meal.

"What is Kroll doing?" (5)

"He's out as usual. He spends all his time in idle leisure, I will need to scold him when he returns." Nikolaos's wife laughed as she spoke.

The Nikolaos family continue to wait for their third son Kroll to return. After waiting for a while, the door opened and Kroll returned.

"I'm home….."
"What the hell…. what on earth happened? You're wounded."

Kroll had a large bruise on his face. On closer inspection, his clothes were also dirty with soil.

“I just fell down is all. I will wash my hands now.” Kroll said while attempting to escape.

Is it possible to get such a bruise from falling down? No, it’s not. This was definitely caused by being beaten. *Why were you beaten up*….. Nikolaos considered silently.

He glances at his eldest daughter and realizes that she is still not married. She is getting older and is at that age where she should be. But whose fault is it that she has been unable to marry?

It’s not just his eldest daughter. All of his children are being isolated from their community by his own actions. Nikolaos seriously weighed his purpose and his responsibility to his family.

And…..

“Hey, everyone. I have a proposition…….”

TL Notes:

1. **Nikolaos is a Greek form of Nicholas, Nicolas, Nicholaus, etc. There are many ways to write it. In this case, you can think of him as Nicolaus Copernicus. Although, the time period of this particular story is at a much earlier time period than Copernicus lived in our world. There are other philosophers/astronomers that also proposed heliocentric models, so he is a combination of them I suppose.**
2. **I have decided to use italics for when a character is talking to themselves in their head.**
3. **This sentence was difficult to translate, he is saying something like the sun is a symbol of goodness, kindness or the kindness in people’s hearts. Maybe he is trying to appeal to their religious beliefs 善の象徴である太陽が中心**

であっても可笑しくないだろう」と

4. **The author doesn't format the text like a letter but I decided to put it in the format of a letter since he is reading an actual letter here.**
5. **The name Kroll in Japanese is Kuroru, also sounds like Crawl, or Krawl, I went with Kroll.**
6. I decided to make this Notes section use separate colors for easier identification, should I use two colors or keep it as one or each should be different? Also, what about the colors themselves? Just want to provide a better reading experience.

ed our goal of the construction of 600 warships.”

TL: Keriv136

Ed: Keriv136

Some difficult phrases to translate in this, but I made do and also made a few improvements/changes while editing. I will try to release another chapter this week if possible. Maybe later in the week. Also, soon will have some new novels up here, Eternal God Emperor, and also thinking of Nodime No Yuusha (which I spoke with Yoshi about taking the project on)

Persis Empire Capital Jamshid

“Haa…”

Emperor Xerxes III of the Persis Empire was very troubled. He was greatly concerned about the state of affairs with Kirishia. Both his grandfather and father had undertaken expeditions in order to conquer Kirishia, but both had failed. Relations between Kirishia and Persis were extremely bad.

Truthfully, he didn’t really wish to control Kirishia. Even if the land was offered, he would love it if he could politely refuse it.

In the first place, it was a land which wasn’t all that rich. It was a dry land with little rain, which made it difficult to produce wheat. Though, if one were to speak of the cultivation of olives and grapes, then it was a perfect place for a thriving industry.

There really wasn’t much sense in conquering such a place.

Then, why did the Emperors of the past mount expeditions to conquer Kirishia? It was because Kirishia interfered in the affairs of the Persis Empire.

There is an area of the Persis Empire where Kirishian people

live. The Kirishian people who live there often revolt against the Empire. Out of all the city-states on the Kirishian Peninsula, it was mainly the City-State of Alto that supported these rebellions.

No matter how many times the revolts were crushed, Alto would continue to provide assistance and weapons to the rebels. These rebellions couldn't be fully stopped until their source of power was removed. Though it may seem as if it were prudent to let them have their independence, it would only lead to rebellions throughout the Empire from others who sought independence.

A variety of different ethnic groups lived throughout the Empire. War was not something the Emperor wanted. War ruined the economy and destroyed the land. It did much more harm than good. However, there was no other way. Whether it was done or not, there were severe consequences.

"How can I conquer Kirishia….while they constantly fight with each other, they always unite whenever we attack…"

Kirishia's total military power was about 50,000. Meanwhile, the Persis Empire could dispatch as many as 400,000 to Kirishia. The difference in military power was overwhelming. However, they couldn't win.

The reason was simple, morale was extremely low. In the first place, Persis was a diverse multi-ethnic nation with soldiers who were comprised of a variety of races. Their patriotism towards the Persis Empire wasn't exactly overflowing. Moreover, because of the many different languages, it was difficult to organize the soldiers effectively.

As for the Kirishians, they were defending their home and so their morale would be very high. Also, because they were constantly fighting among themselves, their fighting ability was high. So, the Persis Empire lost every time.

"Alto's heavy infantry (hoplites) are very powerful. I also can't make light of the mobility of the Germanis cavalry which Claris employs. The soldiers of Layme have unrivaled strength, then there's the strategists of Telbai and their homosexuals…..The Sacred

Band of Telbai are a nuisance.” (1)

Last but not least were their maritime forces. Kirishia had superior ship technology and seamanship compared to Persis. No matter how Persis prepared their ships, they would always lose to the Kirishians.

“Your majesty, we have complet

“Is that so….and these warships are made of Lebanon Cedar. I don’t think these ships will be defeated that easily.”

In a naval battle, the greatest advantage was in the proficiency of the sailors. How much of a difference could the number and quality of ships make?

“Your Majesty. I have a suggestion for dealing with Kirishia.”

“What is it? You may speak.”

The Prime Minister smiled from ear to ear as he made his proposal.

“In order to make bread, you need a baker. Aren’t there those who are as good as the Kirishians in terms of naval ability? We can form an alliance with them.”
“Povenia… it’s not a bad idea. Then, what about on land?”

“Kirishia has a powerful army. They will fight to the bitter end. We will need men who are equally determined.” Xerxes stared at the Prime Minister.

The Prime Minister opened his mouth.

“Let’s ask those monsters of the desert. Even if we lose, their numbers will decrease. However, if we win, then we will obtain victory.”

“Indeed…. that’s a good idea. Then, I will write a letter immediately.”

[Humming]

West of Jamshid, the capital of the Persis Empire, is a vast desert.

It is a large desert spreading slightly south along the border between Kirishia and the Persis Empire.

There, one woman was humming a song. She had golden blond hair and a brown complexion. She held a spear so large that it was disproportionate with her hand. Black Dragon Damascus steel shined on the tip of this spear.

It would have been quite the strange scene if you were to only see her alone, holding such a large weapon. However, what was even stranger was the thing keeping her company. She was accompanied by a huge salamander. And while she hummed a song, the salamander screamed.

The Salamander's tail was cut while the woman dodged its flames, cutting its tail and one of its six legs, all while the salamander screamed in front of the eyes of the monstrous woman.

[Humming]

The woman hummed while she avoided the monster's flames by jumping towards the bosom of the salamander and thrusting her spear into its jaw.

[■■■■■!!](2)

The salamander retreated while screaming and throwing up blood and the woman jumped up, thrusting her spear in its back.

[■■■■■■!!]
Her body was like a flame, dyed red with blood. She licked the blood on her lower lip and grinned.

"Oops!"

Because the salamander began to roll around on the ground, the woman was shaken off its back. However, the spear remained stuck in its back. Seeing this as an opportunity to strike, the salamander bared its fangs and attacked the woman.

“Ahh!”
She aimed a kick at the salamander’s nose as it charged. Her kick cracked some of the scales of the charging salamander.

“This is because of my training and these shoes made of Dragon Damascus.”

The salamander was blown away like a ball. Being in severe pain, the salamander could not get up.

The spear from its back was pulled out.

“Well, that’s goodbye～”

She thrust her spear through its heart.

“Chief!!”

“Huh? What is it?”

While she dismantled the Salamander, a man who was riding on a camel comes running towards her.

“Chief. There is a letter here from the Emperor.”

“Thank you, and stop calling me Chief, call me Aisha.” She said while winking at the man with a friendly smile.

“By the way, this salamander, you killed it alone?”

“Yup. I heard it was strong so I was looking forward to fighting it. It wasn’t that big of a deal though.”
“It looks like it could be a lower Demon Beast class, but…. you are still as strong as ever.”

The man looked at Aisha with eyes filled with respect and awe.

The people of the desert are a race of people that live in an area which extends southeast from the Kirishian Peninsula. One out of every one hundred of their people possess what is known as the ‘Hunter’s Protection’, and they are a people with a high level of skill with iron technology. They travel throughout the desert on camels,

do business while grazing, and plunder using their weapons with those who fail to negotiate well with them. They are blacksmiths, nomads, merchants and thieves. These are the people of the desert.

Because their people lived in oases throughout the desert, they were not unified as a people for a long time. Though all of the desert clans were technically subjects of the Persis Empire, in reality they were partially independent countries who constantly fought each other over the oases and trade routes.

It was said that each successive emperor of the Persis Empire often were troubled by them. However, eight years ago, the clans were united by force. It was the clan chief of the Habu that accomplished this feat.

Aisha of the Habu.

She had two blessings besides ‘Hunter’s Protection’ which the people in the desert originally had. One of these blessings was [Divine Protection of the War God]. The other was [Divine Protection of the Mad God]. (3)

All three of them were protections that provided physical strength enhancements.

When her father died, she made her elder brother and younger brother yield to her through strength, and she became the clan chief. She then leveraged her connections with Xexes III, who had just ascended the throne, through a sexual relationship.

All the clans fell into their hands in the blink of an eye due to the overwhelming force and influence of the Persis Empire.

“Alright, so what do you want to ask from me?” Aisha broke the seal and read the signed letter.

She smiled from ear to ear.

“What is the emperor asking of us?”

“It looks like we will be joining the expedition to Kirishia this time.”

The man frowned while listening.

“Hmm? What’s wrong?”

“The Emperor is just using us as tools. Is that really okay?”

“Hahaha. Our relationship has always been one of give and take. We use each other.”

Desert people are empowered to do business freely within the Persis Empire. As compensation, the Empire imposes a commercial tax on the people of the desert. Trade is indispensable for the people of the desert, and the commercial tax is an important income which supports the huge military expenses of the Empire. It might be said that at the least, Aisha and Xerxes III had an excellent relationship. However, most of the desert people had a strong sense of independence and so many of them disliked putting themselves below an emperor of a different ethnicity.

“You can loot as much as you like. Won’t that mean huge profits? I’ve been thinking for a long time now that the Kirishians were annoying. I’m looking at this from a different perspective. They started to muscle in on our trade without permission. We will kill them and reduce their numbers.”

Both the people of the desert and the Kirishians were commercial people. Originally, they mostly traded by sea while the desert people traded by land, but in recent years Claris had begun to partake in inland trade as well. Therefore, the people of the desert didn’t have a good relationship with the Kirishians currently.

“In addition…..” Aisha gripped a part of the salamander, “I’ve been quiet lately. It’s about time I went on a little rampage….. I must show them. We’ll make them pay.”

The salamander’s horn was broken into pieces.

TL Notes:

1. This is a reference to the Sacred Band of Thebes which was an army that consisted of only homosexual men.
2. Not sure what these blocks are, maybe a strange language?

3. The names of these abilities might be wrong.　一つは『闘神の加護』。　もう一つは『狂闘の加護』。

Chapter 39

TL: Kiyo, Keriv136

ED: Manel, Keriv136

We have had some trouble with people signing on to translate but either disappearing or being too busy to translate so unfortunately Porter of Two Worlds is now inactive and Eternal God Emperor is also on the fence. So any translators who are actually serious about it and are interested, please contact me using contact on the site.

To replace these inactive stories, there is a new Novel called Unrivaled Divinity which will be updated once a week on Friday (each chapter is 5k words, so they are very big). This story is a mix of Western Fantasy and Xianxia, so check it out! Unrivaled Divinity .

As for this one and Emperor! He can see stats!? I am prioritizing this Novel and if I have time, I will update Emperor! but don't expect too much on that.

The reason why I skipped to chapter 39 from 37 is because chapter 38 is not really a chapter. It is just biographies and geographical information/maps. The biographies are simplistic too, just 1 or 2 small sentences per character. I didn't bother with it. Sorry for the delay!

The country's policies were decided in a conference between the powerful clans in King Rosaith's country.

This was known as The Meeting of the Powerful Clans.

Incidentally, there were two types of clans. The first ones were large clans that belonged to feudal lords who ruled over a certain portion of the land. The others were smaller clans that

were governed by the larger ones.

Basically, fellow feudal lords were considered equals.

The King ruled over the feudal lords, the feudal lords ruled over the landowners and the landowners ruled over the citizens.

Such is the political system under King Rosaith's rule, except for the portion of land that is directly under his control.

Since the area directly controlled by King Rosaith isn't much bigger than a feudal lord's, it is not possible to have a centralized political structure.

This is the reason why it is such a small country.

"Your Highness! Are you sure that we can leave the newly conquered territory to that unknown and suspicious person from the Ars Family?"

Regale Debell, someone from the most influential clan in the Rosaith Kingdom, exclaims with a loud voice.

"Where is he suspicious? I have known the lad for a few years now. He is a good young man who gives us free honey every time he comes here."

Incidentally, this rumor is really going around.

People who went in the forest were killed and eaten by the terrible griffon. However, there seems to be a village within the forest which is considered to be a place for special beings. Thus, people concluded the the village chief was surely the griffon's son. This is the situation.

Nowadays, rumors of him having a tail, fin and wings are quickly spreading.

There are actually two different versions to this story. The first version is that the lad is the child of a girl, who served as a sacrifice, and the griffon, either against the will of the girl or

because they had fallen in love. The other version is that the girl was a virgin who got pregnant with the son of God. Her parents, however, cared a lot about societal appearance and abandoned her in the forest. In the end, she was found by the griffon.

The latter is more common.

There is this idea that a child cannot be born when the deed is done with a beast.

However, people can't go against the fact that a child can be born from God.

After all, there are rumors that the people from the surrounding forest and the former country of King Ferme are Almis Ars' only citizens.

"From our point of view, he is suspicious. There is a more suitable candidate that that boy."

"Hm! I don't know. Lord Bartolo's territory has increased. Who else is suitable? I don't know. Perhaps… are you saying that the land should be distributed to the soldiers who participated in the war? However, it seems those people are not educated. That Lord Almis seems to know how to write in the Kirishan language and he also seems to be good in math. I feel like I can leave it to him."

Almis is able to speak and write the Kirishan language in everyday scenarios as a result of Tetra's lessons.

There is nothing to say about his mathematics.

In this area, one is intelligent if he is able to do the basic arithmetic operations. Moreover, one receives a lot of job offers if he is also able to read and write Kirishan language in everyday conversations.

Even if the feudal lords here have received the highest education, only 20% of them know both Kirishan language and

basic arithmetics, right?

Naturally, Regale is one of those who can't do both. After all, he comes from a powerful clan in the rural area.

Incidentally, Tetra mastered the Kirishan language at the age of 10.

That does exceed the limitations of a normal human being.

"Lord Almis, Lord Bartolo and Lord Volos participated in this battle. What is wrong with deciding for those who participated in the war?"

The clan members turned their heads upon hearing these words.

Everyone was afraid of King Ferme and none had sent out their armies to fight against him.

Originally, King Ferme had greatly lost the battle due to the use of gunpowder and a weapon that had never existed in this world.

Rather, it would be better to say that they had fought well.

"But he has to make preparations for King Domorgal's invasion. Even that person will…"

"So you are telling us that you believe more in this boy than those who were scared and captured by King Ferme?"

King Rosaith glared at Regale after hearing these words.

With the King's gaze fixed on him, Regale winced unintentionally.

"Any other objections?"

No one answers.

"Well then, this concludes the meeting."

Thus, the Meeting of the Powerful Clans ends.

“Damn that worthless bastard!”

“Now, please calm down, Master Regale. The King has more or less two years left, then the throne will be yours.”

Regale’s confidant, Belmet, spoke.

He is sixty years old.

He does not have a grandchild or, rather, he is not married.

He exists solely to serve the Debell family.

Therefore, he was appointed as Regale’s confidant.

Basically, the vassals that gathered around Regale were mostly all his relatives, but there were others whom had been gathered under Belmet’s recommendations.

Simply put, he exists as Regale’s “pearl of wisdom.”

“Well, I will choose Princess Julia’s fiance.”

“Master Regale, please don’t be careless.”

Belmet advised Regale.

“Whose side are you on?”

Regale asked his confidant with a stunned expression.

“Master, you are the most powerful among the clans. You are clearly the next in line for the throne. Not even the sickly king can stop you, no matter how much he dislikes you. However, if the said boy is able to get the support of the clan members…”

“Heh! That boy is just lucky that he won the battle. Even I could have done it. Winning a battle like that is clearly possible. That brat doesn’t even have a decent support. Worst case is that it’s better to overthrow the kingdom.”

Regale proudly said that.

“This should be the last resort. You have this habit of negligence. Please be extremely careful. Supposing that you will become the king…”

Belmet started to scold him.

While ignoring the middle aged confidant’s scolding, Regale left King Rosaith’s palace.

“I am the man chosen by the faeries! It is I who will become King!”

Regale muttered to himself.

…

“My Lord Father! My fiance will be Regale Debell, right? I really don’t like that guy.”

“I agree. However, in the present circumstance, there is no one else.”

Regale Debell is the lord of the most powerful clan in the country.

There is even some royal blood flowing in Regale’s veins and he has many followers and supporters.

There will be a civil war if anyone other than him becomes king.

If a civil war happens, the surrounding countries will intervene.

It is not certain that you could win and, even if you did win, you would lose a lot of territory.

“So, I have to marry him after all…”

Julia said sadly, looking downcast.

Her chest was filled with disgust and sadness since she was unable to be with the man she favored. She felt envy towards her friend who could be with him, and the hated child who would be born from their relationship.

“To tell the truth, when I was ten years old, this country was destroyed by King Ferme. I escaped into the forest and met Almis. I got married, and dreamed of regaining my country. It was a fun dream. It would have been better if Ferme was king, that is my wish now.”

“In that case… wouldn’t I be dead?”

“No, father would be in prison. You would be healthy and not sick. I will help you.! I am not going to accept your marriage! That’s what you would shout.”

Julia felt happy, but also sad due to her delusion.

By the way, Regale would be the first to die. Killed by King Ferme.

She understands all too well that it is just a fantasy.

“The wedding…. Tetra, you were beautiful. I also, just like that… I want to have a husband like that. I am going to train Regale to be just like Almis somehow. Hey, why should I have to pretend and train him?”

Julia breathes a deep sigh.

Her pupils a little moist.

Tears will come out if you don’t move your mouth anyhow.

“Be patient. I have a plan. Why do you think I gave all of King Ferme’s former territory to Almis?”

When King Rosaith said that, Julia jumped.

She pushed down on King Rosaith.

“Dad!! Does that mean I could possibly marry Almis?”

“Hey, heavy!! It’s painful, geho, geho”

King Rosaith coughed intensely.

In a panic, Julia quickly rose from off of King Rosaith.

“This stupid girl… I just lost three months off my life.”

“I’m so sorry!”

Julia apologizes while rubbing her father’s back.

“Well, that’s the story. It is impossible at the present. The reward for killing King Ferme was offset by gaining his territory. Another big thing… he needs to achieve something else to show his ability. And he doesn’t have any allies yet.”

The Kingdom of Rosaith.

There is a reason for this ‘of’.

This ‘of’ is what separates King Rosaith and the country.

In other words, there is no ‘We are the nation’.

King Rosaith’s country consists of an alliance of powerful clans.

In other words, the kingdom was established by a few large and powerful clans under the leadership of the Rosaith family.

Therefore, the relationship between King Rosaith and the powerful clans is relatively close to equals, even though a master-servant relationship exists between them.

Especially if it is a large powerful clan with a population of more than ten thousand people.

The powerful clans have tax collection rights from the very

beginning and this is not something given to them.

King Rosaith can't subjugate a powerful clan forcibly, nor are the powerful clans obligated to obey the king.

Therefore, the support of other powerful clans is indispensable when it comes to succession rights of the throne.

Even if Almis were to inherit the throne, there would only be the Ars territory of 30,000 and the Rosaith territory of seventy thousand.

The remainder of the clans would all become enemies.

Conversely, if their support could be obtained…

"In other words, it is up to him. It's unlikely, but there is hope. I'll try to do something about it, so please don't cry."

King Rosaith consoled his daughter.

magining. First, of course, is the tribute to King Rosyth, but you've been given exemption for two years due to these special circumstances." (Bartolo)

I just binged on this novel yesterday and wanted moar. And since I know a little Japanese (probably around N3 (never really took any exam)) I said, what the hell, why not do it myself.
This won't really be a permanent thing though I've done up to 41 already. I messaged the current translator (Parallel-sama) and told him the details (if you're Parallel-sama and never got anything message me pl0x). I will binge on this so long as I'm a NEET haha. Or until I get bored anyway. I really am doing this on a whim while waiting for the blessings of Hello Work-sama.

Please do forgive me if there are any mistakes and please do point them out.
P.S. I never knew translation was hard work. It took me hours. Literally.

I'll stop blabbering now so you can enjoy.

Edit: I changed the names – please check the glossary.

"Yal, is it really fine for you to not stay like them?"

"Yes, I have decided to devote my life to you, after all." Yal said with a grin.

All the former Ferrum Territory has become part of the Ars Territory. That includes, of course, the territory of my original village.

After all, it would be a waste to abandon or to neglect the village we've spent years to reclaim and develop. Having said that, managing all these lands by myself would be out of the question.

Thus, I asked each of the villagers whether they would like to stay in the village or come with me.

A large part, particularly from those who I saved as children and those who were slaves, who I have now freed by the way, have decided to come with me. I will grant them territory.

Most of the refugees who came last year, on the other hand, elected to stay in the village even though I thought they would want to come back to their hometowns. They probably felt it would be more comfortable to live their lives in the new village.

However, it's a village where one hundred and thirty people lived. Having only thirty people living there would be a waste so I plan to add more people from my new territory there.

————-

(Scene change)

"Alright, all members are accounted for huh."

We have Tetra, Soyon, Lulu, Ron, Roswald, Gram, and Yal. Bolus and Bartolo has also joined.

"Hey, I think I feel like I'm the only one sticking out like a sore thumb." (Bartolo)

"Well, I heard Bartolo-san holds some territory so I figured to consult your opinions on managing territory." (Almis)

It's my first time managing territory. I really don't know anything about it.

That's why asking a senpai is only natural.

"So…first, please teach us what feudal lords do." (Almis)

"It's not a big deal, really. Basically, you're responsible for maintaining public order, sorcery defense, territorial defense, and giving tribute to King Rosyth. You're also responsible for passing judgement and justice. Also managing necessary expenses and tax

collection. That's pretty much it." (Bartolo)

Hey, isn't that a big deal?

"Well, although it might not be a walk in the park, it's not that difficult as you're i

Ah, right. Something like focusing on recovery and reconstruction or what not.

"As for tax collection, you let each of the village heads and the landlords collect them for you. You only have to set the tax rate. Well, the old landlords in your territory were all executed so there's another problem for you." (Bartolo)

The landlords supported and cooperated with King Ferrum. There's no way an excuse like "We were deceived by King Ferrum!" would float. So, all of them got executed while their relatives fell into slavery. You might call them pitiful but it's just them reaping what they sowed.

"Sorcery defense should be left to sorcerers. Especially since you have a few particularly skilled sorcerers in your team. However, it is very important that you take care, retain, and conserve those who can ride souls." (Bartolo)

This means I can't let Tetra, Soyon, and Lulu participate in the construction of magical barriers. It might be fine if the scope of the barrier were small but covering the whole of my territory would be impossible. (Re-check)

Moreover, there's also that country somewhere who was known for the behind the scene sorcery attacks ten years ago.

"Speaking of which, regarding, the junior sorcerers employed by King Ferrum, they're in jail but I can free them and use them as per my discretion right?" (Almis)

"Well, yes, since administering justice is one of your jobs. I think that's the reason King Rosyth left them there in the first place."

I see. That's King Rosyth for you. Splendid.

"As for maintaining public order and territorial defense, we will be helping you for the meantime." (Bartolo)

"Would that be alright?" (Almis)

"It's an order direct from King Rosyth. The king is not stupid enough to completely leave behind the defense of a territory bordering King Domorugal's domains to someone who doesn't have territorial management experience except that of a small village." (Bartolo)

Ah, right. We border King Domorugal's territory.

"But don't worry much. It would be fine, really. King Domorugal is busy fighting a war with King Girubetto and King Fardam after all. He won't have the leeway to look south." (Bartolo)

Is it really alright?

You'd get attacked if you get careless you know.

"Please tell me more about my judicial duties. What laws do I have to base my judgements on?" (Almis)

"Basically, it depends upon your discretion. Well, murders and virgin rape typically warrant the death penalty of course. Robbery and general rape warrant the amputation of the right arm. Petty theft warrants caning or whipping. That's pretty much how conventional judicial wisdom goes." (Bartolo)

In short, it's customary/common law huh.

In the first place, without a proper/dominant system of writing, there's probably no use writing down the laws.

"Then let's just leave the judgements to the village chiefs' opinions and discretion." (Almis)

I can now somewhat understand the things I need to do.

With this I can somewhat get by. (Re-do これなら俺でもなんとなかなりそうだ)

“For the meantime, I think we should start a population census.” (Almis)

“What do we do specifically?” (Someone)

“We record in writing the sex, age, and occupation/industry of all the people within our territory.” (Almis)

There’s not a lot of people who has a good command of the Cretian language. Inevitably, because of this, there won’t be something like family registers and such. Therefore, the village chief, which is the person who knows the village the most, becomes in charge of the tax collection and governance in behalf of his lord. It’s become a system like that. But this becomes the stage for tax evasion, corruption, and acting as one pleases. Surely lots of taxes are wasted and unaccounted for because of this.

I would like to address this one way or another.

“But the people who can freely write in Cretian, including Leader and Tetra, aren’t even more than ten people. I don’t think this would work.”

“Don’t worry about that. We’ll make the forms beforehand. You’ll only have to write the numbers in them.” (Almis)

That way, tallying the results would also be much easier.

“The forms would be handwritten? That would be too bothersome I think.”

“I’ve also thought about that. I think I have a solution and it shouldn’t be too hard.” (Almis)

We would be able to prepare them in large quantities by printing them, that is by Woodblock Printing.

“You’ve thought of a great idea huh. Can we also do it in my territory?” (Bartolo)

“There no particular problem with that. It would cost you though. Don’t forget the cost of the paper too.” (Almis)

“My territory probably has around 6000 to 7000 people though. How much paper would that take?” (Bartolo)

“Let’s see…A sheet could have twenty people’s data recorded in them so you would probably need three hundred to three hundred fifty sheets of paper. A sheet of paper would cost around 10 bronze coins so that would be around 3500 bronze coins.” (Almis)

Bartolo held his head with his two hands as he heard my answer.

“You calculate fast huh. 3500 bronze coins huh? How much would that be if I paid with wheat? I’ve never used bronze coins so I don’t know.” (Bartolo)

“I don’t have experience buying wheat with bronze coins so I don’t now but if with salt against bronze coins, that would be around 21000 didals (350 kilos).” (Almis)

Bartolo grimaced as I said so.

“That’s pretty expensive huh. Make it cheaper, come on.” (Bartolo)

“Well, it’s pretty hard on us too you know. But since we’re fellows after all I’ll cut down the price by twenty percent.” (Almis)

For now, it’s become that we’ll trade paper with wheat. With this we’ll be able to secure our food provisions.

“Then the next order of business would be the tax rate. The Ars territory fell into ruin because of King Ferrum’s reign therefore I think we should lower the tax rate.” (Almis)

At the same time, this is also a bid for popularity with the people. I’m a newcomer after all.

“However, if we lower the tax rate too much we won’t have income. Moderation is needed. So, what would be the prevailing reasonable tax rate?” (Probably Almis)

“Let’s see. There’s lot of patterns that influence the tax rate after all. If it’s payment in kind (PIK), sixty percent would be expected. However, they can also pay thirty percent of that in the form of labor.” (Bartolo)

According to Bartolo, in PIK, they could pay in wheat, cloth, or a specialty product like when blacksmiths pay with swords and spears.

“Then let’s go with a PIK only system. The tax rate would be… maybe 40%. Preferably with wheat.” (Almis)

“The reasoning is…?” Tetra asked.

“There is a need for desolated farmlands to recover. Therefore, there is no leeway to round people up for labor. The only thing we can do is to let them pursue agriculture. King Ferrum considerably strengthened the defenses on the border with King De Morgal so there won’t be any plans for some special kind of construction.” (Almis)

“Then how about the manufacture of paper and the repair and construction of defense facilities burned in the recent war?” (Tetra)

“We will go with employing people. We will pay grain as a salary.” (Almis)

There’s probably a lot of people who can participate with that kind of special income. Especially widows who lost husbands and sons in the war. We can let them manufacture paper. You don’t use energy to the extent of farming in paper making after all. Instead of the somewhat difficult farming, papermaking, with a reliable income, would probably be more convenient for the women.

Besides, I plan to introduce the thousand-tooth thresher. If the widows became paper manufacturers, then the effects of introducing the thresher would be lessened.

“Alright, then that seems to be it for domestic affairs. Of the greatest importance is the Crop Rotation System. This needs to be widely introduced to our territory.” (Almis)

Well, for the meantime this will do for the crop rotation system. It's not something you can easily change or implement after all.

"Then how should we gather the taxes?" (Almis)

"The village chief will collect them from the villagers then we will collect from the village chiefs. Should they work illegally or embezzle tax proceeds, then they would be taken care of as per the feudal lords' jurisdictions." (Tetra)

"That's a great idea huh." (Almis)

We need to dispatch bureaucrat-cum-soldiers to every village. That is exactly the opinion I wanted to impart. With that system, the village chiefs would direct the villagers. Meanwhile, the taxes would be collected by the bureaucrat-cum-soldiers. I can trust them after all if they were my comrades. They most probably can't be bought/bribed as well. With this we can also centralize power. Hitting two birds with one stone. That's my Tetra. She's a genius ain't she.

Next would be the martial affairs.

"What do we… What should we do about soldiers?" (Ron)

Ron…It's fine if you don't use polite speech you're not used too, you know. Actually, it's kind of lonely that you're using polite speech. (TL Note: This line is not in parentheses so I don't know if Almis said this out loud but he probably did considering Ron's response.)

"Uh…No…Well, Leader has become the patriarch of a powerful clan you see. So, I figured distinction should become important. I can't stand it when people make light of our leader because we don't speak polite speech." (Ron)

"…You've thought about that much…" (Almis) (TL Note: Almis is touched/moved here. Doesn't translate well from Japanese)

People grow huh. (TL Note: Again…does not translate well)

I'm a little touched.

Well, there's some truth in what Ron said. But it's not like our relationships would suddenly change because of using polite speech.

"Then the answer to the previous question is?"

"Ah, Sorry. I was moved a little. Hmm. Soldiers, huh. For the meantime, we should confirm the number of soldiers we have."

First is everyone from the village – 30 people. Everyone is equipped with iron forged weapons. Skill and morale is extraordinarily high. Next are the "We love Tetra" troops (Tetra Daisuki Tai) commanded by Bolus, 40 people all with bronze equipment.

These are my present forces, 70 people in total.

We can add Bartolo's forces which would be a hundred. Around ten possess iron equipment while the rest have bronze equipment. Morale and skill are unknown. The only thing I know is that Bartolo's forces faced King Ferrum's army head on so you can probably count on their skills.

They will fight with us for the meantime.

We also have forces loaned to us by King Rosyth, one hundred soldiers all bronze equipped. Although you can't say their skills and morale are high, you can't say they're low either. The King would be paying for their expenses.

This means that should King De Morgal attack us we would immediately be able to face them with 270 soldiers. How would we fare with this?

"How much is King De Morgal's total martial power?" (Almis)

"Around 10,000 men strong. He brings out that much when he slugs it out with King Gillbed and King Fardam. Should all the powerful clans in the kingdom under King Rosyth unite, we should be fielding around 5,000 soldiers. However, in reality, we would only be fielding around 3,000. But be at ease. King De Morgal is always at war with King Gillbed and King Fardam. Therefore, 10,000 men marching against us would be highly unlikely. It would be 3,000 at

most.” (Bartolo)

I see. That means we should have enough to face them evenly. If we could stall them for time…

3,000 against 270…that’s somewhat…

“At the very least, I want 500 soldiers. Meaning we would need 230 new soldiers.” (Almis)

“Would we turn to conscription as expected?” (Tetra)

I answer Tetra’s question.

“Hmmm. I don’t like conscription you see.” (Almis)

Conscripts have bad efficiency. You would have to pull people who don’t want to go to war forcibly somewhere plus you’d have to give them equipment. Plus it’s because of forcefully siphoning the labor force to the army that tax yields go down.

They would only be useful after training them for a long time but by then their term of service would have ended. They would then come back to neglected desolated fields and the vicious cycle begins again.

You would give them guns, and by pulling the trigger, let them kill people. Furthermore, the concept of self-determination would have to permeate society and every citizen would have to be seriously thinking about national defense. It may be possible in the modern era, but doing it at this civilization level is a long shot. (TL Note: Unsure – Too Complex)

You would need strict training in the hoplite corps after all. The people of the Ars Clan Territory would find any leader good so long as the taxes go down anyway.

Therefore, conscription is out of the question.

In times of crises it might be fine, but peaceful times wouldn’t need that much soldiers anyway.

“Conscripts would have too much of a difference in skill and morale with us. In the worst case, they might just become dead weight. Our role is containment, right? Therefore, I believe what we need would be quality as opposed to quantity.” (Almis)

“Hmm. For an amateur, you sure do know your stuff huh.” (Bartolo)

I got praised by Bartolo.

What, I’m not happy at all even if I’m praised by this guy you know! (TL Note: Tsun tsun)

“Alright, it’s decided! It would cost us cash but let’s recruit regulars.” (Almis)

“Umm. Older brother, should we announce the recruitment when we collect the taxes?”

“Ah, let’s go with that.” (Almis)

Posting the announcement or erecting a sign would probably be useless. There probably isn’t anyone who would be able to read them anyway.

“Nee. Almis-san. Aren’t you forgetting something important?” (Gram)

“Something important?” (Almis)

“It’s archers. ARCHERS. When you speak of defensive battles, you gotta have archers, right?” (Gram)

Gram expressed with great emphasis.

Well, it’s not like I forgot about archers but…

“Archers are expensive, you see. You would need advanced skills. We will be increasing them but….” (Almis)

In the Aldnea Peninsula, Hoplites would be the deciding factor in battle.

“Cavalry! Cavalry…Cavalry would be necessary, right older brother?”

“Horses are expensive too you know? Besides, cow and horse tilling would be the priority anyway.” (Almis)

We won’t be able to gather much anyway. What can ten cavalrymen do as a cavalry division? At the very least we need a hundred to function properly so why bother. My Japanese sense tells me that it’ll then become “Let’s gather a hundred light vehicles!” or something like that.

“Next, we would need to mass produce black powder.”

It can’t be made easily after all. A lot of things will happen so making it can’t be helped.

“That powder is amazing huh. Teach me how to make it too.” (Bartolo)

“It would be a problem if the technique to make it gets leaked so that’s the only thing I can’t tell you. Besides, it’s not something you can prepare in large quantities plus the efficacy varies.” (Re-do, too complicated)

It was a good thing the enemy was in close formation when we used it in the defensive battle. Otherwise, the gunpowder stocks wouldn’t have been enough. It was a surprise rear attack, on the other hand, when we used it to defeat King Ferrum therefore ensuring success.

It’s particularly effective when used against an enemy for the first time. But after that, the enemy would probably prepare countermeasures. Relying on gunpowder too much would be bad.

You need large quantities of the ingredients to make gunpowder. You can get countless amount of sulfur from volcanoes, you can also produce large quantities of charcoal, and create a reliable method of producing large quantities of saltpeter.

However, you can’t easily make that much spears with ignition magic attached. For that, you need a substance called magic stones of good quality to manufacture. A magic stone refers to stones

suitable for sorcery among charm stones. It was named by Tetra.

These stones may be cheap but there aren't a lot of them either. People think they're trash so nobody mines them.

Therefore, collecting them in large quantities would take special expenses which for some reason could go high. It's a troublesome thing that could cost something much more than what the magic stone could be worth. (Re-do, too complex.)

If it can't explode, then the gunpowder would useless. On the other hand, if we use ignition cords then it you would have to consider the large possibility of it not exploding, making it very unreliable.

"Is that so? Fine. When the day that you could mass produce it comes, then please by all means, teach the method to me." Bartolo readily withdrew.

"In exchange, please teach me how to manufacture paper." (Bartolo)

"That I would be teaching King Rosyth so please be at ease." (Almis)

As expected, it has become difficult to keep secrets when you become a subordinate.

"Next would be sorcery, yes? We need to set-up barriers."

The reason I and everyone almost died from starvation and the reason Tetra's parents died was the famine caused by a curse.

I understand that we should invest forces on the matter if you think about it clearly.

"I heard a huge country from the north applied the curse." (Almis)

"Yeah. It's the Rozel Kingdom, right? It's the country that dominates the whole northern part of the Adernia Peninsula."

King Rozel huh? Alright, I'll remember the name.

“King Ferrum did not put great importance on putting up barriers so the Famine happened, right? If I remember correctly, King Ferrum has 9 high-level Sorcerers. All of them never participated in the construction of barriers. I guess it would still not be enough even if I release the sorcerers in jail and assign them to the task.” (Almis)

“They’re not enough huh. However, in the Rosyth Kingdom, we have the national barrier put up by Julia-sama. Therefore, at the minimum, we need to assign one high-level sorcerer for the job.”

One person minimum?

Hmmm…Tetra or Soyon or Ruru? Which one should I pick?

“I heard that a young sorcerer’s soul would be more suitable for soul-riding because they’re more energetic. Therefore you should conserve those three.”

But then I won’t have any high-class sorcerer left?

“Sir Almis, I think I know someone suitable for the role.” Said Bolus who was all but silent from the beginning.

What could it be?

“The sorceress who engraved the sacred characters on Madame Tetra’s back. The old woman should have been able to soul-ride a long time ago. Barrier construction and age should be unrelated, I believe. Therefore, why don’t we try to leave it to the old sorceress?” (Bolus)

“That’s a great idea.” (Almis)

Alright, let’s do that.

Though I feel bad making the elderly work.

“Umm…doesn’t that mean we won’t have anything to do?” Soyon asked as she raised her hand.

“No…no…I have lots of things I’ll have to do for you guys.” (Almis)

First, Sorcery training for the other sorcerers. Also, the manufacture of spear fuses.

Since I'll be having Tetra personally assisting me, I'll make Soyon and Ruru compensate in those fields.

"In other words, nothing's changed huh." Said Ruru.

Well, it's just like that I guess.

"After that, I want to increase the variety of animals we can use for Soul-riding. Yes, I'd like a dog for that after all. And then an owl or a bat for night-time reconnaissance." (Almis)

"And how do we acquire them?"

"For the meantime, I'll try and ask the Cretians. That country is always at war the whole year so they should probably be knowledgable"

That night.

"Nee. Almis." (Tetra)

"Hmm?? What is ihmmmmm!!" (Almis)

My lips got covered.

Tetra looks at me with moist eyes.

"Aren't you forgetting the most important duty of a lord?" (TL Note: Oh yeah! Cue Matt Hardy Theme Song)

"Oh yes. I seem to have forgotten." (TL Note: Seriously, who forgets the most important meal of the day?)

I grabbed Tetra's shoulders, held her closer to me, and stole a kiss from her lips.

Just like that I pushed her down. (°ʖ°)

you.” I said as I teasingly used my fingers on her.

I apologize for the confusion regarding the names. I just transliterated them and did not cross-reference the previous works and consult google-sama in my bid to binge. I’ll revert to the names used by the previous translator, however, I’m gonna make a few minor changes based on my consultation with google-sama.

It’s hard translating katakana names, you see. They are either too intuitive, like Karisha which is just Graecia in English but with a K, or just plain crazy, like Rosaizu for Rosaith. But it turns out, google sama and ja.wiki-chan has some answers though I don’t know how accurate they’ll be. I’ll try them out here so you can have a feel for them. I’ve updated the previous post too. I’ll list them down at another post along with justifications.

I know some of you are gonna shudder when things you’re used to are changed. But what the hell, why not try. Might be better. Might be worse. I’m not a professional anyway. I’ve also probably missed some terms. I’ve never checked them comprehensively too. If anyone could be bothered enough, check them. Haha.

Also NSFW. Probably. (͡° ͜ʖ ͡°)

“Ahhnn…nnnn..Ahnn…There…Ah…Aaahh…Good…”

Tetra said in a sexy voice.

I add strength to my movements.

“Aahh…nnahh…That’s….too…strong…hya!”

Tetra said in an agitated voice.

She can barely breathe as she tries to look at me from her back with

her moist, sexy eyes.

I can't believe the usually cool Tetra would be capable of such passion and emotion.

I increase further the strength that leaves my fingertips.

"Hyaa…DAME…nnnn! Aaahh, kkuhha!"

I then lighten my movements.

"Ahh…harder…stronger!..hyaa!"

I trace Tetra's body on top of her clothes with my finger. Surprised by the sensation, Tetra's body shakes in pleasure.

"You don't have to push yourself you know? Let's get this over quickly." I said to Tetra as my fingers crawled over her body. (°ʖ°)

Tetra's body shook in pleasure.

"….Please don't tease me…" said Tetra in a sweet voice as she faced me.

But just now…

"Didn't you ask me to stop?"

"…Bully…nnnfwaa…nnn…don't but continue…"

I don't get it.

"Then what should I do?"

"Aa…Caress me harder…"

"Does it hurt?"

Then Tetra said as her cheeks blushed:

"Aa…it feels better when it hurts…"

This Girl…it can't be helped huh?

I grinned as I slowly put strength in my movements.

“Hiyaa!….nnkuh…dame!..haaa….fuhaa……”

You just said “don’t” right now huh?

“Kafuu….Don’t stop!..more!”

“What a willful little girl. Really. Since you want it, I’ll give it to

Tetra convulsed and said with an agitated voice:

“Pl….Please! There!!! My…ahh! Caress me there!”

I don’t get it. If only she’d tell me once clearly.

I take a hard look at Tetra.

She looks so agitated. She’s breathing roughly too. If I continue to tease her like this, surely she’d be too pitiful. I guess it’s no use. Let’s just do as she wants!

“Aah! It came!” (ﾟ3ﾟ) “Ttha…ffuahh!… hhea…nnkuuaaa…nn… nnoo more! Aaaaaaaahhhhh!”

Tetra’s body shook violently, her mouth half-open as she tried to gasp for air. Her saliva drips from her lips as she lay on the bed exhausted.

Then the door opened just at the same time.

“What the hell are you two doing so early in the morning!!! Hn..wa. What?” (Soyon)

“What’s wrong?” I asked the bewildered Soyon who just entered the room as I separate my hands from Tetra’s shoulders.

“Ummm…What were you doing?” (Soyon)

“Oh! Just a massage. We went to get the census done yesterday right? Just that we felt a little strained after that so we thought we’d help loosen each other up.”

It's just the two of us taking turns massaging each other.

Of course, the results were well worth the trouble. We determined the population numbered around 32,423. With these, we should be able to collect taxes properly.

Come to think of it we agreed to conduct the census for Bartolo too. What a pain.

"So…What do you need Soyon?" (Almis)

Soyon's face turned bright red.

"Ah!…No!…I misunderstood…. Ah…. No!… A letter from King Rosyth came!" Soyon said as she passed me the wood strips.

What could this be about?

"What did the letter say?" (Soyon)

"Well, to summarize: 'Hurry up teach me the paper manufacturing method already!' is written." (Almis)

It's not like I could just teach it like that even though I've become a retainer. It should depend on the compensation after all.

"Tetra, Let's go." (Almis)

"Nooo…I want moar." Tetra said in a sweet voice after I shook her awake.

What is this girl saying?

I still haven't even gotten my turn yet.

"….You tease…Haa…" (Tetra)

Tetra arose while stretching her neck left to right. Bone cracking sounds went off as she stretched her body.

Then Tetra, who returned to her usual cold expression, turned to me and said:

“Okay, let’s go.” (TL Note: Old Counter Strike sound bite just popped in my head, idk why.)

“Wipe off your drool before that.” (Almis)

Tetra turned bright red as she wiped off the drool on her lips.

TL Note: Well, Cliché but close enough to NSFW Eh? Erotic Sounds are hard to translate

---

“Alright, as I have requested in the letter, please proceed in teaching how to make paper.” (Rosyth)

“Understood. But can you please promise me one thing?”

“What is it?”

I say the condition.”

“First, as compensation, please give me wheat. Furthermore, can you promise me to not produce large quantities of paper immediately?”

I still look forward to making paper as the primary source of income for the Ars Territory since I reduced the tax rates for wheat after all.

Therefore, a large supply of paper in the market pushing down the price would not be good.

“I see..I understand your circumstances. I’ll postpone operations for a year.” (Rosyth)

If possible two years, though I actually wanted three years reprieve. Can’t be helped.

I wrote the steps for paper manufacturing method on a piece of paper and handed it over to King Rosyth. He received it with

satisfaction.

“By the way, do you know how to make iron?” (Rosyth)

“Well, if you say I can, I might be able to but only in principle I guess.” (Almis)

King Rosyth leaned forward excitedly. “TEACH ME!”

Well, I did learn about deoxidizing iron oxides but that was in science experiments in middle school.

It was more or less five so I could understand. (TL Note: I don’t understand what he means by five. 一応五だったし、理解はしてるよ。)

I think there’s no one who doesn’t know what a deoxidation reaction is. That is if they went through compulsory education. Besides, we also briefly touched on the subject in history so I can somewhat understand it.

“Yes, but I only have second-hand knowledge on the matter so it’s not like I can manufacture iron with certainty. Please take that into account. Also, I want more wheat as compensation.” (Almis)

“There’s no problem. However, the wheat will come after my forges can produce iron goods.” (Almis)

Well, it’s only natural. By all means, you’d want the smiths to succeed in making iron goods.

“Yes, but first we need to prepare charcoal and iron ore.”

Iron ores are made up of iron oxide. You use the charcoal in the smelting process to isolate the iron in the ore.

“Also, Iron working would need high temperatures.”

“I told you to teach me the method.”

What an impatient fellow.

“We would also need to use a tool called a ‘bellow.’ It should be easy to make, probably.” (TL Note: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bellows)

I teach King Rosyth how to make bellows. It’s kind of difficult explaining verbally, huh.

After this you’ll have a spongy ball of molten iron and charcoal residue. You’ll then need to hammer out the impurities from this spongy substance. At the very least, you’ll be able to make iron from this. This is the most I know on the matter.

I’m not a smelting specialist after all. We didn’t learn that much in school after all. This is the limit of my knowledge. They could make bronze after all, so this explanation should suffice.

“Yes, this is enough. I’ll send the grains upon the iron’s successful manufacture.” (Rosyth)

Alright, with this we’ll get more wheat.

“Then, please teach me how to make fire medicine next.” (Rosyth)

Fire medicine?

Ah! Gunpowder, huh.

“Unfortunately, gunpowder ingredients are currently at their limits. Besides, only I know how to make it. I think that circulating its manufacturing method would be dangerous.” (Almis)

“Does that mean you won’t be able to teach it?” (Rosyth)

“That would be correct.”

King Rosyth lets out a sigh as he heard my reply.

“Then it can’t be helped. Certainly, it would be bothersome should King De Morgal begin to use gunpowder too. For the meantime, I’ll content myself with iron.” (Rosyth)

Thank goodness. Your understanding would clearly save me the

trouble.

“So, are your territorial affairs going smoothly? You border King De Morgal’s Territory you know?”

“Well, it’s passable. I’m still not used to managing territory but I’m getting by thanks to Bartolo-san’s help.” (Almis)

Wait, thinking back, Bartolo hasn’t seem to have done anything, hasn’t he?

“Is that so? Good. Then I shall give advice as well.”

Advice? Advice straight from King Rosyth himself?

“Listen, Pay diligence to your relations with your neighbors. A lot of them do not think highly of lords after all.” (Rosyth)

“Yes, I understand” (Almis)

Managing social relationships is important after all. Like in my wedding, for example, we received lots of well wishes and flattery.

“Did you know that Bartolo’s child was just born?” (Rosyth)

“Yes, I heard.” (Almis)

When Bartolo’s wife was giving birth, I advised him to use hot water to disinfect all the tools and to use alcohol to disinfect their hands. This is to significantly reduce the risk of the child dying from contracting postpartum infections.

“That guy had probably prepared for festivities in advance. You should go. Everyone from your clan should prepare for a present. Yes…I think honey would be a great gift.” (Rosyth)

It’s not like you had to tell me. That was what I intended to do all along. What should we do for the gifts? Certainly, it would be absurd for each of us to bring honey. I need to think about this.

“Also, there’s one more thing I have to tell you.”

“Yes?”

“Be careful of Regal DeBell and the DeBell clan. They consider you as an enemy and a threat to their family. Besides, I hear nothing but bad rumors about the guy.”

The DeBell clan, is it? If I remember correctly, they were the most powerful clan in the Rosyth Kingdom before I got landed. Certainly, there’s little to no difference between the population of my territory and theirs. Sigh, I wanted to have good relations if possible but…

“But please be at ease. I also hate the DeBell clan. Bartolo hates them too. In fact, a third of the powerful clans hate the DeBell clan. Do you get what I mean?” (Rosyth)

It means I should be at the head of the Anti-DeBell faction, huh. Sigh, I hate troublesome things. But it can’t be helped since the hostility comes straight from the other party.

“I’ll think about it.” (Almis)

“It’s not like you have to think about it. I think it’s the natural course of action. Conduct yourself skillfully. I’m expecting great things from you after all.” (Rosyth)

King Rosyth stared at me intently. What’s up with the stare, dude.

“I would live for three years more at most. That’s why I want you see great accomplishments from you as a lord within a year.”

“Accomplishments?”

In one year, huh. Why does this king want accomplishments from me before he dies? Is it to contain the DeBell clan?

Furthermore…

“Subjugating King Ferrum, Manufacturing Iron, and Manufacturing Paper. Normally, they would be more than enough accomplishments. However, considering the circumstances, they are not enough. Do great deeds in the management of your territory. And hold fast your land against King De Morgal. If you accomplish

such…” (Rosyth)

“I understand. I’ll do my utmost.” (Almis)

What could he possibly want to say…

Three months later, I received a letter from King Rosyth. It reads:

“

It seems the iron smelting was a success. Unfortunately, the strength was unusually weak so we couldn’t put it to good use. We did, however, managed to trade them to Cretian smiths for a lot of salt.

Perhaps they thought that if they left it as it is then it would become so that we could make iron, so they thought that before we could make profits on it they should just make the profits on it. (TL Note: Got very confused at the source so I’m only 50% sure on this)

Though you might say its not fit for use, iron is still iron. It is for that reason that the Cretians overlooked the quality.

I will send the wheat immediately. It’s a favor I’ll certainly return so long as I live.

“

“Well, so long as I get the wheat I don’t have any problems.” (Almis)

t's from an ornament we received from a person named 'Regal DeBell.' Since it's an ornament, it's somewhat useless so I disassembled it. A high quality transparent crystal can transmit 99% of magic without sullying magical style. It also helps with fire-based magic. Since the main body of the wand is wooden, it would burn should you use fire magic. But if you attach the crystal then the problem would be solved since it doesn't burn. Plus, it looks cooler this way." (Tetra)

"Hey…what'cha doin?" (Almis)

"I'm making a wand" (Tetra)

A Wand? Tetra is putting together parts-like objects to make something. She's putting several disks the size of an adult's wrist on one thin rod. The disks were lined with geometrical patterns. Crystals were embedded on their tips. (TL Note: He actually said the size of an adult's arm, but it should probably mean the circumference of the wrist)

"Teach me about it. (Almis)

"Alright" (Tetra)

Tetra raises her arms and makes her small white palms face me. My hair then sways lightly. She had cast wind magic.

"High-level sorcerers around my level can use magic without magic squares. However,…" As she said this, Tetra takes out a piece of paper and begins drawing a magic square. She then faces me just like before. This time, the geometric patterns shine brightly and a stronger wind blows towards me.

"If you use a magic square, the efficacy of the magic invocation becomes better. And since you can only use magical power that you yourself have, using a magic square can make you use magic indefinitely." (Tetra)(TL Note: It's not making sense to me so I

kinda just winged it. 魔力は自分が持っている物を使うから魔法陣は永遠に使える)

I see. Even though I'm not a magician, I was paying attention only to using magic, but there are also advantages like that, huh?

"But, there's one problem. Since a magic square is something fixed, you can only use the same amount of power and the same kind of magic. Thus, it's not really practical in battle. Plus, the amount of information you can embed in a paper-based magic square is limited." (Tetra)

Certainly. It's not applicable for battle. What makes magic appealing after all is that you can vary your approach against the enemy. It's no different from just throwing spears against the enemy if you can only use one type of magic. It's not something you carry in large quantities.

According to Tetra, the strength of the magic depends upon the size of the magic square. Therefore, you'd need quite a large square just to be able to hurt a person. The size would make it totally useless.

"That's why I'm carving up a magic square on a round wooden board (disk). I need to carefully embed information on the magic squares one by one. And when you bind together several disks…" (Tetra)

Tetra points a finished wand at me. It shines brightly and thereafter blows an even stronger wind. It has quite the power.

"Furthermore, if you rotate the connection like this, you can now use a completely different type of magic." (Tetra)

Tetra then rotates several disks. She points upwards then a flame rages from the wand.

"But then what would you do about the power?" (Almis)

The disks are quite smaller than the paper magic squares. Saying you'll put together more and more is somewhat…

"That won't be a problem."

Tetra confidently declares. (TL Note: I think the author typo'd here. Him: 自身有り気 vs Me: 自信有り気 if somebody knows. Tell me in the comments.)

"Listen here, using the previous magic square, the amount of information embedded is represented by the quadratic/square formed by the X (horizontal) axis and the Y (vertical) axis. Using this wand, however, you add a third Z (height) axis. Therefore the amount of information embedded would turn cubic! (Tetra)

(TL Note: Please don't hate on me math majors. I know that the Z axis is not the "height" axis. *cry*)

You…when the hell did you get so smart?

"So, what about the crystal?" (Almis)

"I

I see. I completely don't understand. Yes. Yes.

Regal, huh. I'm sorry but my wife just went and disassembled your gift.

"By the way, Almis. You seem to have something on your mind? Is there anything wrong?" (Tetra)

"It's just that Bartolo's wife had recently given birth, right? I don't know what kind of gift I should bring for the birth celebrations."

I asked Bartolo and he said you'd typically give booze. Of course, the sponsor would naturally bring out liquor. But participants are encouraged to bring more so everyone could drink and get drunk, he said. Now that I think of it, a lot of the different clans each brought some kind of liquor when we held our wedding. I guess the next logical thing would be to bring something like an ornament, or a charm, or some high-class clothing or something for the child to use.

"Wouldn't honey be fine? Even King Rosyth said so. Look, you can't bring that much at the party right?" (Tetra)

“Certainly…Hmmm…paper would….paper would be strange for a gift, no? I guess I should stop worrying and just bring some liquor or maybe food, yes?” (Almis)

“But can you prepare something delicious for them?” (Tetra)

Well, the bread that we make is very delicious. But how would they read bringing bread as a gift? It’s a staple food, you know. Nevertheless, it’s surely more delicious than what Bartolo could prepare.

Ahh. This is not working. My honor would shatter at this rate.

Even if Bartolo brought out even the most basic food and ingredients, it should still be a no-go. Then I guess, it really should be the liquor, huh.

“Did you come up with anything?” (Tetra)

“Well. I guess I’ll make some spirits (distilled alcohol).” (Almis)

The alcohol content of this world’s liquor is unusually low. When you speak of wines, then it’s basically grape juice infused with a little alcohol. Rather than for getting drunk, they usually treat it as hydration or something to make hard water on the Adernia peninsula easier to drink. (TL Note: Alcohol DE-hydrates you.)

It’s also expensive but only 3% alcohol. Furthermore, it can go higher up to 5% but the highest it can go is only 10%. I only measure it by my taste, by the way.

Spirits have around 40% alcohol so it should certainly be well-received. As for wine, we have those stocked by King Ferrum and those we made in the village.

Then I can make enough spirits to serve the banquet.

There’s no time for it to mature so I can’t guarantee it would taste good but it won’t matter anyway since the wine in the Adernia Peninusla doesn’t taste good from the very beginning. I can only compensate for the taste with the higher alcohol content. Everybody likes booze that can get you drunk over those that taste

good anyway. I should be able to hit the bullseye by mixing the spirits with grape juice.

It's been around six months since Bartolo's child was born. We're in the fifth month of the year now (TL Note: I don't know how to name the month (no name) nor how many months are there in a year in this world.)

Therefore, I still have a month before the big day.

The process for making spirits is simple. I should just reproduce the distillation of the water-ethanol mixture experiment I did when I was in middle school.

It's just that there's one problem.

"I need some special equipment, huh." (Almis)

"Then isn't it hopeless?" (Tetra)

"No. We should be fine. I can just make it."

Even though I can't make a flask, I can just use some bronze container as a substitute. Shall I ask help from the blacksmiths?

"But, milord, the swords and spears for the tax would be…" (Blacksmith)

"You can make it later. I'll give you a two-month extension. Don't worry, I'll properly buy pay for the Bronze flask with some wheat." (Almis)

The blacksmiths became a little surprised as they heard my answer.

"…You…you'll pay for the bronze flask, milord?"

"Yes. It's not a tax after all. Except in cases of war, calamity, or when there's an emergency need for goods, I won't be taking special taxes."

They'll be more motivated in making the flask should it be for selling and not for taxation.

Blacksmiths are precious personnel. I won't be pressuring them or screwing them over.

Besides, I have enough stocks from those I received from King Rosyth and Bartolo. As for foreign goods, we'll earn them through trading paper and honey.

Smiles float in the faces of the blacksmiths as they say "We'll certainly do our best" and bid their exit.

"Hey, Almis." (Tetra)

"Hmm? What is it?" (Almis)

"Would we have enough equipment for our new recruits?" (Tetra)

"Aren't they enough? What's costing us is the recruitment process which will take more time to complete. While we don't have reserves, each one is guaranteed a gear."

We also have the gear confiscated from King Ferrum's army and the gear he kept in storage, after all. It's kind of thanks to King Ferrum that we're swimming in gear.

Besides, the kind of gear soldiers use in the Adernia Peninsula is basically the portable-type. So you can just exchange or swap away the gear that's become excessively awful.

"At the very least, I'd want to collect nothing less than bronze equipment. Wooden shields are too much after all." (Almis)

A lot of wooden shield wielding soldiers comically died from Gram's arrows from the last battle. Wooden shields can't defend from high-efficiency arrows.

"As for the armor, I'd prefer leather-based ones." (Unsure, probably Almis)

"Bronze armor is heavy, after all. Also, what's more important in battles is maneuverability." (Probably Tetra)

You also need considerable strength when performing hoplite

assaults. As expected, Leather armor would be desirable.

Well, our body strength is considerably higher since we are under the influence of my divine protection so we could still probably have some leeway when using bronze gear.

Come to think of it, how far does my divine protection extend? Although Julia said something about it being related to loyalty. Something around that value of that, huh?

At the very least, the lot from King Ferrum's kingdom don't hold any shred of loyalty to me. I could say the same for the refugees. It's generally the kids (though they aren't kids anymore now) I saved a long time ago who's receiving the influence of my divine protection.

Wasn't the first time my divine protection manifested when I saved Roswald? The kids then were still normal. This means that it began changing gradually around the time when we were around 10 to 14 years old. Therefore, at the very least, the divine protection's influence should take at the minimum 4 years to take effect on someone. No, the children who's always been together with me and the people from the Ars Clan should be different.

If you think about it… No… this shouldn't work. I shouldn't rely on divine protection. It's a complicated matter, huh.

However, my physical ability right now is certainly much different than from when I was in the village. This means the hurdle on the divine protection affecting my physical ability and the hurdle on the divine protection spreading to everyone are different, right?

Besides, I don't even know when the Ars Clan began to slowly gain loyalty to me. (TL Note: Unsure, I just inferred.)

"Almis? Are you still with me?" (Tetra)

"Ah! Sorry, sorry. I'm alive and kicking. I was just thinking, is all." (Almis)

I guess it's useless overthinking it. I don't understand it yet, after all.

Chapter 43

Meanwhile, the chief's face turns pale.

The new lord is a reasonable man.

That's how the people of the Ars Territory see their new ruler.

At present, there's no military conscription. If you do labor, he'll compensate with a wage. Taxes are surprisingly low. Furthermore, he gave people who normally can't do agriculture like widows a special job, that of making paper.

'Yes. It's not a tax after all. Except in cases of war, calamity, or when there's an emergency need for goods, I won't be taking special taxes.' These words he said to the surprised blacksmiths have spread across the Ars territory in the blink of an eye.

King Ferrum was notorious for frequently requisitioning goods while King Ragou Ars was known for asking for special taxes.

In contrast, Lord Almis doesn't do any of those.

The people are embracing him with great expectation.

At the same time, however, they also see him as someone who does strange things at times.

It's about the official post called the Tax Collector.

When you speak of the Tax Collectors, they would refer to the vassals that the current lord brought from the forest. You can also call them as knights.

They were unusually excellent in the martial arts and all of them could read, write, and calculate. All of them were dispatched to each village at the same time as the new lord was inaugurated.

Furthermore, they investigated the size of all the agricultural lands in each village and recorded them and their owners in paper.

To the people of the Ars Territory, they can only see this as eccentric behavior. They couldn't understand what's the point of doing them.

The Tax Collectors also said this:

"Listen well people, from here on out, we will be the ones who would come to collect the taxes. The village chief is still the one responsible for gathering the village's taxes so nothing much will change but it would be us who would come to get them. Please be at ease. However, we will never condone tax evasion or embezzlement."

For the village chiefs, this should mean that they would save time. Although they're doubting why they should accede to this way, they nevertheless agreed.

It will be in the sixth month when we will actually begin to collect the taxes. (TL Note: I don't get it so I winged it.)

"Hey, this isn't enough, you know? Is this really everything?" Ron asks as he glares at the village chief.

The village chief answers ingratiatingly. "Yes sir. That is everything. Do you have reason to believe that it's not enough, sir?"

"Yes. There's a large discrepancy between what you gave me and this area's projected harvest. We haven't heard anything about crop failure here." (Ron)

The projected harvest is amount of harvest derived from the analysis of the area's normal harvest as surveyed from the population, the size of the land, and the current year's weather. Even if the projection's off, barring exceptional disasters, there shouldn't be that much of a difference with the actual harvest.

Therefore, the village chief is suspect to embezzlement.

"Come, we'll investigate." Ron commands as he and Soyon proceed together to the village chief's house, shaking off the chief's repose.

The two carefully observe the village chief's house.

It was not a pit house, perhaps a reflection of the chief's social status. It's properly built with flooring.

"Hmm?"

Ron notices something out of place. He stabs the floor with the hilt of a sword. It somehow made a sound different to how it should be.

Ron and Soyon looks at each other.

Ron raises the sword and swings down towards the floor. The sword strikes the floor and makes a fissure. The duo put their hands through the crevice and pulled with just the two of them.

The floor makes a creaking sound as it turns over. Underneath is a wide space wherein a large amount of wheat is hidden.

"What is this?" (Ron)

"Umm…This is…" The village chief hesitates to say.

Ron speaks as he surveyed the wheat with cold eyes:

"This is embezzlement. It is a felony. About five lashes, if I recall correctly." (Ron)

The village chief bends his knees and lowers his head deeply.

"Pl…Please!! I will give the Sir a third….No! Two-thirds of everything here! So…please!" (Chief)

"Don't screw with me!!" (Ron)

Ron draws his sword and swings it.

The chief's walking stick falls to the ground. His face turns ghastly pale. (TL Note: This line made me crazy. It turns out the author alluded to a riddle here. Won't translate it because it doesn't translate well but I can say with certainty that this is the literal meaning.)

“Bribery. I believe that’s also five lashes.” (Ron)

“Please have mercy!” (Chief)

“Tell that to the lord.” (Ron)

Ron and Soyon leaves after making the villagers load the wheat into the horse cart.

“This is the 12th case. Embezzlement and bribery are too rampant!” (Ron)

“There are a lot of village chiefs embezzling taxes. That’s why there’s a phenomenon that even if you slap on high taxes, you won’t be able to gather much.”

Yal says after they got together on the way. (Check) He’s still learning how to read and write so he’s accompanied by an assistant. He has also finished his rounds and is on the way back to Almis’ place.

“But Ron was so cool, you know.” (Soyon)

“Really? I practiced it you know. Leader is kind after all so I thought that we should go with a strict image.”

‘This flirting Baka-couple’ Yal can’t help but think as he smiles faintly looking at the couple.

“By the way, aren’t the horses insufficient? Not for the Knights, but for the stuff like tax collection, and land plowing. Don’t you think it’s better if we buy more?”

“Leader is thinking about buying more horses, you know? I heard he’s currently negotiating with the Cretian Merchant. “

“I see. But what do we do about the cost? Can we really buy horses with just paper?”

We’re currently in the process of manufacturing large quantities of paper, gathering together and employing widows and children in

the Ars Territory. Having said that, there are also limits on the number of trees we can turn into paper.

As expected, can we really get and maintain that much horses?

“After we deliver these to the mansion’s storehouse, the next rounds would be the villages up north, huh. Since they’re kind of far, we’ll probably have to stay the night there. Sigh.”

“Well, we’ll be free soon after we finish the job so let’s just do our best for now. The most troubled among us now would be those two people after all.”

King Ferrum’s Old Palace.

It has become Almis and Tetra’s love nest. Presently, however, that love nest has disappeared and transformed into hell.

“The Hell! This is too much! This is just the quarter, huh…”

“Certainly, the present report mentioned only a quarter. More would probably be come later.”

“I know, I know. I know already so please don’t say it anymore.”

We’re firmly collecting the taxes after we made the family registers/census. I now see, this much is expected. I just never thought that this “as expected” would become so troublesome.

I was thinking why hasn’t anybody else done this before? It’s not that they don’t do it. It’s actually that they couldn’t do it.

“Let’s just ask help from Ron and the others when they come back. This is not something only two people can handle…”

“Agreed. I wonder if everyone will finish soon.”

Everyone is doing their best right now going around the Ars Territory collecting taxes. They’re certainly tired already. I’ll really feel bad for them. But you see….

The two of us are even more exhausted!!

“Haa…We’ll really be doing this every year at this season? At these rate, we’ll die, you know!”

“Don’t worry. By next year, we’ll have 10 people ready for duty. In other words, we’ll be able to add 10 people to the tax collectors. It’ll be easier to do the job then…probably.”

“But the highest we can go is only a hundred people right?…”

The kids I brought together with me number about a hundred people. In other words, the maximum number of bureaucrats would be a hundred people.

Right now, even if we relentlessly recruit even the young girls, we’d only have potentially 70 recruits. We’d only be able to increase the number of people we have 1.5 times.

“I guess we really need to develop human resources.”

“Yeah. It’s necessary. Let’s discuss about it later.

This means the things I need to do have yet again increased by one. Sigh…I’m starting to accumulate stress.

“Hey…can I have a hit?” (Almis) (TL Note: Unsure なあ……ちょっと当たっていいか)

“Hmm? Nnha!” (Tetra)

I pressed my lips on Tetra’s as I pushed her down.

“It’s just to have a break, can I?” (Almis)

“Nnn…Have as much as you want……” (Tetra)

Tetra closes her eyes. I reach out my hand to Tetra’s chest…

“Uhmm…I have a supplemental report, Sir….” (Lulu)

We make eye contact with Lulu. She averts her eyes in a panic then silently places the report on top of the table.

“Uhm…I guess please choose the place better?” declares Lulu as she exits.

……..

Awkward….

What to do…what to do…

“What do we do?” Tetra immediately looks at me and asks.

“Hmmm…I guess I’ll just have it at night. It’s kind of cooled down anyway. Besides…”

I have to quickly digest the new report.

EPUB/PDF generated by https://lnwnepubs.com/

Chapter 43.5

“Hey, Tetra. Can you show me your breasts?” (Almis)

“Hmm? It’s not like you have to ask permission. They’re yours so rub them whenever you feel like it.” (Tetra) (TL Note: Me)

I’m so happy you just told me something amazing. But this time, it’s not about that.

“What’s that?” (Tetra)

“It’s underwear. I made it myself. I just want to check the size.” (Almis)

I put the handmade bra on Tetra’s chest. The size is perfect. I made sure to check the sizes everyday after all. (TL Note: You lucky bastard)

“How is it? How does it feel?” (Almis)

“…It feels…strange. But it doesn’t feel bad.” (Tetra)

“Is that so? Then it’s good.” (Almis)

There is no underwear in the Adernia Peninsula.

While they do wear something like a loincloth, more or less, you really can’t call that underwear.

I get severely bothered, after all. By those shaking breasts.

Well, seeing other people’s breast would be something like eye candy, but it’s my own wife’s breasts after all…. So, they’re…good fortune? Well…Tetra’s breasts are about average, anyway.

“If you wear this, then your breasts won’t hang.” (Almis)

“Really? How many do you have?” (Tetra)

“For the meantime, I have one prototype but if you want I’ll make as many as you want.” (Almis)

“Then let’s make about five…teach me how to make one. I’ll make them myself.” (Tetra)

I don’t mind but…it’s kind of fun imagining Tetra’s breasts when making one of these. Refusing her for that reason would just make me a pervert, huh.

The two still did not know that many years later, bras would spread across the lands of the Adernia Peninsula.

quo;s head off, huh? I'm the type who believes some things are better left unsaid so…

"I apologize for making you come all the way here." (Almis)

"No, please. There's no way I could make a prominent clan of the Rosyth Kingdom go out of their way." Ains says cheerfully.

He purposely came all the way here after I sent him a letter telling him I'll be inquiring about things I wanted to buy a week later.

"It's getting late so please stay the night. We'll be having a great feast, country-style!" (Almis)

"Then I shall take you up on your offer. We leave the negotiations for tomorrow." (Ains)

At this night's dinner….

I first introduced everyone by seating order. First is me at the seat of honor, at the second seat is Tetra, and at the third seat is Ains.

It's normally the guest who should sit at the seat of honor but it's one of those things that tend to happen if one is the feudal lord.

The next seats are occupied by Ron, Roswald, Gram, Soyon, and then Lulu. There's really no deep meaning in the order.

And lastly would be Bolus, is what I wanted to say but he's currently at a border fort under a new assignment. So, this time he's absent.

Now, for the very important dinner menu!

First is the staple, white bread. I dare say this is the most delicious bread in this world today. We also prepared salt and honey, though

I think everyone would probably go for the honey.

Next, are the appetizers which will start with the salad. We have vegetables from the Ars Territory, vegetables and mushrooms from the mountains and some olive. It's supplemented with fish caught from the river and snail boiled in salt water. Though I won't be eating any of it.

Next is the main course. We will have a fat pig we slaughtered just for the occasion. It's a pig meat dish.

They eat a lot of pigs in this region. I was told the teats and womb of a virgin female pig were particularly exquisite. Although they say that, it doesn't sound particularly delicious to me. (TL Note: IKR, I too just can't believe I just read that right now.)

I guess it's just a matter of taste around these parts.

Next is dessert – fruits, particularly grapes and such. Unfortunately, I wasn't able to prepare sugar so I couldn't make some pudding. I wanted to wow everyone after all.

Last is the most important – drinks. Specifically, the spirits.

I feel bad for Ains but I'm gonna have him taste test it for me. Will it be well received as expected?

"Cough…cough…Ah, I apologize. This liquor…is quite strong, yes? Though, it looks just like wine…" (Ains)

"They're called spirits. How are they?" (Almis)

Ains answers as he slowly drinks the liquor.

"If you could have known it beforehand that it would be strong then….Haahh, this throat burning-like sensation might become a habit. Just that…it seems like you could get drunk immediately even though you've only drank a few. I'll have to take note of this… By the way, this one would be…?" (Ains)

"Although I can't reserve that much, if it's just a little then you can go and sell them. Let's talk about it tomorrow." (Almis)

Ains lowers his head as an apology as I said so.

“By the way, has the Dragon Damascus Sword proven useful?” (Ains)

“Hmm…well….” (Almis)

I haven’t been able to use it that much…I primarily use a spear after all. I guess the only time I used it was when I cut King Ferrum&rs

“By the way, what kind of place is the Cretian Peninsula? If you don’t mind, could you please tell me about it?” (Almis)

I forcibly change the topic a little. But it’s true that I’m interested. We spent who knows how many years secluded in the forest after all so we’re a little uninformed about the area.

“The Cretian Peninsula, is it? Well, the climate is about the same as the Adernia Peninsula. The number of city-states in the peninsula exceed a hundred and each of them repeatedly make and break war and alliances with each other.” (Ains)

I see. It’s pretty much the same as the Adernia Peninsula.

“Well, yes, for the most part. The difference is each city-state is enclosed and protected by stone walls. Furthermore, should an external enemy invade the peninsula, each city-state would immediately cease all hostilities with each other and unite to repel the enemy.” (Ains)

“It’s been a hundred years since the northern part of the Adernia Peninsula was dominated by the Gauls. Despite that, the southern states have remained in constant state of war.” (Almis) (TL Note: the author (and ja.wiki-chan) actually distinguished between Gaul (Garia in Japanese) and Gallia (Garria in Japanese). The former specifically translates to the English term, while the latter to the Latin term. So I’ll use Gaul)

There’s a place called Gaul further up north the Adernia Peninsula. The Rozel Kingdom, a Kingdom of the Gauls, has begun its invasion

of the Adernia Peninsula. (TL Note: I couldn't quite get if the Rozel Kingdom IS the Gallic Kingdom, or JUST A Gallic Kingdom. I looked at the author's map and I still couldn't figure it out.)

It already seized the northern half of the peninsula and is continuing its advance southwards. Furthermore, the three kingdoms being pressured by the Rozel Kingdom – the De Morgal Kingdom, the Gillbed Kingdom, and the Fardam Kingdom are forced to move southwards. And in the south, is our Rosyth Kingdom meaning my territory is also under threat.

It's a collision course, huh.

Should the various countries of South Adernia cooperate, then they would probably be able to push the Rozel Kingdom back. Well, it's probably impossible.

"By the way, Lord Almis, where did you learn the Cretian language?" (Ains)

"From Tetra. She's half-Cretian after all." (Almis) Although before that, I relied on the divine protection.

"Really?…May I inquire the name of your mother?" (Ains)

Tetra assents to Ains' inquiry.

"She's goes by the name Helena. I was told it was love at first sight with my father when she traveled here to the Ars Territory." (Tetra)

"Madame Helena, is it…?" (Ains)

Ains drinks liquor as he mutters Helena, Helena.

"All I can imagine, when I hear about Cretia, is a very advanced country…but does it currently have a foreign enemy?" (Almis)

Cretian city walls are all made of stone. Only a few countries could achieve that in the Adernia peninsula.

Even though they have that much technological strength, I wonder if they would still have anything like external enemies?

“Yes, of course. There’s a lot aiming their sights on very wealthy Cretia. Most notable of them all are the Persis Empire and Povenia.” (Ains)

“Persis Empire? Povenia?”

I’ve never heard of them, huh. More importantly, where are they located?”

I can’t imagine it as anything but located even farther than Cretia.

“Povenia is just a stone’s throw away from the Adernia Peninsula. Do you know that there’s an island called Trisqueria a little south of the peninsula? Povenia is just a little farther south of that island.” (Ains)

Ains drinks more liquor.

“They’ve been doing international maritime trade in the Tethys Sea since long ago. They haven’t been very pleased with us Cretians taking away that trading. We’re always at war, you know? Well, we’re in the process of making the Tethys Sea our sea right now, anyway.” (Ains) (TL Note: We have some Mare Nostrum shit going on here, people.)

The liquor seems to have made Ains drunk as he continued to bad mouth Povenia.

“How about the Persis Empire?” (Almis)

“The Persis Empire is…a huge country to the east of Cretia. These fellows are a really greedy bunch, you see. They invaded Cretia twice, you know. The first with 200,000 men, the second with around 300,000. Well, they’re just numbers anyway.” (Ains)

200,000 and 300,000….

The Rosyth Kingdom can’t even compare in scale.

Naturally, that’s probably not even the whole army. They should have 10,000 men-strong divisions stationed somewhere their vast border regions. The whole army would probably number around

400,000, no?

Even if all the tribes of the Rosyth Kingdom cooperate, we won't be able to assemble anything more than 50,000 personnel. You can't win no matter how hard you try.

But it's a country even farther than the Cretian Peninsula so there probably won't be any chances that we'll be affected. Keep calm, keep calm. (TL Note: Almis, stop triggering flags okay?)

"But it's amazing, yes? How did you win against a 300,000-strong great army?" (Almis)

"Hahaha, We Cretians have the God of War on our side after all!" (Ains)

Ains' mood got better as he told more stories about the Cretian-Persis Wars. He's completely drunk. He kept on drinking until he passed out at the banquet.

"Ugh…my head…." (Ains)

"Are you all right? Shall I bring you water?" (Almis)

"Please…….Hahhah, I apologize. I've drunk too much…." (Ains)

Ains smiles bitterly.

"Then, about the spirits…" (Ains)

"I can't guarantee a lot of them but I can probably have you sell just a few." (Almis)

For the meantime, we are discussing about the price and the transaction volume. With this, the amount of ways I can secure foreign goods have increased by one.

"Then let's move on, what were the goods that you would like to request?" (Ains)

"Horses. I want about 300 of them." (Almis)

“300 horses, yes?…That would be…no…I would be able to prepare them. It’s just…”

Ains seems to hesitate.

“300 horses would be about 1200 gold coins. Would you be able to prepare such a big amount of money? Plus, if you consider the maintenance costs…” (Ains)

If you think about it a gold coin will intuitively be worth around a 1,000,000 yen. Therefore, that would be around 1,200,000,000 yen worth of goods from a Japanese person’s perspective.

Naturally, you won’t be able to prepare this amount of money with just the income of the Ars Territory. The pasture is full of clovers so I don’t think it’s going to be a problem. (TL Note: I don’t get this sentence. Is it a figure of speech? I heard some clovers are toxic to horses, but I’m not a rancher so I dunno. He’s probably referring to the maintenance costs here)

“Sir Ains, I know I was just the chief of a small village not too long ago. However, what am I right now?” (Almis)

“…You are now the lord of a big clan contesting the first or second place in the Rosyth Kingdom.” (Ains)

That’s right. (TL Note: Damn Right)

Success like mine doesn’t come as fast like mine even at a global scale.

“At present, my territory is in the process of promoting a system of mass producing paper. Soon, we’ll be able to produce immense quantities of paper. “ (Almis)

“…..What are you trying to say?” (Ains)

“I would like to know if we could pay by loan payments, as opposed to lump-sum.”

Ains crosses his arms, seemingly troubled as he heard my question.

“150 gold coins per year. If you pay me that for 25 years then I will accept.” (Ains)

That would be about 2550 gold in interest, huh…That’s about twice the principal loan.

That’s stupid.

You might say, but I really need the horses as soon as possible. There’s no other way.

“Do you have a place to keep them?” (Ains)

“Yes, somewhat.” (Almis)

From the start, the Norfolk Four Course System won’t work without the animals.

“By the way, what would you be using them for?” (Ains)

“Plowing farm lands, transporting luggage, organizing the knights…. A lot of things.” (Almis)

I’m thinking of adopting a system of loaning horses to the farmers. Of course, it’ll cost everytime I lend one. You could say that it’ll be a kind of tax.

Generally, I’ll trouble the farmers around the palace. In exchange, I’ll give them preferential right to utilize the horses.

Furthermore, when the horse gives birth, the first foal would have to be returned to the Ars Clan while they could keep the succeeding foals.

The baby horses the Ars Clan received will then be looked after until they grow to a certain extent after which they’ll be entrusted to another farmer.

It’s a plan to slowly introduce the Norfolk Four Course system as well as propagate horses. Just like that, they’ll probably grow several times.

Naturally, you can also gather up and use them as cavalry or cart horses in emergencies.

“Would you also need caretaker slaves? I’ll sell them for cheap, if you buy them together.” (Ains)

“No, I’ll make do with Lia.” (Almis)

Come to think of it, Lia has already served her purpose. Soyon has mastered how to raise up horses after all. There should be no problems if I make that girl oversee the horse rearing. That’s why I don’t need slaves anymore.

Lia ended up taking care of Roswald after she completed her job and got freed from slavery. She’s completely become a housewife. A child would come sometime soon too.

“But since I want to form a cavalry corps…I want people who can ride horses. Doesn’t matter if they’re mercenaries or battle slaves. I need about 50.” (Almis)

At present, there are only thirty people who can decently ride horses. Plus there won’t be problems with assembling about 20 promising and experienced people in Bolus’ group.

If I need to make about 100 cavalry then I’ll need 50 more. I need to compensate for the difference somehow.

“Hmmm, Mercenaries are rigid, yes? I can introduce you to some, but I don’t know If they would be willing to go to the Adernia Peninsula…As expected, battle slaves would be preferable. Actually, we had a skirmish against the Germanis people a month ago and some slaves who could ride horses got listed in the market.” (Ains)

“Then I’ll be taking battle slaves, yes?”

Battle slaves are easy to manage.

It’s pricy in itself, but once you buy them, you won’t have to pay them any more wages.

“Understood. Then it would be 50 battle slaves…It would be 75

gold coins. Shall I add them to the 25-year contract?" (Ains)

"No, I'll pay for them lump-sum." (Almis)

Adding 75 gold coins to the loan contract would be somewhat…

"Then I'll be excusing myself." (Ains)

Ains lowers his head then exits the room.

As he leaves, he turns his back and says:

"Should you need weapons, please don't hesitate to call for me immediately."

Always the businessman, huh.

EPUB/PDF generated by https://lnwnepubs.com/

Chapter 45

I right? I've remembered the names of the people who made a good impression to me at our wedding, after all. I should be fine." (Almis)

Bartolo's child has been born.

The news is spread to the Rosyth Kingdom's various clans.

"Ou! Sir Almis, Madame Tetra, thank you very much for coming!" (Bartolo)

"Yes, Congratulations on this day. Please accept these liquor as gift." (Almis)

I point to three barrels of liquor stacked on the horse cart.

I then order Ron and Roswald, who I took as escorts, to assist in unloading the liquor.

"Oh! Liquor, huh? I look forward to drinking them, I really love liquor, you know." (Bartolo)

"They're quite strong so please try not to drink too much." (Almis)

I warn him in advance. You'll have a very painful experience if you drink it the same as you would normally drink wine.

"Honey! How about holding back on the liquor at least for today?"

A woman calls out to Bartolo. She's holding a small baby in her arms. She's likely Bartolo's wife.

"What are you saying? It's a special day today that's why we're drinking!" (Bartolo)

The two begin quarreling.

That being said, Bartolo's wife is quite young, huh. You can even

say that she's still a little girl.

She's unexpectedly younger than Tetra, you know. If I recall correctly, Bartolo's in his early 30's. This Lolicon!

"You must be Sir Almis, am I correct? Thank you for always taking care of my husband." (Bartolo's Wife)

"Please, the feeling is mutual. Sir Bartolo has always been taking care of me." (Almis)

If you think about it clearly, he hasn't really helped me that much, but I'm the type who believes some things are better left unsaid.

"Is this the new born child?" Tetra asks about the baby Bartolo's wife is holding. (TL Note: name her already)

"Yes, that's right. Would you like to hold the baby? She's a girl." (Bartolo's Wife)

Tetra holds the baby as if it's a highly precious but fragile item. She returns the baby to the mother after getting satisfied holding her for a while.

"Then let us speak again later. Please enjoy yourself with the food and drinks." Bartolo speaks then heads for another clan's group.

"Hey, Almis. It should be a boy for the first after all, huh." (Tetra)

"I don't mind either way. It's not like a girl couldn't succeed as the family head, right?" (Almis)

The Adernia Peninsula observes agnatic succession. But for me, that should just be nothing but an old tradition. In this world, women's status is not that low probably because only they could become sorcerers.

It's just something persistently difficult.

At most, enatic succession would seem to cause various problems

should there be a big succession crisis in the Rosyth Kingdom.

“But if we have a boy then we won’t have that much problems occurring…wouldn’t that be better?” (Tetra)

“Well, I don’t like troublesome things too so… I guess we’ll have a boy first and then a girl?” (Almis)

I don’t want to be biased towards either of them. Like just boys, or just girls…

Come to think of it, when you speak of a baby’s gender, it’s more likely to be a boy, huh?

That should be good for now.

It’s not like Tetra’s showing signs of being pregnant now. (TL Note: Is that a flag? Lel)

“First is the banquet, huh.” (Almis)

“Do you know today’s objectives?” (Tetra)

“I know, I know. We should get as much people friendly as possible. Am

By the way, almost all of them were in the Anti-DeBell Pro-King Rosyth Faction. It would seem that no matter what I’d become hostile with the DeBell Clan.

Disputes are troublesome, huh.

“Let’s go with limiting hostilities with Regal DeBell as much as possible. He’s a neighbor, after all.” (Almis)

“That’s fine. We don’t have any particular reason to fight here after all.” (Tetra)

Okay, for the meantime…

“How about we eat and drink?” (Almis)

The banquet begins. If I were to mention one impression…

They really don't have manners, huh?

These 'gentlemen,' with the high status of being powerful clansmen, are chugging down liquor. They wipe their hands on their clothes, clamor with loud voices, and speak with food in their mouths.

Well, to be fair they don't have cutlery like spoon and fork so you can say grabbing food by hand is the natural thing to do in this world.

"The same can't be said for wiping your hands with your clothes though."

"Well, Let's wipe our hands with our handkerchiefs."

We brought quite a lot of handkerchiefs. But in the end, it's quite inconvenient without tableware, huh. I wonder if I could somehow make them popular?

"Leader, I think you're taking it too seriously." (Roswald)

"Yes. Yes." (Almis)

Roswald is….Well..if he doesn't mind, then it's fine. It seems to be the same for the others anyway.

"Sir Almus!! Won't you please tell me the story of your victory over King Ferrum?" (Random Noble)

"Sure, I don't mind." (Almis)

This is actually the fifth time I've been asked. It seems each of the powerful clans of the Rosyth Kingdom were each quite severely harmed by King Ferrum that they wanted to hear about his death and defeat.

It's not like I don't want to tell the story but I've been telling the same story for who knows how many times already that I've lost interest.

By the way, you can also call this as a deepening of friendships, right?

But there's just one problem.

"Sir Almis. Actually, our daughter wants to know about your tales. Would you please let her hear it from you?" (Random Noble)

"Sir Almis!!!" (Another Random Noble)

Somehow, it would seem my popular period has come.

I can only think of three reasons.

First, I don't have any other wife than Tetra.

Second, Tetra still hasn't given birth to a male heir.

And Third, I don't have any other relative.

That's why they'll get huge returns should they become relatives with me. It's become particularly worse with those who failed on currying favor with the DeBell clan.

I'm fine telling them the story but…

Marriage is…

I just got married to Tetra so there's no way I can look for a second wife immediately. Withdrawal is out of the question. (TL Note: I winged the last part.)

In the end, those trying to curry favor with me are those with little leeway from the very beginning so they don't have considerable power.

Well, Tetra would just scowl at a young woman who gets too close and make her go away anyway.

“Be a bit more amiable for me.” (Almis)

“I don’t have any particular problem. It’s just that you should just chase away all those little clanswomen. Besides, I’m not that against you marrying a second wife. It’s just that you might as well marry from a powerful clan if you’re going to marry again anyway.” (Tetra)

It’s fine for me to take a second wife, huh…. (TL Note: This is it. SS Julia can still sail!)

Frank as usual, this girl.

Personally speaking, I’d be happier if you showed even just a bit of jealousy.

Suddenly, the surroundings become a little busy.

“N? What’s happening?” (Almis)

“Ah…It seems Sir Regal DeBell has come.” (Tetra)

The people snuggling up to me blantantly lost their excitement. Do you really hate him that much?

Regal DeBell comes toward us, pushing away the crowd on his way. He’s muscular and a size taller than me. He’s in his late thirties. He came accompanied by an endless stream of people behind him. They’re probably the clansmen under his influence.

“Sir Almis Ars, it has been a while. We met last time at your wedding. And Madame Tetra is beautiful as usual.” (Regal)

“Yes. Sir Regal. I’m happy to see you in good health.” (Almis)

Everyone gazes gather towards the me and Regal.

“Likewise, Let us support this country together.” (Regal)

“Yes, I’ll be counting on you in emergencies.” (Almis)

Regal DeBell holds out his hand for a handshake and I oblige.

He leaves just like that after the handshake. It was good that he didn’t mention anything about the crystal ornament.

“It’s really unpleasant seeing him take along those followers like that…” (Roswald)

“Ahaha” (Almis) I laugh it off.

“Hey, Leader. Have you noticed they’re giving off bloodlust against us?” (Roswald)

“Of course, I know that much. I also noticed how you made them lose their nerves when you countered with your own.” (Almis)

“That’s because they were looking at older brother badly…” (Ron)

Nevertheless, I don’t want you to compete. Disputes are troublesome. If possible, I want amicable relations.

The hall begins to stir anew as I lectured Ron and Roswald.

“It’s the Rosyth Royal Family, huh…”

King Rosyth’s relatives headed by Julia has come. They’re here even though Bartolo is not from one of the great clans. Well, this much is natural because of Bartolo’s achievements.

Julia greets Bartolo first.

Bartolo manages to scrape a proper response even though he’s gotten dead drunk from brandy. This guy, he can do it if he tries, huh.

Julia walks straight towards me as soon as their conversation ended.

“Good evening, Sir Almis.” (Julia)

“Yes, good evening Princess Julia.” (Julia)

As I greet her, she extends her hand for a handshake so I oblige.

“Please take care of me from here on out, yes?” (Julia)

Julia leaves and then heads to Regal DeBell’s group.

“Yes”

She sneaks a letter on my hand.

“Hey, Isn’t Regal-san somehow glaring at me? I think he found out about the crystal ornament you disassembled…” (Almis)

Tetra shakes her head to disagree.

“You’re wrong. He’s angry because Julia greeted you before him.” (Tetra)

I see.

It’s natural to greet Bartolo first because he’s the host, but next greeting…Is that even important?

“Hello. Is it fine for me to call you Sir Almis?” A male with large build greets me.

Uhm…This person is….

“Raymond Rosyth. He’s Julia’s uncle.” Tetra whispers to let me know.

Ah right, He’s Raymond-san. I remember. He was there at the wedding.

“Yes, that is fine. It’s been a while.” (Almis)

We shake hands for the mean time. He smiles with a grin.

Alright, he seems to not have noticed that I forgot his name. Safe!

“Can we have a little talk over there?” (Raymond)

“Yes, I don’t mind.” (Almis)

The two of us move away a little from the banquet hall.

“This liquor is quite strong yes? I won’t be satisfied with normal liquor anymore…so if possible, could you sell me some?” (Raymond)

“Yes, no problem. Can you please pay by salt, wheat, or Cretian currency?” (Almis)

“Yes, I understand. My territory has quite a big salt mine from which you can get high quality salt…” (Raymond)

We begin to chat, specifically regarding our territories’ respective specialty products and judicial correspondence. While I’m grateful for the thought, did he call me out here just for this kind of talk?

As I thought that, Raymond-san suddenly begins to talk.

“Sir Almis. I’m sure you know that King Rosyth has very little time left to live, yes?” (Raymond)

“Yes, I heard it was due to illness but…” (Almis)

Honestly, I don’t think that racoon would kick the bucket.

“He would live for three years more, at most. Perhaps, he might even meet his demise by the end of this year.” Raymond drinks

some liquor as he declared.

What should I do if you tell me that….

“What do you think the next king should do?” (Raymond)

“I’ve been thinking…Normally, wouldn’t it be fine for you to succeed as king? I don’t understand why we expressly need to find a groom for Julia and make him king.” (Almis)

Rather than Julia’s groom, wouldn’t it be more natural for the King’s younger brother to become king?

“That is often argued. However, it is feared that hostilities would spring forth with that system as all royalty could then claim a right to succeed the throne. King Rosyth has three other brothers apart from me after all. If you include me, then we’ll have four contenders to the throne. If I become king, the other three would surely voice out their dissatisfaction. You would hate being detested and doubted by family, right? The most amicable settlement we had established would be for Julia to receive a groom. That way, everyone would have no complaints.” (Raymond)

Certainly, if you set the precedent that a sibling could inherit then the others would certainly want in. Royalty also have their problems, huh.

“Then, who do you think would be a suitable groom?” (Raymond)

“….Normally, wouldn’t Regal DeBell be suitable? He heads the strongest clan now right?” (Almis)

Raymond shrugs as he heard my answer.

“Certainly, in terms of strength, Regal DeBell should be ahead. However, I heard his territory suffers from horrible mismanagement. It seems his citizens have even resorted to flee to other territories. He also got severely beaten countless times in battle against King Ferrum. But most importantly….” (Raymond)

Raymond looks straight at me.

“That person has only one wife right now even though he had married up to three women. He said they died in accidents but…I wonder about that. Furthermore, I hear that he commits violence against good-looking women within his territory. How could I entrust my beloved niece to that kind of man?” (Raymond)

Raymond continued to drink more liquor. I couldn’t answer anything back.

He fixes his gaze at me a second time after he emptied his cup.

“What’s troublesome are Regal DeBell’s followers, vassals, and relatives. They are people with good lineage after all. There’s a possibility they would begin to disrespect our royal family should Regal become king.”

Raymond declares as he leaves while tapping my shoulder.

“Is there someone…who holds a territory that can oppose Regal DeBell, who has the ability upon which a country could rely, who is kind and gentle that I could entrust Princess Julia to him, and who has few relatives and would not make light of and disrespect our royal family? If you can find someone like that, then please tell me about him.” (Raymond) (TL Note: Checklist clear MC. Go for it!)

row pierces its face. It strikes the eye, penetrating its head. It falls as it releases a deafening sound.

“Uhmm…*ehem*, *ehem*. We are currently recruiting for the military!”

Roswald announces as he gathers the villagers. The villagers look at each other.

“They’re taking in soldiers?” (In a conscription context)

“As expected, this lord also…….”

“Well, this isn’t a place without conscription after all…”

“Please don’t let me be picked…”

The villagers rustle into commotion.

Roswald dispels it by coughing loudly.

“This is military recruitment. We will not be taking soldiers compulsorily. I will now state the terms! Lia, please give me the paper.” (Roswald)

Roswald reads the recruitment terms.

“Let’s see…We are looking for male recruits, aged 15 to 40. The salary would be paid in wheat. Bring your own weapons. Prospective candidates without weapons can still apply as you will be lent weapons by the Ars Clan. Should you be commissioned, you will be required to reside in the vicinity of the palace. Every day you will be subjected to training. You will also be assigned to rotational border protection duties. Should you be commissioned, you will not be subjected to dismissal except in cases of traumatic amputation or illness. Furthermore, in case that it has become

necessary for you to retire due to old age, injury, or illness you will be provided with severance pay. Applicants must state their intent to the village chief within two weeks. We are looking to fill 530 slots. Should the applicants exceed that number, then we will conduct examinations. That is all!"

The villagers rustle again into commotion as soon as they heard Roswald's words.

"This means it's not compulsory!?"

"Yahoo!!"

"Hmmm, what should I do. They'll pay me a salary so should I try joining?"

"It's bothersome to do farming after all…but they'll need you to change residence…."

"I'm scared to die so…"

Roswald coughs loudly again.

Thus, the villagers' fixed their attention at him once more.

"We have another announcement different from the military recruitment!"

Roswald receives another paper from Lia. He reads the announcement loudly.

"Should there be orphans in the village…children without parents aged 15 below…they are hereby required to be brought to the palace!" (Roswald)

"Uhm…why would that be?" (Random villager)

"I also don't know (In other words, it's not something you need to

know!)” (Roswald)

“….The official stance and the real motive might get reversed you know?” (Lia)

Roswald closes his mouth in confusion as he heard Lia say that. He then glares at the villagers.

“In any case!!! It’s ordered by the lord after all!!” (Roswald)

Roswald disperses the crowd as if to evade the topic.

At a certain mountain somewhere in the Ars Territory…A certain beast exists.

It has skin that can’t be pierced by normal arrows.

It has fangs and nails as sharp as razor.

It has a sense of smell superior to that of a dog.

Furthermore, it has strength that can beat down even a tree.

This beast…is the brown bear, currently busy looking for honey.

No matter how determined the honey bees sting the bear with their stingers, the beast remains unaffected.

The bear finishes eating the honey. It raises its head to return to its nest.

At that moment, an ar

“We cannot thank you enough, Sir Gram.” (Random village chief)

“Please. I’m just doing my duty. A bear that has tasted human flesh is dangerous after all and needs to be killed.”

Gram answers with a grin.

He passed by the village in order to proclaim the recruitment and orphan orders. Upon arriving, he learned about the bear and was requested to eliminate it.

Since he was on duty, he immediately went back to eliminate the bear after receiving permission from Almis.

“As for the rewards…” (chief)

“Ah, just give me the bear’s pelt. Please keep everything else.” (Gram)

The villagers let out voices of surprise as they heard Gram’s reply.

From the very beginning, the bear and its pelt were Gram’s since it was him who killed it. Taking it for himself was only natural. Furthermore, rewards in the form of grain, liquor, or women are usually demanded.

“Is that so?….By the way Sir Gram, how many servants do you have in your estate?” (chief)

“Huh? No…I don’t have any…” (Gram)

Gram bewilderedly replies. The village chief laughs with a broad grin.

“Then by all means, won’t you please receive my fourth daughter as your humble servant?” (chief)

“Huh? Uhmm…” (Gram)

Lulu cuts in the conversation as Gram was troubled how to reply.

“No, thank you.” (Lulu)

“Eh? Ah, no…I was asking Sir Gram but…”

“Hah?” (TL Note: Female Death Stare)

“Ah, no. I didn’t say anything!” (chief)

The village chief retreats from Lulu’s vigor.

Using that opportunity, Lulu pulls on Gram’s ear and drags him away from the village.

“Understand? It’s the chief’s plan to make his daughter close to you under the guise of a servant in order to have you get her pregnant when given the chance! Don’t ever fall for it!” (Lulu)

“But….I kind of think it’s about time I get a servant……look, I just received recently…..” (Gram) (TL Note: I couldn’t understand the last part so I winged it. “最近貰ったばっかだし”, Correct me if I’m wrong but I think he’s implying to a mansion he recently received.)

“Then I’ll live with you and do the household chores for you. We sorcerers are free in peaceful times after all! Isn’t it fine this way?” (Lulu)

“Eh!…But….” (Gram)

As Gram hesitates, Lulu glares angrily at him.

“You have a problem with that?” (Lulu)

“No, Ma’m!” (Gram)

While this exchange was happening, about 10 kids ran towards Gram and Lulu.

“Uhm, Excuse us! Please, we also want to become soldiers!” (Kid)

“I’m sorry, but no matter how you look at it, you guys are less than 15 years old.” (Gram)

Gram smiles bitterly. No matter how you look at it, everyone here are below 15 years old. Furthermore, there are even girls.

“But!…” (Kid)

“Right now, all you can do is eat properly so you can become big and strong. Once you turn 15, by all means, come and join us.” (Gram)

Gram strokes the children’s heads as he declares.

He then mutters as he looks at the children taking their leave.

“If children like that increased and our army becomes larger in size, then Almis-san too can succeed further.” (Gram)

“Yes. But the sorcerers, not just the army, are important too, okay?” (Lulu)

The two looks at each other and laughs.

The orphans are gathered before me. No, I had them gathered before me. Everyone is looking uneasy.

Now then…

I look at them and raise my voice.

“I have two choices for everyone gathered here. First, you can come live here in this mansion. Here you will study martial arts, arithmetic, and the Cretian Language. In the future, we will have you work as knights. The other, you can come back home to your villages. We won’t mind whichever you choose. We will not criticize you.” (Almis)

I dispatched tax collectors throughout my territory to collect the taxes. I also have them organize various official documents. In other

words, petty bureaucracy.

However, you always need excellent people for the bureaucracy. It might be alright for now, but after several years, Ron and the guys would become weak old grandpa's and grandma's and then tax collection would be out of the question.

You always need new talented people.

The problem is how to gather them. To start with, the first method is to hold examinations then gather up the excellent.

But this method is rejected on the spot. Why? Because the only people who could take exams are those who could read and write. Problem is, there are no such people.

The second method, is to gather children who want to learn. I was deeply troubled with this. But I ended up rejecting it anyway.

In the first place, few parents understand the value of scholarship so I won't be able to gather the children. I can only gather those who understand scholarship to some extent, and those who can manage to lose some labor…In other words, only the sons and daughters of village chiefs.

The natural enemy of the village chief is the tax collector. What kind of village chief would send his sons and daughters to become his own tax collector enemy?

And from there, I thought about gathering orphans and making them into bureaucrats. You would be able to save orphans while gathering personnel at the same time. It's an operation hitting two birds with one stone.

Nevertheless, there are also dirty little reasons for this.

First, there's no risk of external influences since they don't have family anymore. Second, there is little risk they would betray me, the person who would raise them, the person who they embrace with gratitude.

Although they don't have any proof of superior ability…It's not like

I'm making them do work the same level as what the modern era's Japanese bureaucrats would do.

So long as they could read and write Cretian as well as do arithmetic then they're good enough.

If I narrow the subjects down to only these two, then the children should be able to master them by the time they turn 15.

"How about it?" (Almis)

I ask them once more.

"Those who want to return to their hometowns, raise your hands. I will respect your decision." (Almis)

Hands are raised, scattered among the children.

About a third of the children raised their hands. A lot less than I expected.

Well, even if they came back at their villages, they would be nothing but dependents. If you stayed, you are assured of a great social status. So I guess it's hardly surprising that a lot of children chose to stay here.

"Then can I leave them under the care of Lulu and Soyon? Although me and Tetra will also look after them from time to time. Is that okay? (Almis)

"That's okay, you know!"

"Well, if it's just housework in our sparetime."

They've accepted.

There are also reasons why the two girls were chosen as the

children's attendants. First, the girls' ability to help people. Second, they are sorcerers so they're basically free in times of peace. Furthermore, the two are not officially tax collectors. Though they do help once in a while, their main occupation is sorcerer.

If bureaucrat training is done by bureaucrats, then that would be a problem. Once they develop a teacher-student relationship, covering up for the mistakes of the superior or of the subordinate tend to happen. This is a big problem for an organization.

Therefore, I chose the two who are sorcerers and not official bureaucrats.

I've also become a rotten being. (TL Note: I feel you bro. I'm feeling strange vibes reading this, you know.)

Alright, now that the matter is taken care of, I need to entertain a guest.

"Good day, Lord Almis Ars. My name is Ismere."

"I am Yang Qingming." (TL Note: Author did not give katakana for this name so it's either Yang Qingming (Chinese) or You Senmei (Japanese). It's probably the latter, but I'm gonna stand with the previous translator cause the character comes from the Scarlet Empire a.k.a. China)

The man-woman pair bow their heads and greet me.

A woman calling herself Ismere is without doubt a Cretian. But this man named Yang Qingming, what could be his nationality? Though the name sounds Asian…

Yang Qingming laughs and answers as he understood the strange face I made.

"I come from the far-east, from the Scarlet Empire which everyone calls the Silk Kingdom. Yang is my last name while Qingming is my first name." (Qingming)

Silk Kingdom…..Never heard of it huh.

Am I just a country bumpkin?

“If I’m not mistaken, you want employment. Is that what you wished?” (Almis)

The two bow deeply as I asked.

“I went on a journey aiming for the farthest sea and…I accomplished that goal just a month ago. Thus, I thought I should make my writings into a book. I got to know about the thing called paper that would make that possible. I possess the Divine Protection of Language so I can speak any language. I’m also proud of my skill at mathematics. I guarantee I’ll be of much use.” (Qingming)

“I see. In exchange for working for me, you want paper. You’ll also want necessities until you finish your writing your book. Is that correct?”

Qingming grins as he bows.

“That is correct. As expected of the hero rumored to be raised by Griffon-sama.” (Qingming)

Hey, don’t believe those rumors.

Right now, they’re being rapidly and ridiculously embellished! To the level of breathing fire while flying and growing dorsal fins on the back!

“And then you?” (Almis)

Ismere hands me a parchment as she explains her expertise.

“I am an architect. I can plan and invent several defensive devices and facilities. I can also plan comfortable residences.” (Ismere)

In that parchment, she drew plans of various structures as well as their finished illustrations.

Hmm, this is good, huh.

Our fort at the De Morgal Kingdom border is made of wood. I think it's quite undependable.

However…

"We only match a little in technological strength so why have you come to me? There are other places more fitting, like King Rosyth or King De Morgal."

Of all places, would you normally have come to mine?

"No, I thought that the you, the hero who is son of the great Griffon, would be able to master my architecture." (Ismere)

"You're lying." (Almis)

Ismere begins to shake in fear, surprised by my assertion.

"See, as I thought, it's better to tell him the truth." (Qingming)

As she hears this, Ismere begins to tell the truth with teary eyes.

"Actually…."

If I were to summarize what she said….

It seems she was rejected by all the others besides me.

She got rejected because she's a woman. They also have enough architects. (TL Note: I wish I knew this before I trained as one.) Furthermore, they couldn't understand what she was saying in the Cretian language.

Well, surely there already are architects in the courts of prominent kings. Furthermore, they're Adernian.

It's not like I don't understand the kings of each kingdom who think they don't understand the necessity of intentionally hiring a woman, especially a woman who couldn't understand them.

Though it was unexpected that King Rosyth would reject her. I

thought that if it was King Rosyth, then he'd happily welcome her since he's able to speak Cretian after all.

When I asked about that….

"I was told by King Rosyth that it would be better if I went to you…." (Ismere)

What curious turn of events is that? I don't understand.

However….

"Then that would be fine. I understand. I'll hire you." (Almis)

"Really!?" (Ismere)

"Yes. We'll negotiate about the salary later. Also give me designs that correspond to reality, okay?"

Ismere bows deeply as I declared so.

Chapter 47

quo;s wages.” (Tetra)

“Hmmm…We gathered more troops than expected huh?” (Almis)

I’m looking at the troops that responded to our recruitment.

We’re in the middle of examinations. We gathered 700 people for just 530 slots.

I’m honestly surprised.

I thought they’d be put off by war since they’ve been subjected to it for how many years by King Ferrum.

It appears that thought is wrong.

There seems to be certain patterns prevalent here.

First, those men subjected to long conscriptions and made to become completely accustomed to army life. Then their lord, King Ferrum dies. They are told to come back to their homes only to find out their fields have already been seized by someone else. As they rush to figure out what to do, this recruitment announcement falls into their laps.

Second, those who think “I really can’t stand farming! If they’ll pay me then I’ll just go join the army!!”

Third, “I’ll become successful and be distinguished!”

I honestly thought of slashing the number of slots so this was unexpected, but if you think about it clearly then it might have

become like this.

In the Adernia Peninsula, war is a familiar existence not unlike a storm.

It seems the competition is also fierce in the exams.

People who originally came from the army wanted this.

They seem to be familiar with things like military formations so the successful should end up being selected purely by physical strength and age.

My planned composition for the Ars Army is a mixture of 500 hoplites, 200 bowmen, and 100 cavalry.

I've already secured the required cavalry, so the remaining would be the hoplites and the bowmen.

Having said that, I should leave the examinations to Bolus, Ron, and Gram.

"Hey, Leader. Do we have room to hire 800 soldiers? I heard King Ferrum had heavily taxed up until recently. Furthermore, we would not draft but hire, yes? Would our finances be fine?" (Ron)

"I'm hesitating to say we have leeway, but it's not like we're in distress tax-wise." (Almis)

"Why?" (Ron)

Well, it's bothering you, huh.

Then Tetra, please explain.

"Understood. Ron, do you know the reason why King Ferrum had a hard time??" (Tetra)

"Uhm, is it because the Ars Territory was poor? But that doesn't

change with the leader, right? ….I don't understand." (Ron)

"First, subsidiary aid. There are lords in the Rosyth Kingdom that does not border any foreign country. They don't need to maintain soldiers. In exchange, they have a duty to pay the Rosyth Kingdom a certain amount of wheat. That wheat would be fairly divided to the clans with external borders. That's why they are not as distressed as King Ferrum." (Tetra) (TL Note: King Ferrum lost this privilege when he broke away, but Almis and co regained this as a restored border territory.)

"I see…But I still think 800 people be too much." (Ron)

Tetra then shows Ron some paper.

We've already adopted a system of mass producing paper. It's a system where not only widows, but also specialists and farmers who want extra income participate.

"The second is this. Paper accounts for 60% of the Ars Territory's income. We sell them to Cretian merchants. We have them pay us with Cretian metalwork, Persis glassware, or oriental spices in corresponding value. We then sell these goods to Adernian merchants and the kingdom's various clans who we have pay in wheat or salt. With this system, our territory can pay for 800 men&rs

"I see." (Ron)

Somehow, Ron has come to understand.

By the way, we certainly also have various clansmen of the De Morgal Kingdom as our clients. Although we couldn't identify them as such because they don't come in person.

Well, even if they're an enemy, they're a customer so long as they pay. Those high-class goods won't become military power anyway so its fine to sell as many of them as possible. It's something like snatch away and exhaust the other party's wheat by selling.

If I may also add one reason, unlike King Ferrum, we managed to

get rid of embezzlement by the village chiefs. Although it's a little insignificant.

Well then, let's go to Roswald now that Ron seems to have understood. It's the real issue at hand for today.

"Roswald" (Almis)

"Yes, what is it?" (Roswald)

"Actually, the 100 horses and 50 battle slaves we ordered from Ains are scheduled to come today." (Almis)

As expected, even Ains had difficulty suddenly procuring that many horses. Although I'm surprised that he still managed to prepare them in such a short time.

"And?" (Roswald)

"I want to entrust to you the command of the cavalry. In other words, I want you to be in charge of the 50 battle slaves." (Almis)

"Why me? I think Bolus-san has more experience than me, right?" (Roswald)

I answer his question.

"First, Bolus has no experience commanding cavalry so the two of you are equal in that regard. Second, you are the most skillful horse rider, as far as I know. Furthermore, you and Lia close, am I right?"

Roswald blushes as I say so.

"That's why I think you'd be well-received by the Germanis slaves. Since it's become this way, it will be wonderful if the you and Lia got married too! Being able to speak a little Germanis is also a big point." (Almis)

I've returned the Divine Protection of Language after all. I'll have to

rely on Lia and Roswald for communicating with them.

“I understand. I’ll do my best!” (TL Note: Go get Lia, tiger!)

Roswald greatly nods in agreement.

A few hours after, Ains brought over the slaves and horses.

“Please confirm the goods. These are the 100 horses.” (Ains)

“Thank you very much. Can I ask one question? How did you manage this in such a short time?” (Almis)

“I had 30 horse at inventory from the very beginning. Furthermore, other Cretian merchants had recently brought in some horses. I managed to get about 50 from them. I obtained the remaining 20 little by little buying from the small nomadic tribes within the Adernia Peninsula.”

Oh, really?….That’s unexpected.

Nevertheless…I see. It’s natural that there would be people relying on nomadism as their livelihood, huh.

I need to make contact with them as soon as possible so we can try procuring some from them. If I got all my horses from Ains then my expenses would pile up.

“Then, these are the battle slaves. As much as possible, I chose the slaves with good quality.” (Ains)

Ains tone has completely turned into sell-mode. Actually, it’s probably that kind of sensation.

I look at the slaves before me.

The first thing that catches the eye is their height. They’re quite taller than the average Adernian.”

Although a lot of them are black or brown haired, there are some who are blond-haired and blue-eyed.

I face the slaves and say:

“I am Almis. I am your master. Best Regards.” (Almis)

Lia translates it into Germanis.

A slave faces me and says something.

“For the meantime, we’re hungry so please give us something to eat….is what he said.” Lia looks up at me and translates with anxiety. She’s probably wondering whether it’s fine to translate what he just said.

I look at the slaves.

The slave who said that was a blond Germanis who’s probably in the second half of his thirties. There are scars here and there in his muscular body. What stands out the most is the scar around his ears that extend up to around his cheek.

He grins as he looks at me.

That being said, it’s not like every one of them has an arrogant attitude like this slave.

Rather, a lot of them glare at the blond slave with a “what the hell are you saying” expression.

“Tell them the following: Alright. We will prepare a meal for them. We will also specially heat up baths for you so clean yourselves.” (Almis)

I tell Lia who translates to the slaves.

The blond slave widens his eyes.

After the meal, Roswald declares the following to the slaves who now had changed into tidy clothes.

“I am Roswald. I am entrusted by the lord to manage you lot. Your job is to fight as cavalry. Should you render meritorious service, we will emancipate you from slavery. We will also grant you allowance.” (Roswald)

Roswald said that in Germanis even if stutteringly.

He spoke in Germanis even though he pronounced ridiculously and had help from Lia. That shocked the Germanis slaves. Normally, there’s no master who would bother to speak in the language of the slave after all.

“Is that true? Isn’t there a lot of problems with emancipating slaves should they work properly? This is certainly a lie.” The blond slave declares while laughing frivolously.

“What’s your name?” Roswald asks even though slightly offended.

“Virgar, mein Herr (TL Note: He said master but he’s trying to be sarcastic here so I wrote it in German) Asking the name of a thing is eccentric, yes?” (Virgar)

He again laughs frivolously.

“What can we do to make you believe?” (Roswald)

“Hmmm.. Let’s see. Why don’t you show us a real emancipated slave?” (Virgar)

“I’m one, you know.” (Lia)

Virgar falls silent as he hears Lia’s words. He had thought Lia was a slave translator.

Now that you mention it, for a slave, she's wearing clean clothes. She also doesn't have a choker. It's obvious that she's an emancipated slave.

Furthermore, she was emancipated mainly by Almus' meddling to support Roswald's romance and not just by meritorious service. But don't mind the small details.

"Then, have you decided to obey now?" (Roswald)

Virgar shakes his head to Roswald's question.

"I don't like obeying someone weaker than me, you see. So please forgive me, okay?" (Virgar)

"Then if we prove that I'm stronger than you, then you'll obey me?" (Roswald)

Virgar grins as he hears Roswald's words.

"Well, of course. Let's have a joust, mein Herr. But there's nothing in it for me if I win, right?….. So free me if I win. Naturally, you accept right? Don't tell me you're afraid you'll lose so you won't accept?" (Virgar)

"No, that's fine. If you win, you'll be freed. In exchange, submit if you lose." (Roswald)

With this, it's been decided to hold a joust.

"Hey, Ains-san. I've been thinking. Are the Germanis people nomads?" (Almis)

I ask as I gaze at the two, Roswald and Blondie, preparing for battle. If that were so, I feel Roswald might not have a chance to win.*(TL Note: MC likes to refer to Virgis as blondie)

“No, in the Germanis peoples, there are a lot who rely on agriculture and hunting as their livelihood. It’s just that their territory borders the nomads’ territory so a lot of them learn horse-riding techniques. Furthermore, although the Germanis area contains forests, they also have wide fields. They can bring up good horses.” (Ains)

I see. In other words, they are not natural-born cavalrymen.

Then, with this even Roswald has a fair chance to win.

“What is this?” (Virgis)

Virgis asks as he sees the stirrups installed in the horses.

Lia translates it without delay.

“It’s an equipment called stirrup. You hang your feet there so you can maintain your balance much easier. It’s not fair if only me gets to use one, right?” (Roswald)

Virgis laughs scornfully.

“Well thank you, mein Herr. But take it off for me. I can’t use an equipment I’m not used to.”

Lia translates it without delay.

Well, it’s not a bad judgement. While it’s true that you have more balance with the stirrup, it would be painful to look at when you screw up using equipment you’re not used to.

The two mount their horses and get in position. Both are wearing armor. It's like a real battle.

However, it would be troublesome if someone dies so we have them use safer equipment – wooden poles with cloth wrapped several times on the tip. Well, someone could still die should they hit a bad spot.

The two horses start running when I clap as the starting command. The two poles intersect.

The battle is decided in one instant.

Roswald hits Virgis and makes him fall from his horse.

Well, you can say this is the natural outcome since Roswald used stirrups and can fight with a bear if given a spear.

Blondie looks up at Roswald with a vexed expression.

Roswald gets off from his horse and extends his hand to him.

"Here, get up." (Roswald)

"…….Thank you very much." (Virgis)

Blondie accepts Roswald's hand. Roswald asks Blondie with a proud expression.

"So, have you recognized me?"

"….I understand. I recognize you, master." (TL Note: He changes the way he says master.)

Blondie answers as his face warps in frustration.

For the meantime, the matter's resolved. Good. Good.

“By the way, stop it with the ‘master.’ Your master is that lord over there. I’m just….yes, I’m your captain.

“Understood, Captain. Please take care of me from now on.”

Blondie lowers his head to Roswald.

“Then you’ll be cleaning my house later.” (Roswald)

“Huh? Ah, no. I’m a battle slave, sir…” (Virgis)

“Didn’t you say you’ll submit to me? Men keep their word, right?” (Roswald)

Virgis lets out a deep sigh.

Now, with this we’ve finally managed to complete our cavalry.

Chapter 48

I have a wife?

“It’s been a while, Julia” (Almis)

“Yes, it’s been a while. Thank you for coming.” (Julia)

“You called me after all.” (Almis)

“At the lake, in the full moon” That was written in the letter Julia handed me in the banquet hall. I came here because of those words.

“I really thought that I wouldn’t be able to meet with Julia anymore. You called me something like Lord Almis before after all.” (Almis)

Julia laughs and counters.

“Didn’t you call me Princess Julia too?” (Julia)

…

“Can we talk for a little while?” (Julia)

“Hey…Do you remember the first time we met?” (Julia)

“Yes, I remember. You invited me with the butterfly to come out, right?” (Almis)

“Right right!” (Julia)

The two sit by the lake shore and enjoy themselves with reminiscence.

“There was also that time you saw me naked, huh?” (Julia)

“That feels like it just happened yesterday. If I recall, after that I met with King Rosyth, right?” (Almis)

“Whose was more beautiful, mine or Tetra’s?”

Julia smiles mischievously.

“Well…your breasts are bigger, you know.” (Almis)

Julia turns bright red and instinctively hides her chest.

“Jeez…” (Julia)

Julia tries to hide her elated smile by sounding angry.

“Hey…Almis….”

She fixes her gaze at me.

“I like you.”

“Yes, I know.”

There’s no way I wouldn’t have known.

“Do you like me?”

“Isn’t that obvious?”

As I say so, Julia presses her lips to mine.

Her tongue enters my mouth.

I pushed mine in hers as I receive her.

The two intertwined many times over.

“Nnn!”

I find Julia’s weak spot so I concentrate my caress there.

I forcibly suck on Julia’s tongue and gulp her saliva.

We separate as our breathing turned rough, our saliva forming a bridge between us.

“You’ve gotten so good at this, huh.” (Julia)

Julia catches her breath and connects her lips with mine for a second time.

I put my hands on Julia’s shoulders and push her down.

And then…

“That was close.” (Almis)

Just a little more and I would’ve broken my promise with King Rosyth.

“Jeez, you’re really hopeless….it hasn’t even been a year since you

got married. To be thinking of cheating already.” (Julia)

“The one who almost made me cheat was you, you know.” (Almis)

We haven’t done anything except kiss so it should still be safe. Probably… (TL Note: We learn something new every day. Kids, Kissing IS NOT cheating. Loljk)

“Almis”

Julia looks at me with a serious expression.

She then kneels and bows her head deeply.

“I ask of you, please. Won’t you marry me?” (Julia) (TL Note: Damn, to be proposed to by the girl.)

“I can’t answer that.” (Almis)

“Why? Do you dislike me?”

“No. I like you very much. I like you as much as Tetra…More than that, I love you.” (TL Note: Suki vs Aishiteru)

What the hell am I saying even though

“Then why? Is it because you feel bad about Tetra?” (Julia)

“That too. But the biggest reason is different.” (Almis)

As she hears my answer, Julia's tears start falling. She cries out:

"What? If you marry me then you'd be able to love me as you like, you know? I won't lose to Tetra, too!! If you marry me, then you'll inherit the Kingdom too!" (Julia)

"That's the problem!!" (Almis)

I unintentionally raise my voice.

"Supposing…I do marry you, how many people do you think would acknowledge my succession to the throne? Only the royal family and the nominally anti-DeBell faction centered around Bartolo. Even they won't consider me as a beloved King. They only hate the DeBell clan, after all. Furthermore, do you think Regal DeBell would stay quiet and recognize me? There's no way that would happen. A civil war would break out, you know." (Almis)

I was just forced into the fight with King Ferrum by necessity. I took the risk to eliminate King Ferrum because our lives were inevitably threatened. However, this civil war could be avoided if I just not marry Julia. It will force Julia into bitterness but nevertheless no one would certainly die.

If that war were to break out, I won't be an outsider. I would be at the center of it all. At that time, who would get hurt? Wouldn't it be Ron and the guys?

I can't let that sort of thing happen.

However…

"However, I will never hand you over to that Regal. That's why… could you please wait a little more for my reply?" (Almis)

In reality, I should have immediately refused. As a leader, as a lord…

However, I can't bring myself to do that…

Julia embraces me and says:

"I understand. I'll wait for five more months. Give me your conclusion until then. Otherwise…"

…

"I'll be made to marry Regal."

"Hey, where have you been?" (Tetra)

"I met with Julia." (Almis)

Tetra shows a slightly surprised expression as I answered.

"Isn't that something you hide?" (Tetra)

"I don't have the confidence to hide it from you. You're very smart after all." (Almis)

You'd immediately find out anyway if I told a poor lie. It's better if I just told you straight.

"You were asked to marry her?" (Tetra)

"You knew, huh." (Almis)

"Woman's intuition." (Tetra)

Even though Tetra's 'woman's intuition' had a low success rate, she

hit the mark this time, huh.

“Did you accept?” (Tetra)

“I’m still thinking about it. I got a five-month extension.” (Almis)

Really, what the hell am I consulting with my wife.

“You don’t have to mind me.” (Tetra)

“There’s no way I won’t, okay? If I were to marry Julia, then you would be treated as a concubine, you know.” (Almis)

Would Tetra be fine with that?

“It doesn’t mean that I won’t have complaints. But it’s not like I’m concerned with social status. So long as you let me stay as your wife…” (Tetra)

Tetra states with blushed cheeks.

“Besides, Julia is so pitiful now. If I were in Julia’s position, then I’d want to die. …Although it’s not really a problem if it’s a complete stranger…” (Tetra)

Tetra pauses for a while.

“Julia is a friend. That’s why I’ll permit it. Well, if she apologizes to me sincerely first.” (Tetra)

Hmmm, I really don’t get women. (TL Note: Tetra uses yurusu which could mean to permit or to forgive.)

But is this something special for Tetra?

Isn’t that so.

“But that’s not the problem, right?” (Tetra)

“Right. It’s because there’s a possibility a war might break out…” (Almis)

There’s no way anyone could forgive Julia and me if the country splits into two causing unnecessary deaths just because of such a personal reason.

“For me, I think you should just do as you like. You’ve been working so hard for everyone after all. Isn’t it fine at this point?” (Tetra)

“Is that so…I’ll take that into consideration.”

It’s not good to leave my conclusion to others after all. I need to decide this on my own. It’s important after all.

“I see. He refused because of that reason, huh.” (Rosyth)

King Rosyth made a surprised expression as he heard Julia’s explanation.

“Did father thought that Almis would accept?” (Julia)

“No, I did expect him to decline. Just for a different reason. I thought he wouldn’t accept because he thought he still doesn’t have enough achievements.” (Rosyth)

Defeating King Ferrum was a great achievement.

However, it was offset by making him a great clansman.

By all rights, King Rosyth should have taken direct control of two-thirds of King Ferrum’s territory and for Almis to be sealed at the remaining third. That reward should by all rights be sufficient. Almis, from the very beginning, was not a citizen of the Rosyth Kingdom, after all. Furthermore, he’s just a little someone from a little village somewhere.

However, King Rosyth granted him all of King Ferrum’s former

territory. It's not an exaggeration to say that the reward was too much.

Because Almis was made a great clansman, not even one of his many achievements from before would stand. If he were to marry Julia in this situation, Almis will be seen as trying to cheat Julia. Well, it's not necessarily wrong regarding these things.

It's also doubtful if the Anti-DeBell faction would cooperate.

"Although I intended to forcibly make him take achievements by appointing him as supreme commander and making him attack a nearby country if war seems unlikely…" (Rosyth)

They should be able to capture a sufficiently great achievement with Almis' subordinates' martial prowess, gunpowder, and Bartolo's assistance.

If it would seem he could not achieve a great achievement even with the tables set, then we would just end the matter with 'he was just a person of that level.'

"Is that so…even if Almis was determined, without achievements, then it wouldn't work, huh…" (Julia)

Julia drops her shoulders.

"Well…with just this much, we have no choice except pray. We can only leave it to fate." (Rosyth)

"Fate, huh…Is see, that's how it is…" (Julia)

In a certain town around the DeBell-Ars border, a small dispute has occurred.

“Hey! The wheat is not enough!! What’s the meaning of this!!” A man shouts as he brandishes a sword.

That man is Gilberto. (TL Note: Nope not King Gillbed/Gilberd/ Gilbert)

He’s Regal DeBell’s second cousin.

The village chief is prostrating himself before Gilberto and pleads.

“I apologize deeply. The wheat is all but gone. Could you please wait until next year? Without fail, we will include this year’s part in next year’s tax payment.” (chief)

Gilberto kicks the village chief’s face flying.

“Don’t mess with me!! You lot haven’t even paid this year’s cloth yet!!”

Gilberto shouts.

He ignores the still village chief and makes the soldiers investigate the storehouse’s interior.

“There’s really nothing….nn?” (Gilberto)

Gilberto directs his sight to the ground. The soil’s color is a little strange.

He orders the soldiers as he notices the chief’s face change color.

“Dig here.” (Gilberto)

The soldiers dig on the surface. The ground turns unusually soft so they were able to dig easily.

There are countless vessels inside. They open the lid and find the wheat packed inside.

“You had them after all!!” (Gilberto)

“Th…these are seed rice!! If you take them then next year….” (chief)

Gilbert kicks the chief's face again.

"No problem. We'll lend you (real) seed rice. You can return them next year. Alright men! Take these away!" (Gilberto)

The soldiers take the wheat from the vessels away one after another.

After this, Gilberto gathered the villagers together. He confirms their faces one by one.

It's been a long time since Gilberto became in charge of this village. Even though he doesn't know their names, he would immediately notice an unfamiliar face amongst the villagers.

Incidentally, he notices a woman he's never seen before. She's a woman with quite a fine face.

It's not strange to forget mediocre faces but it's a different story for a fine face like that.

"Hey, you. You're not a citizen of this village, right? Where did you come from?" (Gilberto)

The woman turns pale.

"F…from the neighboring village." (woman)

"Did you take a movement notice?" (Gilberto)

It's forbidden to migrate freely in the DeBell Territory. By all means, you need to take a notice.

People who break this law are punished.

The woman couldn't answer Gilberto's question.

"I see. You didn't take a notice, huh?" (Gilberto)

The woman shakes as she nods to Gilberto's inquiry.

"The reason you moved to this town would be…marriage?" (Gilberto)

The woman prostrates herself to him and asks for pardon.

Gilberto grins widely.

“Well, fine. Pay both the Wedding tax and the Bridal Night tax.” (Gilberto)

The man beside the woman turns pale and prostrates himself before Gilberto.

“I…I beg your forgiveness. Please, I will pay without fail within the month so…”

“No. Pay immediately. Well, If you agree to my conditions then I’ll forgive the Marriage Tax and Movement Notice.” (Gilberto)

Gilberto states his terms while grinning. That is, Gilberto would take the woman’s virginity right here right now.

The right to the first night belongs to the lord, Regal. Still, taking away the woman’s virginity won’t change having to pay the marriage tax. Naturally, not taking a movement notice is also a crime.

However, right now, Gilbert would sleep with the woman and take way her virginity. If you can promise not to tell anyone about it then he will overlook the marriage tax and the violation.

The couple didn’t have a choice.

er that, we'll slowly reconstruct it with a focus on stone walls. It's a fort after all so we can't destroy it completely and then rebuild." (Ismere)

"This is the border fort?" (Ismere)

"Yes. As expected, is it different in Cretia? (Almis)

Ismere nods.

"Yes. In Cretia, the borders are fortified completely with stone forts. Although all the domestic checking posts are made with wood…" (Ismere)

In other words, our country's forts are just ordinary checking posts in Cretia, huh…

"Or rather, why aren't they fortified with stone?" (Ismere)

"Well, it's because we don't have the technology. Stoneworks need knowledge of mathematics. There's also the skill needed to cut the stone to the appropriate size. Furthermore, you need quite the heavy labor to carry the stones." (Almis)

Nonetheless, the only wooden border is here.

This fort was built 20 years ago. Since then, it's only been repaired at times but never reconstructed.

There was a time a reconstruction plan was decided. Sometime after that, however, the Ars Territory was seized by King Ferrum.

King Ferrum didn't have leeway to reconstruct the fort. Besides, he was able to establish friendly relations with King De Morgal so he didn't need to.

That's why it was left alone… However, since it returned to the Rosyth Kingdom, there's no way we could leave it as is.

“As expected, it would be problematic if we don’t rebuild with stone.” (Ismere)

“That’s right…Nonetheless, there’s no place we can get stone suitable to be turned into building stone in this territory.” (Almis)

Incidentally, we also don’t have the ability to cut them.

Even if I have Ismere direct the stone handling, without the materials then nothing could happen.

“Where can we get building stones again?” (Almis)

“If I recall correctly, the DeBell territory is this country’s biggest producer of building stones.” Tetra responds.

It’s the DeBell Territory?….

What to do? Should I ask them? But I don’t want to negotiate with that person…

“…It’s not like we have to get the stones from them just because they’re the biggest producer. I think we can also get them from the areas directly under the control of King Rosyth.” (Tetra)

“What. You should have told me that from the beginning. You made me jittery.” (Almis)

It’s better to completely avoid people you don’t agree with after all. Half-hearted superfluous relations deteriorate.

“I’ll order building stones from King Rosyth. Ismere. Can you do the planning?” (Almis)

Ismere bows.

“Yes, that’s alright. I can plan with just a few alterations that thing that was planned a considerably long time ago.” (Ismere)

“How long until It’ll be complete?” (Almis)

“Including the material estimates, I would say it’ll be done in a

week's time." (Ismere)

Ismere sticks out her chest full of confidence.

"What kind of plan do you intend make?" Qingming asks Ismere.

"Hmm. We don't plan to particularly revise much. It seems like Lord Almis wants to quickly finish the repairs, you see. For the meantime, we'll reinforce the fort with wood. We'll then construct a stone wall around it. If it's this much then we should be able to do it even with Adernia Peninsula's technological strength, right?" Ismere replies as she surveys the fort while writing down notes.

"Is that all?" Qingming asks, a little disappointed.

Ismere smiles bitterly.

"Right now, it's that kind of talk. Aft

"I guese there's that too. Haha. I'm sorry. I asked something strange, huh." (Qingming)

Qingming makes an embarrassed smile.

"For the meantime, I absolutely need to accomplish this task. If I do that, my accomplishments will increase. After that would be the Ars Clan mansion. I want to improve so I can't be helped. It's something with a lot of pointlessness. If I persevere, they'll get pleased with me and someday they'll take me in as this country's architect. With that I can participate in this country's construction and…"

At that point, Ismere lets out a sigh.

"What's wrong?" (Qingming)

"This is the end, right? The Rosyth Kingdom is small so they won't be building anything big. It would be great if this Kingdom would just get bigger but the king seems to be dying and the successor seems to have little skill. I'm so worried." (Ismere) (TL Note: It's

tough being an architect.)

Qingming pats Ismere on the back to console her.

“Aren’t you an expert? You won’t get executed even if the country gets destroyed, you know…….I’m sure you can still distinguish yourself at the De Morgal Kingdom. That is if they get to know that it’s you who designed this fort, ne? Well…that’s another story for when this fort becomes a big success.” (Qingming)

After hearing Qingming jokingly say this, Ismere smacks him in the head.

“Don’t tell me such reckless things!! What would you do if we get fired?” (Ismere) (TL Note: Ismere said kubi ni naru which also doubles as to be beheaded.)

Ismere asks in an angry tone. She’s smiling though.

What Ismere likes is herself being employed by a country. It’s not King Rosyth, not Almis, not the Ars Clan, and not anyone in particular.

“Yes. But I’m getting motivated. It’s my first work after all. If I succeed here then there’s a possibility King Rosyth will ask for me directly. Perhaps, even the Rozel Kingdom…Alright, let’s do our best!!”

Ismere gets pumped up.

Just as she promised, Ismere finished the plans in one week and showed me the necessary materials and labor. Impressive, it’s wonderful work that you could even call excellence exceeding oneself.

“As such, please let me procure building stones.” (Almis)

“I see. No problem. It’s for national defense, after all.” (Rosyth)

King Rosyth cheerfully accepts.

“By the way, did you not ask Regal DeBell? He’s your neighbor after all plus his building stones are high quality.” (Rosyth)

“Please cut me some slack.” (Almis)

King Rosyth grins.

This guy is mean.

“By the way, is it alright not fortifying your border with the DeBell Territory?” (Rosyth)

“……I haven’t come to a conclusion yet regarding the succession, you know?” (Almis)

King Rosyth smiles at my frank response.

“Either way, you’ll end up going to war with Regal DeBell, you know? After he becomes King, who would be the one eyesore for him? Well, in that case, it would become necessary to also build a fortress in your border with him.” (Rosyth)

“Do you intend to rush me? It’s not that simple you know?” (Almis)

After Regal DeBell becomes king, the possibility he will depose me would be unusually low. Why? Because I am entrusted with the border with King De Morgal after all.

Although the DeBell Territory also shares a border with King De Morgal….because of topographic reasons, the battle site would be in my Ars Territory.

If I were to defect to the De Morgal Kingdom, the Rosyth Kingdom’s defensive lines would retreat dramatically.

Regal DeBell would probably not want to cause bothersome problems immediately after he becomes King. (TL Note: MC you underestimate the power of stupid and a big head.)

Besides, if you think about it clearly, I've already decided. I intend to sit down and carefully deliberate on the matter until the very last moment possible.

"By the way, why did you send Ismere over to my place?"

King Rosyth is not blind. Furthermore, he can speak Cretian.

I can't find a reason for him to send away Ismere.

"She won't be able to make plans for a fort against Regal DeBell if she was in my court, right? Besides, your place is better than the soon-to-die king's place." (Rosyth)

Certainly, if an architect employed by King Rosyth were to do such a thing then relations between the Rosyth Clan and the DeBell Clan would break down completely….

"Do you really want me to be king that much?" (Almis)

"Yes. I desire it. I want my beloved daughter to have a happy marriage. Besides, I don't want that little brat to become my son. If I was made to have that kind of son then that brat Ferrum would have been a much less objectionable choice." (Rosyth)

You say that much, huh…

"I'll think about it very hard. I shall give you my conclusion soon."

I bow my head to King Rosyth and leave.

When I returned to the mansion, I don't know why but everybody headed by Tetra is on the lookout for me.

"What is it? What happened?" (Almis)

"Refugees have come from the DeBell Territory."

Another troublesome matter, huh….

Come to think of it, refugees always bring in troublesome matters with impeccable timing, huh.

“How many? What did the DeBell Clan say? Did they ask for them back?” (Almis)

“The numbers are 200 people. They still haven’t sent a message.”

There’s no way they won’t notice 200 people going missing, right?…

Before long, they’ll send a message asking them back.

“First, who knows that refugees have come?” (Almis)

“Only the members here and a portion of the soldiers. We’re concealing the information since Ron encountered the refugees exactly while he was in the border forest when he came to exterminate the bear.”

This means that should things go well, we could completely get away with feigning ignorance. In the first place, fleeing is a felony. Furthermore, they fled somewhere within the same country so the success rate is low.

They fled taking into account that much risk so it must have been a considerably horrible rule. Even in hearsay, I heard it was horrible.

Well, for the meantime….

“Call the refugees’ representative over. I want to talk to him.” (Almis)

“Are you the refugees’ representative?” (Almis)

“Yes, that is correct. Somehow, would you please take us in?” (rep)

“First, please tell me under what circumstances you escaped.”

If it’s a stupid reason then I intend to send them away.

First, concerning the taxation, if I were to summarize them then it would be something like this:

Wheat 30%

Land Tax

Cloth

Specialty Goods

Labor

Conscription

Marriage Tax

Death Tax

Funeral Tax

Bridal Night Tax

How terrible.

They thought of these many taxes. If it were me, just collecting them would be too troublesome.

Is Regal actually a hard worker?

How should I put it? Death tax and funeral tax are separate, huh. Marriage tax and bridal night tax, too.

With this, you'll understand why'd they flee, huh.

"In addition, the DeBell clan's relatives commit acts of lawlessness."

It was natural for them to rape and rob anyone, even killing on a whim.

It's governance at a level you don't hear about even in novels. Really dreadful.

Now then, I'm kind of suspecting they're exaggerating for it to be that horrible but…

I tell the representative to please exit the room and wait for a while. I then call Tetra, Yal, and Bolus.

I tell them the representative's story. I then ask:

"It was considerably horrible but, is that story believable?" (Almis)

Tetra nods.

"I heard this indirectly from other people, but for the most part that's the truth. There was someone crying about getting raped when she couldn't pay the bridal night tax." (Tetra)

Yal also nods in agreement.

"I also asked about the taxes and…it's true that they were being exploited considerably. They were even selling away their children at regular intervals." (Yal)

I see…

Bolus also nods when I looked at him.

"I also often hear of the DeBell Territory's cruelty. During the old Lord Ragou's generation, refugees often come too. They flee here

even during the time of King Ferrum.” (Bolus)

In other words, DeBell hell was even more frightening than Ferrum hell, huh… Someone is always better huh. Or should I say worse?

“However, as expected, things like murder and rape seem to be exaggerated. What do we do?”

Tetra asks.

Let’s see. I want to take them in. I’d be a failure as a human if I abandon them here.

I don’t know if they’ll live if I send everyone back to that horrible place.

But how can I deceive the DeBell…

In the Rosyth Kingdom, the permission of the lord is necessary for the migration of the population. In this situation, legally speaking, I’ll become the one in the wrong.

It’s often said that a bad law is still a law. At this rate, I’ll become a criminal but…

Now, now…

That’s right. If we hide the refugees somewhere far then can we make DeBell overlook us by feigning ignorance?

If we get lucky, King Rosyth would favor me in a trial after all.

However, do I have a place where Regal DeBell’s investigation couldn’t reach?….

I have one. It’s just the right place.

“Then let’s send them to our old village. We haven’t managed to put together people to send there right? They definitely won’t be found

out there.” (Almis)

That place only has 30 people even though it’s the size that could support 200 people. It’s such a huge waste.

Let’s throw 200 refugees in there. The original 30 were also refugees in the first place. They’ll probably get along fine since they have something in common. Let’s make them understand what we felt that time, the pain of taking in new members.

Although they’ll be a little bit over capacity, if we send them some aid then they should be fine.

Hiding them there is most suitable. There should still be a lot of the old barriers we erected remaining there so, for us, that forest should be a garden. We’ll be able to immediately get rid of any invading dogs ridden by sorcerers.

Furthermore, unusually, very little clansmen know about the existence of that village so there should also be very little clansmen who would know that the village is my territory. It’s a blind spot.

“It’s decided, yes? Let’s stealthily move them late at night.”

“Then let’s get this over quickly tonight.”

“If it isn’t Lord DeBell……Please come on in. We will present you a humble meal.” (Almis)

I courteously welcome Regal DeBell. I intend to score as much good points as possible.

First, we will present a meal and make Regal be full. Aggression is calmed by a full belly, don’t you agree?

Now, after completing the meal…

“Lord DeBell. On what business did you grace us with your presence?” (Almis)

Well, we should know what he came here for, right? He’s here for the runaways.

“Lord Ars. Our territory’s population has fled, you see. There is a high possibility that they went to this territory. Do you not know of this?” (Regal)

I answer the question.

“I am terribly sorry but I have not known anything about that. Let us have it investigated immediately.”

Regal raises his eyebrows.

The refugee’s destination is a choice between my territory and De Morgal Kingdom after all. If you consider the distance, the one with the highest possibility would be my Ars Territory.

It’s an obvious lie but…It’s not like it’s impossible that they’d fled to King De Morgal’s place even if you say the possibility was low. It’s not a big deal if they can’t get any proof.

I ordered the sorcerers to erase all potential evidence such as the refugees’ smell and footprints. It’s the perfect crime.

Nonetheless, the other party doesn’t seem to understand.

That’s only natural.

“I see. By the way, Lord Almis Ars. Did you know about the law in this country……that you need the consent of the both lords in order to move a population?” (Regal)

“Yes, naturally. What about it?” (Almis)

As expected, he's doubting me, huh.

However, you don't have evidence so…

After this, I feigned ignorance no matter how many times I was asked the same thing by Regal.

"Damn!! To be playing dumb!" (Regal)

Regal kicks a chair away. He unsheathes his sword and slashes at the bed and wall.

After doing that to release some stress, he calls for Bermet, his close associate, and Gilberto, his close friend and most intimate relative.

"What do you think about this case?" (Regal)

Gilberto answers first.

"There's no mistake. I think they fled to the Ars Territory. It was the village I'm in charge of after all. If they fled from there, then without exception they won't be able to think of anywhere but the Ars Territory."

Naturally, it's not impossible for them to go to the De Morgal Kingdom. However, it would take them several days to go to the De Morgal Kingdom.

It's impossible to flee there in one night.

"However, because we don't have conclusive evidence, we will just lose if we sue them, don't you agree. Almis Ars seems to have gotten all evidence like smell and foot prints erased somehow after all."

Furthermore, it's obvious that King Rosyth favors Almis. We will be at a disadvantage in a trial. We will certainly lose.

“However, we managed to give a warning. There won’t probably be a next time.” (Bermet)

As expected, even Almis won’t be able to pull the same thing many times. That’s Bermet’s conclusion.

“In otherwords, we’re compelled to give up……..I’m watching you. Almis Ars…” (Regal)

A week after this affair, a report that a large-scale rock salt mine was found in the eastern part of the Ars Territory near its border with the DeBell Territory has rapidly circulated around the Rosyth Kingdom.

beginning?” (Regal)

“Rock salt, huh……How wonderful.” (Almis)

I inspect the newly discovered mine.

You can sell rock salt overseas at an unusually high price.

It has a low price in the Adernia Peninsula because of its abundance there. However, there seems to be a shortage overseas.

The various states of Cretia and the Persis empire all have large populations so salt is a necessity.

“Goodness gracious, this is great, am I right?! Really! To think you wind find a salt mine. By the way, there’s a method with a high success rate for digging rock salt. In exchange for teaching you that….” (Ains)

Ains approaches me while rubbing his hands.

However, Ismere cuts him off.

“No, my lord. There’s no need to partner with this merchant. I am knowledgeable about salt mining after all.” (Ismere)

“Haha, an architect knowing mining methods? What the hell are you saying, girl who couldn’t find work so she had to flee to the Adernia peninsula?” (Ains)

“How about you? Aren’t you just a merchant? You actually wanted to trade in the orient but the competition was so fierce you ended up coming here to procure salt to trade, isn’t that right!?” (Ismere)

Tension builds between the two. I can see sparks going off.

“Hey, Qingming. Are mechants doing trade in the Adernia Peninsula losers?” (Almis)

Qingming smiles bitterly.

“I don’t know……It’s true a lot of people have come to the orient and found their fortune….However, that’s not much different for a company the size of the Ainsworth Company. Rather, isn’t he a winner if he profits from quickly entering a market with little competition? The international salt trade seems profitable, you know. I heard you could bring the salt from the Adernia Peninsula to the Persis Empire and sell it ten times the price.” (Qingming)

Ten times? Even if you factor the transport expenses, it’s still quite a profit. I see. It means the only loser here is Ismere, right?

“Ismere. Do you really know how?” (Almis)

“Yes. It’s only natural.” (Ismere)

Ismere puffs out her chest.

Well, if you know how to, then there’s no problem.

“And so, Ains-san. Let’s just leave the mining methods for another time…however” (Almis)

I get close to Ains ear.

“I’ll favor you as much as possible.” (Almis)

“That’s…..Thank you very much. I’ll consider this time as a service.” (Ains)

We laugh together.

“Uwaa, they’re making a creepy face…” (Ron)

Ron is taken aback.

“But this is truly good news!! Am I right, older brother?” (Roswald)

Roswald gets excited.

Well, it's true that this is good news but…

"There's a problem, huh…" (Almis)

"What problem is it?" Soyon tilts her head.

"Are you worried about taking a lot of salt? Something like the market price would go down? But we shouldn't be able to gather that much, right?" (Soyon)

Well, if it's something like gathering too much salt to the point that the price would go down, then it could be offset.

As one would expect, we wouldn't be able to gather that much, you know?

"This is originally DeBell Territory.

Tetra declares the problem.

"I've been thinking. Wasn't the eastern part of the Ars territory our DeBell Clan's territory from the very

Regal inquires after calling over his close aide, Bermet, and his close relative and second cousin, Gilberto.

"Now that you mention it, yes, that was formerly DeBell Clan property." (Gilberto)

"If I recall……It was territory seized by King Ferrum, am I correct?" (Bermet)

The two respond agreeably.

The eastern part of the Ars Territory.

This wasn't Ars Territory from the very beginning.

After seizing the Ars Territory, King Ferrum invaded the DeBell territory and seized this land from them. The territory was subjected to King Ferrum's rule for a long time. Then after that, all the former territories of King Ferrum, including those seized from the DeBell clan, was passed over to Almis.

That's why you could also say that the DeBell clan has a right to the eastern Ars Territory's ownership. Althought this is just a forceful interpretation.

The ownership of a territory, after all, is all about battle and actual effective control after all. It's because of this that nobody speaks of things like territorial disputes.

However, it's a different story when you discover a rock salt mine.

"A lot of our territory's population were taken captive there in King Ferrum's time." Rather than taken captive, they fled there. In this circumstance, it's a problem of the words' nuance.

What's important is that the eastern part of the Ars Territory was DeBell Territory from the very beginning and that a lot of their old citizens live there.

"It was impossible with King Ferrum because he was the one who took it….but, under the present circumstances, do you think we can ask for it back ?" Regal asks the two.

It's been five years since King Ferrum and Regal fought. It was a huge failure.

It was such a huge failure that Regal crapped himself while crying as he was defeated.

By the way, Regal was so embarrassed by what happened that you could get killed whenever he himself heard you talking about the incident. Therefore, that incident became a taboo in Regal's presence.

At that time, King Ferrum signed a secret non-aggression treaty with Regal while laughing his heart out. Should he decide to, King Ferrum could take out Regal DeBell whenever he wanted. However, there's a danger that he could get attacked from the rear. Should Regal DeBell mobilize, then all the little hangers-on would also mobilize.

With that in mind, King Ferrum suggested the treaty.

While he's at it, he also aims to agitate King Rosyth's distrust of Regal and his happy little followers. They weren't mobilizing soldiers even though they border the enemy after all.

At any rate, Regal was afraid of King Ferrum.

However, King Ferrum suddenly dies.

The one in the Ars Territory now might be the son of the Griffon, but he's nothing but a teenage greenhorn with these stupid rumors that he's the son of the God of War.

Taking the territory back would be a walk in the park.

"Alright! Let's file the protest, Lord Regal!! Why, it's probably fine to just invade and take it back when they decline! They are illegally occupying our territory after all!!" Gilberto requests in a large voice.

It might be a little high-handed but the rock salt mine was too valuable to ignore. Regal, too, was about to get on with that plan but….

"Please wait a moment!!"

Bermet puts a stop to it.

“Please calm down and think it over. That is the new territory invested to Almis Ars by King Rosyth himself. Therefore, it can also be considered that our connection to that territory has already been severed. So they too have a claim they can flex. It is Almis Ars who has effective control of the territory so it’s plain to see that King Rosyth will favor him in territorial dispute arbitration. I think it would be best if we don’t send a protest. Furthermore, we will lose credibility if we use force.” (Bermet)

Fundamentally speaking, there’s a tendency that the first to resort to force would be the one perceived as bad, no matter how just their reason might be.

It’s common to hear small disputes turn into full-scale armed conflicts. Two villages bordering each other would dispute a watering hole, then that dispute would turn into a skirmish between the two villages’ respective feudal lords, then, before you know it, everyone is killing each other.

Nonetheless, the custom in the Rosyth Kingdom states that territorial disputes should, in principle, be talked over and be settled under the arbitration of the king. The use of force is a poor plan.

Furthermore, while disputes in using watering holes can happen between two parties (TL Note: since they’re small and ambiguous), there’s no way you could argue that somebody stole your rock salt mine.

“Besides, I think that we should avoid having a hostile relationship with Almis Ars. (Bermet)

“Your reason is?” Regal asks Bermet. He thinks that they should just destroy Ars after all.

There are a lot of clans harboring dissatisfaction at Almis’ sudden rise after all so there’s no way they’d be defeated.

“You should think of it this way. Once you become king, this

country's foremost clansman would become Almis Ars. Establishing cordial relations is more desirable. Luckily, Almis Ars doesn't seem to have much ambition. He seems to be trying his best not antagonize us as much as possible." (Bermet)

"So we should watch out for him?" (Gilberto)

Gilberto looks at Bermet as if he's stupid. He has always thought of Bermet as a coward.

But Bermet just ignores Gilberto and presses Regal on.

"Do you understand? By the time you've succeeded to the throne, the country would be, without mistake, in a state of disorder. It's unavoidable but….there's a high risk that at that moment Almis Ars would invite King De Morgal inside the country. Therefore, Almis Ars should never be antagonized. On the contrary, it would be a very big plus for us if he becomes our ally, am I right?" (Bermet)

Regal becomes troubled.

For Regal, the plan he agrees the most with is Gilberto's plan. He is confident that he won't lose to Almis Ars. Although it's without basis, Regal firmly believes that he will win.

Having said that, Bermet has supported him up until now since the very start. Regal also acknowledges his skill. Bermet has never been wrong.

However…

"Those guys sheltered the refugees. Wouldn't you call that time an act of hostility?" (Regal)

"Certainly, that is correct but…" (Bermet)

"I cannot become friendly with that guy. That guy is an enemy. Therefore, I want to weaken him. By all means, I want to take back that rock salt mine but…does anyone have any good ideas?" Regal declares so.

Bermet lets out his inner thoughts with a huge sigh.

In politics, it's important to be able to be open to associate with various types of people. You also need to associate with someone you don't like.

Actually, when King Ferrum invaded, King Rosyth just left the DeBell Clan alone even if they never given even a little reinforcement.

This time, taking in just 200 refugees, should just be a small matter.

If you can find fault at something of this level, he wonders just how many enemies amongst the clansmen Regal will be stuck with after he becomes King….

Besides, it's not that simple to take away the mine.

They will most certainly lose in arbitration. Should they try to take it away by force, they will just be criticized and made to relinquish it.

Nonetheless, Regal could not be made to concede.

This should be the next best plan to do.

"If we ask for arbitration with King Rosyth, would the chance of success be low?" (Regal)

Bermet answers Regal's question.

"It's hopelessly low…Should we ask for arbitration, our reputation would most certainly fall." (Bermet)

"As far as we're concerned, the best method after all is nothing but taking it by force, huh." Gilberto triumphantly declares. He looks as if he's going to lead the troops at this very moment.

However….

"In that case, we will completely become violators of the law." (Bermet)

"Then what do you suggest we do!!" (Gilberto)

Bermet answers the question.

“It’s fine if we make them shoot the first arrow.”

Chapter 51

e, the shrieks continue to enter her ears. No matter how hard she tried to cover her ears, the shouts penetrate through the gaps.

“This is so bothersome….I want to quickly go home.”

“Don’t say that. This is our job, you know.”

“That’s right. We have to do this properly.”

Ron, Roswald, and Soyon are policing the border with the DeBell Territory.

The patrol force consists of 60 cavalry and 100 infantry. It’s a moderate scope.

There’s a reason they hand to send this much to patrol. That is… a pact with Regal DeBell.

From now on, in the case refugees came again, DeBell wanted the Ars Clan to intensify patrols so they could be caught.

In other words, they’re implying that they will overlook last time but the next time would be unforgiveable.

Almis doesn’t have any intention to completely antagonize the DeBell clan at present. That’s why we he conceded to the treaty and allowed the patrols.

“Captain! There seems to be a conflict at that direction between the DeBell Territory’s forces and a group that looks like refugees.”

“Is that so? Let’s head there immediately.” (Ron)

Ron and company gather together the light skirmisher soldiers and head out to the scene of the action.

The clear boundary that divides the Ars Territory and the DeBell Territory is a river. It's a river that's as high as a man's waist in its deepest points. Roughly at the eastern bank of the river is the Ars Territory while at the western bank is the DeBell Territory. (TL Note: I'm so confused right now that I even went back the previous chapters and checked if I made a mistake. If the eastern part of the Ars Territory was formerly DeBell Territory then wouldn't that place them at the west of the river? @_@)

Ron and company arrives quickly and conveys to the refugees:

"Citizens are barred from migrating arbitrarily. Be obedient and return peacefully to the DeBell Territory!!"

After hearing this, the refugees drop their shoulders and stop all resistance.

They did not immediately follow the DeBell soldiers straddling the border. But the story became different when it came to the Ars soldiers they were on the lookout for. The failure of their escape was decided.

From the very beginning, they went and fled after hearing the rumor that some people successfully fled to the Ars Territory. That the lord of the Ars clan accepted the fugitives.

Therefore, the shock was great. They couldn't resist and got arrested by the DeBell soldiers.

By all rights, they would have been taken back uneventfully and that would be the end of it.

However, this time is different.

“Hey!! What the hell are you doing!!”

Roswald shouts.

The DeBell soldiers begin to massacre the refugees in plain sight of Roswald. Furthermore, they didn’t do so by decapitating them.

They kill the refugees by hitting them, kicking them, breaking their bones, and various other horrible means. It’s as if they’re putting up a show for Roswald and the others.

“Hey!! Isn’t that just a kid!!”

The soldiers begin to mercilessly kill even the little children. Little by little they cut off their bodies. Ron hears the children’s screams

“……How cruel.”

The soldiers rape the women right before Ron and the others. They strangled. They plucked out the eyes for fun. They violated the refugees as if they were toys.

Soyon reflexively buries her face on Ron’s chest. However, even if she covered her fac

However, they won’t be able to do anything about them. The reason is they couldn’t come over to the DeBell Territory.

The Ars soldiers don’t have the power to challenge jurisdiction. If Almis were here, then everything could have turned out differently but……

Roswald involuntarily bites his lips. They can’t do anything.

It would only hurt if they stayed here any longer. It's time to decide to return.

"Save us!!!" They hear a little girl's scream. Roswald reflexively looks back.

The little girl is being held down by several men. She was around five years old……she probably hasn't even gotten her first menstruation.

Roswald's hand moves on its own. A spear leaves his hands and after a while hits the heart of the raping soldier.

From that point on, the Ars soldiers attacked the DeBell soldiers one by one and began saving the refugees.

"We got 'em, huh." (Bermet)

"As expected of my Bermet!!" Regal is in high spirits.

It's a case where they make the enemy do the first move because, after all, taking the mine away by force would appear untimely. It's only natural to mobilize the army for defense if the enemy made the first move.

After that, they would make their own move after the enemy guards escape. After they secure the rock salt mines, they would send an emissary to Almis Ars in the confusion to make peace. They would ask for the control of the salt mine in exchange for overlooking the pre-emptive attack.

By Bermet's estimate, they would probably be able to take about a third of the salt mine.

As expected, taking all of the mine would probably be impossible. The rock salt mine holds vast profits after all.

Nonetheless, there's a huge controversial point in the plan. People will hear of the scandal that they massacred refugees. Even if they were just refugees, people would fault you and argue that massacring them was overkill.

So, what do you do about that?

If they were criminals that deserved to die, then there won't be a problem.

In the DeBell Territory, there are a lot of villages that have defaulted on their tax payments many times over. In the DeBell Territory, the punishment for exceeding a certain number of years for tax defaulting is the death penalty.

Nonetheless, it's not like dead bodies will turn into gold coins. You can't get something from nothing so it couldn't be helped. So, the custom was to just let them off.

They'll be lent next year's seed rice so that they could pay their taxes next year.

However, this time, they went with not forgiving the defaulters. Furthermore, they moved them to a prison with murderers and robbers near the Ars Territory.

A few will be executed in the village while the others will be threatened. After this, they spread a rumor amongst them through the soldier guards' idle chatter.

That should they escape to the Ars Territory, they'll be saved.

After that, the guards would end up drunk by coincidence and would carelessly forget to close the lock.

With this, the operation was complete.

‘In short, they were criminals so we killed them when they tried to escape. What’s wrong with that?’

Something like that.

As for Bermet, he actually wanted to stop the heavy taxation…… but Regal’s relatives got in his way.

Something like “If the taxes went down, then our income would fall down too.”

He wanted to keep them away somehow but….Regal keeps on appointing his relatives so it couldn’t go well.

“Alright then, I’ll be heading out. Wait for the good news for me, Lord Bermet.” Said the head of those troublesome relatives, Gilberto.

Well, his physical strength was high and he is excellent and talented as a commander when leading a 100 person strong unit.

On the other hand you couldn’t say he’s cut out for leading an army bigger than that.

Having said that, he is less objectionable than the other relatives. They don’t have anything but strong spirit that says ‘Let us proceed to the battlefield with our own feet and take down the enemy.’ Other people, without doing their jobs properly, do nothing but play around to spend their time after all.

“Please be victorious. It would be a big problem after all if you fail.” (Bermet)

Gilberto is leading 320 troops this time. The opposing force probably has a 100 to 200.

Should he lose here, in addition to their despotic rule, rumors of their incompetence as soldiers would be born. He actually wanted to prepare a larger army but…if he brought an even larger army then it wouldn't seem as if it were an accidental encounter. This much is the limit.

"Fufu, if the difference between our forces is this much, then these would be enough. From what I heard, the enemy commander is nothing more than a little brat before the age of 20. There's no way he could win against me who's run about in numerous battlefields." (Gilberto)

"Don't be reckless. The enemy managed to defeat King Ferrum." (Bermet)

"Aren't you worrying too much? Lord Bermet!!"

Gilberto bursts into laughter.

"How would you take responsibility? Roswald." (Ron)

"Hey, don't just push all of it on me. Didn't you also do it!!" (Roswald)

Ron and Roswald starts to bicker as to who's responsible.

Ron argues that it was Roswald who did it first so he's responsible.

Roswald argues that since Ron joined in after him makes him responsible too.

Nonetheless, bickering here would just aggravate the situation.

“Tei!” (Soyon)

“ ‘Ouch!’ ”

The two crouches after they get hit on the head with a stick by Soyon.

“We couldn’t have helped but do it, don’t you agree? For the meantime, let’s bring everyone to a safeplace……after that” (Soyon)

It’s a sound argument. Thankfully, there’s quite a big mountain a kilometer from here that has a small village. It can be seen from here so walking there should be fine.

With this, the refugee issue is postponed for the meantime.

Next is…….

“For the meantime, all the DeBell soldiers have been either captured or killed so the enemy shouldn’t have received any information, right?….” (Ron)

Ron and the others could clearly see the DeBell army before them.

They number around 200 to 300. Even if you were a little off in your estimates, the army in the distance was clearly larger than Ron and company.

“How many soldiers did we bring again?” Ron asks Roswald and Soyon.

“To cover a large area, we brought around 60 cavalry. The infantry is around 100 while the bowmen, 10.”

“We also have 40 bomb spears. Almis told us to bring it for protection just in case.”

It’s unreliable war potential when against around 300 enemies.

“Should we escape?” (Roswald)

“If we escape then saving these people would become for naught. Besides, the village behind is also dangerous. Also….” (Ron)

At the moment Ron cut his words, he looks at the enemy.

“We would be at an advantage in the negotiation table if we win here right? Won’t we then be able to overturn the situation? (Ron)

“You think so? Don’t you feel like that’s fundamentally flawed?” (Roswald)

Roswald looks at Ron with doubtful eyes.

However, Ron is brimming with confidence.

“Well, if we escape here and went home, then we would really be the aggressors. We have to keep that in check.” Soyon expresses her agreement with Ron.

For Roswald, if they preemptively strike here and defeat the enemy who came for defense, wouldn’t it become an unnecessarily big problem? Though he thought that, since both Ron and Soyon both thought it was fine so he gave his agreement.

Furthermore, since they did went and save the villagers then they also have the responsibility to see it through.

“Then should we go with that and win? We only have a small force though…..” (Ron)

“It would be fine if we just use the cavalry, right?” Roswald suggests.

If they utilized the cavalry's mobility, then it should be possible to flank the hoplites.

However…

"While it's true that the weak point of the hoplite is the flank, ….if we went with that then could we match them in numbers?

Because hoplites have unusually long spears, they have difficulty in changing course.

Under those circumstances, they should probably be annihilated if the cavalry with the same number strikes them at the flank.

However, Ron and company only have 60 cavalry while the enemy numbered around 300. With that difference, there's a high possibility of having the tables turned on them.

They might win if they strike the enemy at the rear and not the flank without having to match them in numbers, but….

That would be impossible without the element of surprise.

"Hey, I thought of something. Can I say it?" Soyon proposes a plan.

After hearing it, Ron and Roswald both declare:

"'That's it!!!'"

in the forest while their arrowheads are made of stone.

The Ars army and the DeBell army faces each other as they stood on the opposite sides of the river.

Up until now, they still haven't contacted Almis.

They should have been able to contact him within several hours if they use a falcon. However, the only one who could use a falcon here is Soyon. And in order for the plan to succeed, Soyon is necessary ((so they couldn't make her soul-ride the falcon.))

Their formation is something like this:

■■■■■
■←Elite Unit + Gilberto DeBell Army

~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~
RIVER
~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~ ~

aaaaaaaa■←Elite Unit + Ron Ars Army
■■■■■ □□
aaaaaaaaa↑ (Soyon, the Bowmen, and the
Roswald + Cavalry Bomb Spears are behind the
infantry)

It looks like the overwhelmingly numerically inferior Ars army, because they spread out thinly to not be encircled and annihilated, would immediately pull out when you collide with them squarely.

Both armies immediately went into combat without particularly discussing anything first.

"We are double the size of the enemy. We'll take down these treaty-breaking cowards!!" Gilberto begins his advance.

The two armies collide in the middle of the river.

The river is unusually shallow that the deepest part reach only up to the lower part of the knee.

Naturally, the two armies fought only in the shallow parts of the river, that reaching up to the ankle.

You would have thought that the DeBell army, holding the size advantage, would immediately be tearing apart and destroying the Ars Army.

However, the battle is progressing evenly.

There are three reasons.

The first reason is the difference in morale.

The DeBell Army is army made with conscripted troops. Their morale is unusually low and their training lacking. Furthermore, all of them are peasants.

They've seen their fellow countrymen oppressed before their very eyes. To be made to fight someone who saved those countrymen is…

With this, it's unreasonable for them to increase their morale.

Furthermore, it's a huge factor that they don't have that much experience with war itself. They exchanged a secret agreement with King Ferrum and held a ceasefire after all.

Compared to that, the Ars Army are all recruited soldiers so their morale is high. A lot of them also were originally farmers so they too don't have much training. However, they have fought with the Ferrum Army countless of times so they are experienced in battle. Besides, there exists in them a great cause to free and protect oppressed people from tyrannical rule.

The second reason is the difference in equipment.

First, a third of the DeBell Army's shields are made of wood. The remaining two-thirds are bronze.

A third of their armor are made of wood while the remaining two-thirds are leather. Lastly, their spears are all bronze each with a length of 3 meters.

They seemed to essentially want to issue even longer spears, if you look at it. However, without sufficient skill, the spears would be unusable. Rather, if you consider skill, then the spears are still a little too long.

In the other party, the Ars Army's shields are all bronze. Their armors are all-leather too. The spears are four meters long with all spearheads made of iron.

The third reason is the bowmen responsible for rear support.

The DeBell Army's bowmen are only conscripted hunters. Their bows are small because they're only used for hunting

In the other party, the Ars Army's bowmen are elites tempered by Gram himself. Their bows are high powered long bows while their arrowheads are made of iron.

The Ars Army's bowmen are shooting down the DeBell soldiers one by one, but the DeBell Army's bowmen, in response, could not even send any kind of damage.

"Is the the right flank of the Ars Army a collection of monsters?" shouts a soldier of the DeBell Army's left flank.

All of the soldiers assigned in the right flank of the Ars Army are people under the influence of Almis' divine protection. While some of them got injured, not even one of them got killed. Even wounds that would normally be fatal are just ordinary wounds for them, after all.

Thus, little by little, the DeBell army's left flank starts to get routed.

Ron's efforts particularly stand out.

"Toryaaaaaaaaa!!"

Ron, while holding a 5-meter long spear with his left hand, cuts a spear that jumped out at his heart with a sword in his right hand and making it impossible to use.

Naturally, the DeBell Army's spears are concentrated against such a seemingly monstrous Ron but as a result a lot of them are rendered useless.

Having said that, the DeBell Army brought two times more soldiers. Gradually, they begin to obtain the upper hand.

"Push them back!! Kill them all!!"

Gilberto shouts with a large voice as they slowly pushed back the Ars Army.

As if they were getting pushed back, the Ars Army move to the center of the river and….

By the time anyone noticed, both armies became soaked with water that had gone from their knees up to half their bodies.

"Alright, it's our turn! Let's immediately go around and head for their rear!!!"

Roswald and his cavalrymen kick their horses in the abdomen crossing over the shallow parts of the river to go around their enemy.

Naturally, the DeBell Army tries to divert a part of their army to deal with them but….

"Hey, it's taking too long!! What the hell are you doing?"

"We apologize! Our feet are getting slowed down by the water and…."

The soldiers in the rear couldn't change course considerably. It was quite harder than normal because of the long spears.

Furthermore, this was the middle of the river.

Gilberto raises his voice to urge his soldiers on.

However, it had the opposite effect.

The riverbed is not flat but rugged because of stones. The water level is different, too.

It's obvious that if you hurried them to change course under these circumstances then the formation would break. Thus, here, the 40 bomb spears swoop down as if signaling the final blow.

The explosion occurs at the center making the formation collapse horribly.

Furthermore….

"It's temporary fire! It's just to deceive the eye!!"

As Soyon shouts this, a blaze rages from the explosion point. That however is not a real blaze. It's a sorcerer's illusion.

They pulverized some grass with a dazzle effect and mixed it with the gunpowder beforehand. It was originally a countermeasure for the refugees.

The grass' particles scatter when the gunpowder explodes. This will then enter a human body.

After that, the sorceress cam use the grass as an intermediary.

Dazzle sorcery is not omnipotent. It's an impossible charm. In other words, it's impossible to make it seem water would appear suddenly from an empty space.

However, they prepared a glass cup and it was surprisingly simple to make it seem full of water.

Thus, for the dazzle sorcery, against group targets, it should easily work if you made them lose their calm judgement.

Now, an actual blaze rages forth from the gunpowder's explosion and the target is a group of 300 people. Furthermore, they're in a

state of confusion.

In other words, it's the perfect timing.

Nonetheless, the affected side's sorcerer would soon see through it and cancel it. This is because she would get an uncomfortable feeling since she couldn't feel some hotness in the first place.

However, ((Soyon)) didn't really need a long time to deceive the enemy. Even if they get to understand that it's an illusion, the visual terror still remains.

Besides, once the formation breaks, just like a person's heart/spirit, it can't be immediately returned to the original.

"The enemy is considerably exposing their backs defenselessly, huh…..just as planned. Alright, cut them down!!!"

Roswald assaults the DeBell Army's rear.

The DeBell Army was completely routed.

The Ars Army did not pursue.

As expected, if they pursued and invaded the enemy's territory then they would be viewed negatively.

Even after all of this happened.

The Ars Army captured the DeBell soldiers one by one. They killed those who resisted.

Gilberto desperately ran for his life. To the Ars Territory.

It's not like he's fleeing to the Ars Territory because he wanted to.

The Ars Army went around to the back of the DeBell Army and routed them. With this, the Ars Army Infantry suddenly began to recover their strength and the DeBell Army ended up getting caught in the middle.

Gilberto was in disorder. From the very beginning, he was not a person of a caliber who could command an army more than a hundred troops.

He also didn't have that much actual combat experience. All he had was ((experience)) to the degree of subjugating fugitives and rebelling peasants.

Naturally, he probably couldn't even pretend to skillfully withdraw his devastated allies after being attacked by the enemy from the front and back.

He, like the other soldiers, recklessly fled, and without realizing it he was running to the Ars Territory.

"You're the enemy commander, right? I'll get that neck of yours!!!"

A man riding a horse chases him from behind.

Roswald chases after the enemy commander.

Roswald is running on horseback while the enemy is on foot.

In the blink of an eye, the distance shortens.

Roswald raises his spear……..then calms down.

This battle.

The one to blame was without doubt the DeBell Army but the error is ours.

No matter what the reason, the first one who fought was us.

In this situation, is it fine to shoot at the enemy commander?

This is without a doubt a close person to Regal. A celebrated person who became the leader of a whole army. By some chance, he could be his relative and a great clansman.

Roswald puts himself in the reverse standpoint.

In other words, the one who got pre-emptively attacked would be them and Ron gets killed in the revenge invasion.

In this situation, would I be able to forgive the enemy?

Would Almis allow that to happen?

No. It's unforgivable.

They would certainly ask King Rosyth to compensate for his life.

In other words, in this situation, killing this man would be exceedingly bad.

Conversely, if we let him live, then he'll be a card in the negotiations.

Roswald rotates the spear and points down its other end. He knocks down the enemy commander taking great pains to make sure he won't receive injury as much as possible.

The enemy commander splendidly kisses the ground.

Roswald descends from the horse and gently restrains the commander while contemplating whether he made the wrong decision.

"You've been captured!! Please be obedient unless you want to forfeit your life." He's probably a distinguished person so Roswald uses polite speech.

With this, Gilberto gets captured by Roswald.

Chapter 53

! We lack talented people right now, you know? I can't let you guys rest just because you lost a limb or two, right? I'll have you guys do paper work. It'll be something tougher than the battlefield so prepare yourselves, okay?" (Almis) (TL Note: Tsun tsun approach)

"What did you just do…." (Almis)

I hold my head after hearing Ron's report.

Just what the hell….

"I…I'm sorry….." (Ron)

"No, it's fine. Saving the fugitives was….well, it's bad but as a human, you did well, I think. Yes. You did well in that situation. However, why did turn the tables on them!!!" (Almis)

If we had just sent them an earnest apology then we could probably have make do but….with this didn't we just completely make them enemies?!

It still hasn't even been a week since the last refugee incident!!

"Well, Almis. Calm down. No matter how you look at it, the enemy's objective was the salt mine. We've secured it for the meantime so I didn't think that was a horrible plan. In fact, I think it was great given the huge difference in our military force."

Tetra sticks up for Ron.

Well, certainly that's correct. They will probably ask for the salt mine as reparations though.

"By the way, what did you do about Lord Regal's second cousin you captured, that Lord Gilberto?" (Almis)

"Well, he kept complaining at the beginning but he got drunk and fell asleep after we brought out some spirits for him to drink."

(Ron)

Hey, don't drink the liquor than an enemy brought out. Also, don't sleep!

Perhaps, he's actually a big-shot?

Nevertheless, Roswald made a good call huh. If he had killed Gilberto then for sure Ron's, Roswald's and Soyon's lives would be demanded and that would be next to impossible to reject.

Getting captured is without a doubt a scandal though. The DeBell Clan would probably want to cover it up.

It seems we obtained a good card.

"It can't be helped. Please be careful from here on out. By the way, …… the casualties are?" (Almis)

I feel a little nervous.

It was a battle so it would be normal for there to be deaths.

However…if possible I don't want anyone from the same village as me to die. They are people whose faces, names, and lives I know very well, after all.

"…….Deaths are 10 people. All of them are recruited soldiers." (Ron)

I see……

My nervousness settles down.

I might have been lacking as a leader but….still I want them to forgive me.

“However….” Ron makes a difficult face.

Soyon takes over for Ron.

“Three people are got injured – one in the right hand, one in the left leg, and another in the left hand. All of them got festered and rotten so I made the decision to amputate them.”

I see…

Well, that’s somewhat less objectionable to dying.

“Then let’s visit them immediately.” (Almis)

I rise up.

The three have already woken up.

Because they’re under the influence of my divine protection, their amputation wounds healed in the blink of an eye. However, it still couldn’t get back their lost limbs.

The three show disappointed faces.

“I’m sorry…..” (Injured Guy)

“I got humbly beaten…….” (Guy #2)

“To be not able to fight anymore for Almis-san’s sake…..” (Guy #3)

These guys……

Why are you worrying about that when you’re seriously injured!

I stroke the heads of these three people while feeling a mixture of happiness and a little dismay.

“Stupid!

The three’s faces light up. (TL Note: Yay! Work! Where’s mine?)

It seems my support wasn’t wrong.

Even so…..

This is hard, huh….

“Screw him!!!!!!! That brat!!!!”

Regal’s been hitting things for quite some time now. There are already more than 10 furniture and ornaments nearing their last moments.

Bermet exhales his heart out while looking at that scene.

While Regal may be angry at Almis, Bermet is angry at Gilberto.

Why the hell did Gilberto lose even though they’ve prepared for the inevitable scandal and everything was set up for him. Bermet tries to find an answer for nearly an hour.

In the end, he got captured.

If he had just died then, the balance of power would be better here and they would be able to demand vast amounts of money for indemnity…..but……

With this, they could not avoid having a scandal that the DeBell Clan has weak soldiers. What with they hopelessly lost even though they had a double size advantage, after all.

Although it couldn't be helped if you say it was inevitable since, except in number, they completely lose in equipment, experience, and command.

Without a doubt, the DeBell Clan has certainly weakened in its unifying power. It would be best if they prepare for seeing various clanmen switching sides to the Ars Clan.

Nonetheless….

"We can secure the rock salt mine."

From the very beginning, it was possible to secure it regardless if they won or lost.

If they had won, then there won't be problems in imposing effective control. If they had lost, they could take it away as reparations.

This time, they will go with demanding it as reparation.

They were the victims after all.

Well it was problematic that Gilberto got captured but…..

With this, demanding the whole salt mine would seem very tough. As such….

Bermet continues to ponder over the matter.

He works over the best policy to do about it.

It's desirable to settle out of court rather than go for arbitration.

They wouldn't want the scandal to propagate further.

Arbitration would be more advantageous for the opposing party so it couldn't be helped if they demanded favorable conditions for them in order to agree with settling it out of court.

"Lord Regal. I'll head for the Ars Territory. Please wait for the good news." Bermet heads out alone as he declares so to Regal.

"If possible, we don't want the matter to get bigger so let us just settle out of court and get this over with." (Bermet)

An old man declares such before me.

This old person seems to be called Bermet. His body looks like an old dried up tree but his eyes show a deep intelligence.

At the very least, he doesn't seem to be a stupid old man.

"Settlement, is it? I wanted to officially end this in arbitration, however." (Almis)

Since King Rosyth would favor me after all.

Arbitration would be more advantageous. If I shout the opposite party's injustices with a loud voice, the blame would move greatly

towards the DeBell Clan and the one towards mine would relatively weaken.

“Should we end up with arbitration this time, we will demand for the heads of the people responsible.”

You really hit where it hurts huh….

Did they know that I hold Ron and the others dear?

Even if you say arbitration would be more advantageous, I don’t know up to what extent I can reduce the penalties. It’s not like Ron and the others have royal blood in them nor are they great clansmen. They’re just commoners.

There’s no way some kind of punishment wouldn’t fall upon them. As expected, settlement would be the safer way to go.

Well. It’s going according to my assumptions.

“I see. Our territory is lacking in human resources, you see. Their deaths would be bad. Alright. Depending on the conditions, let us aim to end this in a settlement.” (Almis)

Bermet takes out a pen and parchment as I say so.

You could write old man?

“First, Condition No.1, we want to receive an apology from your side. The incident happened because you couldn’t discipline your soldiers properly.” (Bermet)

“I understand. My unworthiness has caused things to come to this.”

I will apologize so I had Tetra bring me the paper.

Settlement Conditions

I, Almis Ars, accept fault for this incident and apologize.

For the meantime, we complete the first line.

The next matter would be about money.

“Alright, as for the next condition……we demand rights over the whole rock salt mine.” (Bermet)

“That’s too much, right? Only a third.” (Almis)

Our opinions diverge.

Nonetheless, you have to persist here.

“Then let’s go with this. We shall surrender two-thirds of the rights to the mine to you. In exchange, we shall release Lord Gilberto, who we’ve taken as prisoner-of-war, without compensation.” (Almis)

Well, can this be a compromise?

As expected, demanding the ransom money would be….

Moreover, the other party won’t seem to assent to just a third of the mine.

“Releasing the prisoner is only natural. However, we would be troubled if you don’t compensate for the equipment. Our soldiers were pointlessly reduced because of you, didn’t you know?” (Bermet)

“I understand. Then let’s have the compensation for the equipment be paid in wheat. In exchange, the remaining third of the mines shall be ours. In addition to this, the one who will conduct the punishment of the fugitives shall be us.” (Almis)

With this, we would be able to keep face while allowing the other party to profit.

How about it?

Unfortunately for them, we have enough wheat. We could also afford to just return the equipment as is.

“…….Then that should be fine. We will accept.”

The Settlement Conditions are:

Almis Ars shall surrender two-thirds of the rights to the Salt Mine.

Almis Ars shall release the prisoner of war without ransom.

Almis Ars shall pay wheat as compensation for the equipment reparations.

With this, it ends.

We’ll settle with this for now.

“I see. And with that, you settled, am I right? You could have won if you had pushed for arbitration, you know?” (Rosyth)

“If I became even more indebted to you then you would probably force me to agree to succeed the throne.” (Almis)

King Rosyth laughs scornfully.

“What are you even saying after having this territorial dispute…if that brat becomes king then your position would become dangerous, you know? It’s not just that. Your family and your subordinates too. There’s a lot of cases since long ago that the victor in a war takes in the loser’s wife as a concubine.” (Rosyth)

Don’t tell me unpleasant things….

Jeez.

Even I know that much.

However, this is not a problem you could just conclude that easily.

Once you’ve decided then you wouldn’t be able to take it back. That’s why I’m troubled.

It’s not like I specifically want to become king.

However, I do want to marry Julia.

Even I don’t understand what I want to do.

“Well, that’s fine. You’ve really thought about this, huh. It’ll be troublesome if you’ll regret it after all. Then let’s talk about other things….didn’t you just have a crushing victory? It’s become the talk of the town, you know. That the 300 man-strong DeBell Army lost to the 160 man-strong Ars Army.” (Rosyth)

“It’s not like I was the one who won, you know. It was my subordinates’……..Ron and the others’ victory.” (Almis)

“The subordinate’s feat is the lord’s feat, you know. There are people who couldn’t use talented subordinates even though they

have them. Conversely, there are people who bring out the very best out of their subordinates, even out of the not so talented ones. I also put the value of your subordinates into you." (Rosyth)

Rosyth violently coughs after saying so. It seems his illness have completely progressed.

Raymond-san even said that he doesn't know whether he could still hold out for a year.

"By the way, what did they do to win? Teach it to me." (Rosyth)

"That's alright. However, I can only say as much as I've heard…." (Almis)

I speak of Ron and the others' strategy – the clever use of cavalry and topography. Honestly, I was surprised.

When the hell did the guys learn about tactics?

When I think back, the guys talk a lot with Bartolo….so they probably learned from there."

Well, even if they weren't hoplites, any branch of the army has the rear as the same weak point. Plus, it's easy to predict that the formation would crumble if you hurriedly changed directions in the middle of a river.

They were probably also lucky that the enemy used centuries (1oo men). If they had used legions (10,000 men), then it would take time for the cavalry to go around them.

It's a small number vs a small number so they were able to complete the tactic.

"I see. It's quite simple huh. I heard they defeated an enemy twice

their size so I was thinking what kind of clever scheme they used but….” (Rosyth)

“Clever schemes don’t work all the time after all. Simple tactics rarely fail so I think they’re more reliable.” (Almis)

As a certain famous general used to say, ‘Rather than hitting the enemy with a small force, bring a big army from the start and hit them with it.’

My duty is to make sure that we don’t get cornered into a situation where we have use something like clever schemes, don’t you agree?

“I see. There’s one thing I absolutely have to tell you.” (Rosyth)

“What would that be?” (Almis)

“The De Morgal Kingdom and the Gillbed Kingdom have agreed to a truce. It appears that it was to oppose the Rozel Kingdom but….it’s probably so they could advance south, don’t you agree. A war will happen before long.” (Rosyth)

The De Morgal Kingdom….I heard that Kingdom’s combined forces numbered around 10,000. If they mobilized to the limit, then they could probably reach around 30,000 soldiers.

“10,000 soldiers are coming, huh?” (Almis)

“I’m afraid so. That country can mobilize up to 30,000 soldiers. At the very least, they will probably mobilize around 15,000. However, the more soldiers they mobilize then the more time it’ll take. That country’s great clans are as powerful as ours. If they’re planning a large-scale war then adjustment is necessary. I fear we have us much as half a year. Until then, we’ll have to prepare countermeasures. We were caught off guard when that brat Ferrum attacked but……this time, we know in advance. We could probably mobilize around 7,000.” (Ferrum)

Well, excluding the great clans, the number of soldiers the Rosyth Royal Family could independently mobilize is around 4,000.

If you think it's necessary to fortify our borders with other countries…..then the number of soldiers this country can mobilize is around 6,000?

However, that figure would be dependent upon diplomacy.

It seems very grave, huh.

"Hurry up the fort construction. We should hold them back there at all costs." (Rosyth)

"I understand. Ismere is doing here very bests right now, you know." (Almis)

I also need to increase gunpowder production, huh.

It seems we would need a large quantity.

d Morning Glory. I tried it out on a mouse for now but just looking at him is quite frightening.” (Julia)

The conversation with King Rosyth ends and I exit the room. Outside, I find Julia waiting for me.

“It’s been a long time. Did you come to give me your conclusion?” (Julia)

I look straight into Julia’s eyes and answer.

“……Sorry. I’m still thinking about it. I’ll certainly give out my answer before the deadline.” (Almis)

Julia smiles.

“I see. Please. Hurry up if you can. By the way……can we talk for a while?”

Julia pulls on my hand.

“You, this isn’t the situation to be meeting with me secretly, you know.” (Almis)

“But if I didn’t do this then I won’t be able to talk with you, right?” (Julia)

I was brought to somewhere by Julia. This place seems to be her private room.

…….This isn't a plan to make me drink some strange medicine and make a fait accompli, right?

I look around Julia's room. It has various furnishings as well as sorcery tools here and there and it reeks of strange medicine.

It also has a considerable collection of books, too.

At the very least, this isn't like a room of a typical modern Japanese girl.

Although, I don't know whether this is the typical room of an Adernian Princess or a Julia-only thing…….it's probably the latter.

By the way, as for Tetra's room, there are 6 prototype wands, materials for making the wand, magical squares, paper and magical stones scattered about in great quantity. Although the person herself says she intentionally arranged the room as such, it's a lie since you'll always see her seemingly looking around for something.

Suddenly, a plant with a white flower catches my attention.

"Is this opium poppy?" (Almis)

"You're well informed, huh. Have you used it for something?" (Julia)

"No, I haven't. Although I've seen one growing in the forest." (Almis)

By the way, I was taught by Griffon-sama that you could use it as medicine.

Poppy has a pain killing effect so it's very excellent as medicine.

It's also commonly used as a medium for Illusion sorcery. This is the one we mixed in the gunpowder.

By the way, it's also quite excellent as a narcotic. It can put a lion to sleep.

"Is this female hemp plant?" (Almis)

"Well, yes. Though I wonder if, as medicine, poppy would be better? Hemp's hallucinogenic effects are light so they don't have much value in sorcery. Well, how about recreation, hmm …….don't think I want to smoke it though. You can live even without smoking it, right." (Julia)

In other words, it's marijuana.

They smoke a lot of this in the Adernia Peninsula….perhaps I should say the west. (TL Note: Lol author.)

That's because it's easy to cultivate and they think it's probably not that poisonous.

I think other people who smoke this should just do what ever the hell they want. However, I don't want any people important to me to be smoking this."

"This flower….It's quite beautiful although I'm not familiar with it. Is this also a narcotic? (Almis)

"Yes! Yes! It's something I got from the orient. I asked the Cretians,

but the hallucinogenic effect was amazing. I heard it's calle

Morning glory as a hallucinogen….

I've heard of these.

These are Jimsonweed.

They also have Datura in this world, huh. (TL Note: Datura is the genus of jimsonweed)

If they have poppy opium and marijuana then they naturally have these too.

Julia…..experimenting on animals is convenient but, please don't ever experiment on your own body, okay?

"Actually, see. I've been thinking about experimenting on people…..I've already understood the efficacy by using a dog as a sorcery medium, see. That's why the next thing is to take data from people but….." (Julia)

Julia puts jimsonweed on my hand.

"Won't you try this jimsonweed for me in your next war? It would only be something like making it into a fine powder and scattering it so a curse could be applied, see." (Julia)

"Well, that's fine but…."

It would probably be more effective than poppy, am I correct?

Illusion magic seemed to hold the key in territorial dispute after all. There's no problem if it's just checking.

The joke is on us if the wind suddenly changes direction though.

Suddenly, a lavender flower jumps into my eyes.

It's about the same as Julia's hair color.

However, this flower's shape is unlike a lavender.

As I grab the flower to look at it, it gives off a sweet smell.

What could this…..

"That, you see, is a new variety of a poisonous plant. It's something I recently got from the Adernia Peninsula. I raised this because I heard people who eat this get poisoned. I intend to experiment on what would happen if I increased the amount of the plant. Will it become medicine? Will it become poison? Furthermore, will it become a narcotic?……..Don't you think it's exciting?" (Julia)

I don't think so.

"Hmmm. Am I strange? I get all fired up and excited whenever I do investigations like these." (Julia)

This isn't because of something like those things entering the body in very small amounts, right?

Please let it just be Julia being abnormal. I'm begging you please. (TL Note: Author used hentai which means either pervert or abnormal)

"Hey, won't you try it if a war breaks out? After that, I want you to teach me the difference in efficacy compared to poppy." Julia rapidly closes in on me.

“Well, okay. If it’s just that.”

Julia hands me the flower after I say so.

“Thank you. Let me hear the results from you personally.” (Julia)

“You don’t have to tell me.” (Almis)

Julia comes closer to kiss me.

…….I receive it just like that without refusing.

She immediately separates from me.

“Good luck, okay?”

“I know.”

I say my goodbye to Julia and return to the palace.

“Hey, Almis. You kissed with Julia, am I right?” (Tetra)

“…..Sorry”

I apologize honestly.

However, how did she know? Women’s intuition is amazing, huh.

“It’s not like I’m angry. It’s not like I lost anything.” Tetra candidly says.

I've known Tetra for so long but…..as I thought, she's a strange one. I don't understand her sometimes.

Isn't it normal to be angry at this?

If you won't get angry then I'll sneak around and do the same thing again and again, you know.

"If you and Julia get married then you'll be making babies either way so something like a kiss should be nothing. It's fine to give her a kiss or two too if you do decide not to marry her. I'm very generous after all." (Tetra)

I want you to be jealous even just a little. Didn't you get in the way a long time ago when me and Julia got a good mood going?

What turn of events is this.

"I've already gotten Almis' number one spot after all. From now on, no matter what happens, the fact that I'm wife no. 1 is set in stone." (Tetra)

In other words, she's already married me so she has the leeway.

It's that sort of thing, huh.

"By the way…..right now, which side are you leaning on? Do you want to or not want to marry her?"

"I'm going with 6 against 4 but I wonder if that's big……" (TL Note: I don't know how to phrase this well. He means he's 60% leaning towards marrying Julia.)

My relationship with Regal DeBall got considerably worse because

of this time's affair. If things continue as is, then it would become as King Rosyth said. I'll have to consider a future where I'll get purged after Regal becomes king.

No, that's just an excuse, huh.

While doing things like kissing with Julia and embracing each other, I, by all means, have come to want her.

Yes, it seems like I'm just looking for excuses, huh.

"I actually think that it would be good if you became king. Ron and the others said so too." (Tetra)

"I know. That's why I couldn't consult with them." (Almis)

Those guys will definitely not object. Rather, they'd probably greatly welcome it. They would also probably die gladly for the sake of my happiness.

That's why I couldn't ask them.

I don't want them to die after all.

Plus……there's something worrying me a little.

"If you become king, a lot of people would be saved. Is this reason not fine?" (Tetra)

"You're overestimating me. My arms are not that wide." (Almis)

I let out a sigh.

It will become the seventh month tomorrow.

There's four months left until the deadline Julia gave me…… Until then……

"Lord Regal. You should punish Gilberto. If you don't we won't be able to instill discipline to the other retainers!!!" (Bermet)

Bermet raises his voice.

Regal deals with it.

"Wait wait, he got defeated just once. Can't we just overlook it this time?" (Regal)

"He fought the enemy with twice their soldiers but he still lost, you know? That battle was something that he shouldn't have lost. This loss has caused a large part of the neutral faction to move to the Ars faction. Even within our faction, there's a lot who have switched and are thinking of switching. We cannot have him not take responsibility for this!!" (Bermet)

At present, it has become that a third of all the great clansmen are in the Ars Faction while the remaining two-thirds are in the DeBell faction.

For a long time, the Ars Faction wasn't very collected and was just composed of nothing but people who were once in the DeBell faction but wouldn't have hesitated to leave and people who are pretending to be Ars supporters but are actually neutral. However, with their faction's victory this time, their unity had solidified at once.

The war continues in the Adernia Peninsula and, to the great clansmen, their subordinate's worries are how they could protect their own interests.

Naturally, the fact that the Almis Ars Clan broke the law still exists. But that is not that big of a problem if compared to their strength in war.

Furthermore, the reason they broke the law was under the pretext of protecting oppressed peoples.

Compared to that, Regal DeBell oppressed the people and got defeated even though they had twice the forces.

If they had won then the fact that they had oppressed people would not have become a big deal but……now that they've lost it's become a big problem.

At present, people voicing their doubts against Regal DeBell's succession to the throne are getting more vocal.

It's become a big problem for Regal who's aiming for the throne.

"However, Gilberto is my second cousin. Wouldn't it be fine to just forgive him this time?" (Regal)

Bermet clenches his fist tightly.

Regal is extremely generous to his relatives.

Regal will grant people important posts even if they don't have great accomplishments so long as they're relatives. If they made a big mistake, Regal wouldn't blame them.

Conversely, Regal is harsh against non-relatives, never giving them any important jobs. If they made even the smallest of mistakes then

they'll immediately get punished.

Right now, the only person holding an important post with no blood-relation to Regal is Bermet. All of the retainers without blood-relation to Regal are all by Bermet's recommendation.

Because of this, the retainers don't show any ambition to obtain great achievements.

By all means, Bermet wants to cut off the influence of Regal's relatives before he becomes king.

This time the damage is great but, conversely making use of it ought to strengthen their camp.

Bermet, for this reason, vehemently blames Gilberto.

After Gilberto loses his standing, Bermet intends to replace him with a capable person who is not Regal's relative.

However, Regal is sticking up for Gilberto so it couldn't go well.

"In the first place, isn't there also problem with you, Lord Bermet, the one who made that kind of plan?

A relative retainer utters so.

Voices of agreement to that declaration rise.

Certainly, Bermet's plan was a little dangerous and had a lot of demerits. However, had that plan not pushed through, Regal would, open and above board, end up breaking the law.

In addition to that, there's no mistaking that it won't be funny if they lose.

Therefore, Bermet is not at fault.

However, to Regal's relatives, those things don't matter.

"Well, well. Let's just divide the blame and call this one a draw." Regal declares so to soothe his relatives.

Just like that, Bermet also ended up taking some fault.

Regal didn't have bad intentions. He really did that just to soothe his relatives. He just ended up choosing the wrong words.

However, he did not notice the mistake, nor the fact the it was induced by his relatives.

Bermet breaths out a sigh from the bottom of his heart.

–

Chapter 55

re in the Griffon's den…….inside that which the Griffon calls castle, I am((talking with the Griffon)). (TL Note: Unsure so I just winged it)

Just like that, time passed and it became the eleventh month.

The fort I entrusted to Ismere got finished and we managed to train the soldiers up to a useable level.

The ruined agricultural lands have finished recovering and about a third of the villages have begun using crop rotation system.

The remaining two-thirds were a little difficult to persuade but….once the results come out then they'll probably assent.

The paper mass production system and the salt mine equipment are both in order. We've begun mass production.

The Cretian merchants, including Ains-san, have been buying paper and salt in large amounts so the Ars' Territory's coffers are flush with money.

We won't seem to be having hardships even with the debt payments.

…….although I do regret about the salt mines.

So then, the problem is…..there's only three days remaining until the deadline.

"What do you think I should do?" (Almis)

“You’re asking me that?” (Bartolo)

Bartolo makes a dubious face.

“Wouldn’t it be better to ask your own subordinates?” (Bartolo)

“If there was a possibility that I’d become king, those guys would, without fail, completely support it so…….I can’t use them as reference, you know.” (Almis)

In any case, I know without asking.

Besides, those guys completely don’t understand why I’m worried about you guys getting hurt, don’t you agree.

Also, I have some reservations in consulting them.

That’s were Bartolo comes in.

I heard he seems to be a retainer knows a few information when I asked King Rosyth.

He seems to have abundant life experiences so I thought I might try asking him.

“I heard a lot about you from King Rosyth so I know some, okay? I’m in the Rosyth faction so support the Ars faction….however, well….I think you should decide according to your intentions.” (Bartolo)

I can’t decide with that, huh….

“If I recall correctly, you were worried that a war might break out, was it? Well, certainly the possibility of that is high but……it’s not like it’s certain that war would break out, am I right. If you do it skillfully, then war just might not break out.” (Bartolo)

Certainly.

It's not like I had revelation that a war would break out.

In the end, it's still a question of possibility.

Whether I could make Regal DeBell agree depends on if I could skillfully make them powerless.

However, that is exceedingly hard to do, right?

Right now, the Ars Faction is made up of a third of the powerful clans.

In other words, the remaining two thirds will turn into enemies.

Furthermore, it's quite doubtful that those one third would reliably support me as an ally.

Moreover, the De Morgal Kingdom is not hiding their ambition to head south. That country would certainly take advantage of the chaos and come to invade.

"It's no good….I can't decide."

I hold my head.

"Well, it's something you wouldn't want to regret after all."

Bartolo stands up as if saying that there's nothing left to say anymore.

Deep within a huge forest.

In a place called the Forbidden Forest in the deepest parts of the Romano forest.

The fabled Griffon's territory.

The

"I see….In other words, you want to copulate with the bitch with the lavender colored breed called Julia. However, Julia is the daughter of the pack's alpha so to copulate you need to become the alpha. However, a lot of them wouldn't be able to stomach the newcomer becoming the alpha so there's a high possibility that conflict would arise from that. That's why you're worrying, right?" (Griffon)

"That's somewhat correct but……..could you please sugarcoat it just a little? What's up with copulate?…..at the very least use something like marry or something. Also, the way you said it made it sound like I'm worrying over falling in love with a female dog or monkey…." (Almis)

Something like bitch, copulate, pack, and alpha….there are better ways to say them, right?

Something like woman, or hair color, or country, or king. See?

"This is the fault of 'Divine Protection of the Divine Word" 's translations. From the very beginning, both you humans and other animals are made from the same matter and carry a soul so I couldn't understand the necessity to expressly make distinction with words. Also, for me, dogs, monkeys, humans, all of them are just the same."

Well, from the point of view of a half-falcon half-lion beast treated as a god, it's probably all the same. (TL Note: Unsure so I just winged it)

"You want to copulate with the bitch called Julia, right?" (Griffon)

"Well, although I'm bothered with how you said it…..yes, that is correct." (Almis)

When I answer, the Griffon snorts from the nose.

"Then just do it. What's the problem with that?" (Griffon)

"I just said that a war might break out with that, right? There's a possibility that Ron and the others could die, too." (Almis)

The Griffon's eyes opens wider. Somehow, it seems displeased.

"Ron and the others can decide for themselves whether they want to help you. You don't need to take part in that. I can't understand the reason why you're worrying about the internal discords of your fellow pack animals. You should just fight and win, right? Or does it seem that you will lose?" (Griffon)

"No…..I think I probably could have won from the very beginning but……" (Almis)

The Ars Territory's population is 30,000. The Crown Territories are around 70,000. Combined, they are 100,000. The other clans' territories' population are around 70,000.

From the very start, I could have won.

However, a lot of people would have died.

"A long time ago, didn't you say to me that humans who could kill a member of the same species without feeling anything about it was a deviant, right?" (Almis)

"Yes. I said that. Creatures called humans are creatures that live in

packs. There would be a problem if a member of a pack kills one of his comrades and not bear feelings of guilt. In that case, it would become difficult to protect the laws in that pack. The deviant cannot live in the pack. Living after that would be fatal for a human. However, you are different." (Griffon)

"……What is different?" (Almis)

The Griffon speaks.

"You are a leader. You impose the law. You are not a member of a pack, rather you are an existence that moves it. You are an existence exempted from the rules of the pack. Therefore, it doesn't matter if you are a deviance. Rather, you should be a deviant. If not, you would not be able to protect the pack from outside enemies. You have become a leader so should leave behind the biggest effect on the pack. To do that, you must not be worried about any kind of sacrifice. Do you understand?" (Griffon) (TL Note: WoW.)

"……"

The Griffon continues to add:

"Casualty? What's the problem there? They are just other people with no relation to you. Besides, you have killed to stay alive and protect the children up to know, am I right? After such a long time, hasn't that become irrelevant?"

"I think we cannot talk of my desires and the problem of taking away life at the same level…"

"They're just the same. The same as killing people."

The Griffon laughs scornfully. He looks at me straight in the eye.

"Listen. Suppose, you have something that you must not do, then it should be something you can't do in the first place. However, God has given us the choice to kill another of the same species for the sake of our own desires. Thus, it's fine if you do so. After taking over a pack, lions kill the child of the old leader. Fish and the like forget about their children and end up eating the very child they

have given birth to. And because of those, has heaven given them punishment? Isn't there none? Thus, it's fine if you do so." (Griffon)

The Griffon speaks indifferently.

"We have the privilege to do whatever we want……We are given freedom. We have the freedom to rebel against irrationality before our eyes. We also have the freedom to accept it. This world (plaything) exists for your sake. That's why you should just do as you like. It's fine to play humbly. It's also fine to play gaudily. You also have the choice to destroy it with your own hands." (Griffon)

The Griffon looks at me persuasively.

"Don't be afraid. Be prepared. Nobody has the right to admonish you. The only things this world has are winners and losers. You can just keep on winning. You can just do as you like. I did as I like. A very long time ago, I did things like pushing off a cow over the cliffs just for fun, blowing off a mountain, and killing and eating humans. What's wrong with that? Listen, there's no duty in strength. What's there is only privilege. Pierce your own ego. If you want a woman, just take her away. If you want territory just take it. If you want money get it. If you want peace, seize it. What's wrong is not being able to choose a strong person as a patron and not being able to protect your own things with your own power." (Griffon)

The Griffon's sermon won't end.

"A human's life is much shorter than mine. There's no time to start over. That's why you should do things you won't regret. You would regret dragging unrelated people with you for just a moment but you would regret letting go of the bitch until you die." (Griffon)

"That's…." (Almis)

Certainly, I don't want that.

Just thinking about Julia getting taken away by Regal DeBell makes me want to vomit.

“Let’s put the alpha’s social status and copulating with the bitch on the left side of the balance scale. What you should put on the left side of the weighing scale are not the lives of un-related humans. You shall choose between the regret of letting the bitch get taken away or the regret getting unrelated people dragged into the matter and killed. Now, which side do you lean on? Well, it would seem that you have finally arrived at your answer.” (Griffon)

“……”

I close my eyes and think.

I remember Julia’s figure.

Her smile, her body. Our fun times together. All of them are things I don’t want to part with.

And then, I open my eyes.

“Thank you very much, Griffon-sama. I’ve come to a conclusion. I’ll be off.” (Almis)

“Yes. Go forth. Make sure you won’t regret it.” (Griffon)

I ran.

It will take about a day to leave the Griffon’s territory.

I’ll barely make it to King Rosyth’s palace if I rode a horse after coming out of the forest.

I must make haste.

“You barely made it, huh. So, have you made your decision?” (Rosyth)

King Rosyth hosts me even though it’s midnight. He probably wants to hear my response already.

On his left side is Raymond, and on his right side is Julia.

“First. I apologize for making you wait five months for my answer. I humbly apologize. And, thank you very much for giving me the honor of your time. In addition to that, I understand that this might be a shameless request but…”

I bow deeply to King Rosyth.

“Please give me Princess Julia.”

Then I immediately face Julia.

Julia widens her eyes. She puts her hands over her mouth in surprise.

“Julia, I’ll make you mine. You won’t mind, right?” (Almis)

“Yes!!” (Julia)

Julia jumps to embrace me.

I receive her and the force takes me down.

This girl, she's quite heavy, huh.

"Almis!!!" (Julia)

Julia tries to kiss me with her rosy lips but I hold her back with my hand.

"Oi, let's leave that for later….."

We're being watched by King Rosyth and Sir Raymond, see.

Julia finally realizes the situation and separates from me immediately. She's completely red in the face.

"It's fine to continue, you know?"

"We'll watch over you, see."

The two say while grinning.

These two really are brothers. Both have a bad personality.

I get up and sit on the bed.

King Rosyth gets serious after seeing me make a serious face.

"Let me hear your second conclusion. If I refuse, what will you do?"

“I’ll kidnap Julia by force. After that, I’ll ally with King De Morgal to take down this country.” (Almis)

King Rosyth’s face twitches to my serious reply while Julia blushes further.

“That was a joke but it was good that I didn’t say I refuse. Then the next item, Can you tell me the reason why you suddenly changed your mind?” (Rosyth)

“The reason is….No, I wanted Julia from the start. That’s why it’s fine even if I become king. Also regarding kingship….I started to think becoming one might not be such a bad idea after all. If I had the authority called kingship then I’ll be able to save a lot of people. I’ll also be able to reward Ron and the others. However, ….I didn’t have the resolve.”

I put together various reasons. Like people will die and my companions would get hurt.

However, that was wrong. I was just scared. Of the excessively huge power.

Since I became a great clansman, the way I saw people around me changed. The me right now can kill a people with just a stroke of my hand. Just like that Regal DeBell.

If I become king, I’ll get power even greater than that. I became scared that because of that I’ll change.

I was just scared.

In a word, I was just an indecisive coward lacking resolve. Honestly, Regal DeBell might have been less objectionable than me.

Furthermore, I was afraid of the Divine Protection of the Great

King.

I couldn't help but worry that that thing might change something inside of me and repaint me.

But I can't keep on running away forever right?

If I kept this up, then I would surely regret it. That's why I'll have to face this power, and this divine protection and make my decision.

I'll take the step to achieve that and get Julia. I'll use that power for my sake only.

To get Julia, I'll massacre everyone that stands with the DeBell Clan.

This is where I draw the line. (TL Note: I hate the word Kejime)

I'll stop being scared anymore and wield that power.

At this rate, my comrades, including Tetra, might all be taken away by that piece of crap.

That's why I'll get him before he gets me.

Then I'll show him how to manage power.

"Well, you've really thought this through huh. So, who was the person who pushed you to make this final step?"

"It's not a person."

"It's the Griffon, huh. Well, fine. I'm happy you've decided to become king. I'll take this opportunity to ask but…..what do you want to do when you've become king?"

What I want to do.

It's not like I hate luxury but it's not like a love it too. For women, I'm happy with just Tetra and Julia.

Power, however…..

"How about unifying the Adernia Peninsula?" (Almis)

You have to take peace by force. You told me that, right Griffon-sama?

"Alright. The problem is the timing of the announcement, wedding, and the enthronement. Do you have a date in mind?" (Regal)

"It's convenient to finish everything at once, yes? Let's end this in two days." (Almis)

Usually, the wedding ceremony is done several months after the announcement. The great clansmen too would need some time to prepare for their presents, after all.

Well, Tetra and I got it over with immediately after the inheritance battle with King Ferrum, however.

"Regal DeBell would probably have no time to mobilize his troops in two days. After the enthronement, we should just immediately assemble the army and go after and destroy all the great clansmen who didn't attent the enthronement ceremony. How about it?"

“Well, that’s pretty much it. If I had to change anything, it would be that we should mobilize the soldiers right before the announcement.”

It’ll probably be a bloody wedding.

“The time period is as soon as possible, yes? As for me, I want to hand over the throne to you while I’m still alive. I won’t be able to die without peace of mind after all. That will also give you peace of mind, yes?” (Rosyth)

“I agree King Rosyth. It’s more convenient when father-in-law is still alive. However, regarding the time period…….” (Almis)

“It’ll be hard without having achievements? Is that what you want to say?” (Rosyth)

I nod.

I haven’t made any visible achievements since I became a lord.

There’s a problem in succeeding to the throne at this stage. If possible, I want to become king after I obtain a great achievement.

“Also, I want to quickly put the country back in order after immediately suppressing the rebellion. In order to do that…..I think it’s necessary to remove all the members of the DeBell Faction in one clean sweep. That’s why I think we should do it after some maneuvering.” (Almis)

I don’t have the courtesy to give them battle after succeeding the throne. It’s fine to just grab victory from the start.

“I see. I too am also worrying a little about your achievements……I actually have a suggestion, would you like to hear it?” (Rosyth)

“What would that be?” (Almis)

“The De Morgal Kingdomwill attack this country before long. I’ll grant you the right to command of the whole army so beat them.”

(Rosyth)

That's a great idea…….Well, that's the best approach when speaking of creating achievements but….

Isn't the difficulty level a little high?

"We anticipate their army would number around 15,000 front and back. Our country can mobilize 4,000 to 5,000." (Rosyth)

"I don't remember seeing that number mobilized during the time of King Ferrums so……will we be alright?" (Almis)

At that time, the diplomatic maneuvering was horrible.

There's a significant chance that we'll get diplomatically maneuvered this time too. The DeBell Faction would probably not lend their military power, am I right? All the more, if I become supreme commander of the army.

"There won't be problems. If our country gets invaded by the De Morgal Kingdom, then next in line would be the Eville Kingdom and the Belvedere Kingdom. We secured promises that we won't get attacked by both countries. Furthermore, this time, we know that the enemy is coming so the we could mobilize easily. I can gather about 5,000 in the territories I directly control. You have an 800 strong standing army, yes? We have to conscript the another 1200." (Rosyth)

1200, huh…….

If you ask whether we could, then yes, we can.

Besides, there's no reason we couldn't put together military recruits

and conscripts and we haven't said so either.

We would probably be able to gather provisions and equipment without much opposition if we declared the they be arranged here.

"With this, it's become 7,000. We can expect around 500 from the great clansmen. In other words, we'll have 7,500. It might be tough but…….we'll have to make do. Are you confident we can do this?" (Rosyth)

"……That depends upon the tactics, yes? By the way, how much cavalry does father-in-law have? I have a hundred." (Almis)

"There was a time when we wanted to organize one. However, we weren't able to train that much numbers. It was easier to make 300 hoplites than 100 cavalry after all since the costs would pile up. For now, we have around 50 cavalry for patrolling the territory." (Rosyth)

Hmmm… That's too little. This is hard, huh. Although this would depend on whether the enemy would have cavalry.

"The De Morgal Kingdom borders the Rozel Kingdom. The Rozel Kingdom is a Gallic kingdom. They have cavalry in a considerable scale. So in order to oppose that, King De Morgal will probably leave behind his cavalry within his territory." (Rosyth)

In other words, he'll only bring along a few of them and if we're lucky maybe none at all.

I wonder if the plan could now stand with that.

"For the meantime, let's postpone this talk." (Almis)

"I agree. The problem now is maneuvering. What do you intend to do?" (Rosyth)

I explain the maneuvering against Regal DeBell.

A smile floats on the face of King Rosyth.

“I see. You’re quite the devil yourself, huh.” (Rosyth)

“I haven’t decided on a specific method, okay? It’s absolutely necessary for my faction to grow. As for that…..” (Almis)

“Naturally, I’ll cooperate with you. We’ll have to limit the people who knows this operation to make you king. The only people who shall know this would be our Rosyth Clansmen, that shall play a central part in this operation, the clansmen that we could fully trust like Bartolo. Don’t tell operation this to anyone. Be careful even of your subordinates.” (Rosyth)

We’ll be at a disadvantage if information leaks out after all…..

It can’t be helped.

“Uhm…….I know where talking about the maneuvers but…..there’s one thing I absolutely need to tell you.”

Julia raises her hands.

Naturally, I concentrate my gaze to Julia who’s sticking to my arm right now.”

Somehow it kind of feels like I’m being watched too.

“Um……it’s about the divine protection but…….for the meantime, why don’t you tell us yours Almis?” (Julia)

“That’s fine. Or should I say I shall speak of it.” (Almis)

I explain my divine protection to Rosyth and Raymond.

The two show a surprised expression.

“Divine protection huh…..the ones I’ve seen, including Julia’s have become 5 cases, huh.” (Rosyth)

“At any rate, you hold quite the useful divine protection.” (Raymond)

I feel awkward when you tell me that.

In any case, it’s efficacy have been horribly dissed by Griffon-sama, after all.

“Then, this is what I wanted to say, see….actually…..”

Julia shows a little troubled expression.

“Regal DeBell also holds the Divine Protection of the Great King, you see……” (Julia)

Eh?

Really?

here a lot of particularly nasty episodes concerning fairies?”

“To say the least, I just can’t imagine seeing that man having the caliber of “Great King” but….are you absolutely sure you’re correct?” (Rosyth)

King Rosyth just said something quite mean. Although, I do agree with him.

Is the “Divine Protection of the Great King” actually not that rare?

It’s not just me who has it? Or should I say, you could actually obtain such thing?

Now, that feels kind of depressing huh.

“Yes. My ‘Divine Protection of Perception’ is quite accurate after all. It’s definitely the same as Almis’ ability……..that of raising the physical abilities depending on the number of people who believe in you as a leader. It also raises the physical abilities of people who trust you and have high loyalty to you as a ripple effect. They’re the same, yes?” (Julia)

(TLN: Pengu Trans translated 看破の加護 as DP of Perception. While I lean on the side of Clairvoyance, (or more preferably ‘the Diving Protection of Seeing Through Shit’ lol), I’ll just use their term.)

“Does that mean that Regal DeBell is actually a big shot without us knowing it?” (Almis)

If that really were the case, then I’ll be so disillusioned.

“Hmmm, I wonder. At the very least, the people of the DeBell territory ((do consider, or should I say)) are afraid of him as their leader. Look, didn’t he just boast that he killed a bear about three years ago?”

I see, it’s enough that they consider you as their leader. It’s not related at all to the person’s caliber, huh.

Well, the people of a population probably don’t know the character of their leader anyway.

It’s only natural.

“Nevertheless, why does a person like Regal DeBell have such a divine protection?….” (Almis)

“Beats me. Fairies are whimsical creatures after all.” (Julia)

Fairies?

“Hey, Julia. When you said fairies….did you mean the mischievous fairies?” (Almis)

In the Adernia Peninsula, fairies exist in folklore. They say fairies are mischievous and do things like pulling pranks on people.

If you’re having either an unusually lucky or unlucky day, they say it’s the work of fairies

If it suddenly rained, it’s because of the fairies.

Those kind of things.

“Right, right. I looked up a lot of things about them and there was that kind of theory. The evidence is laughter. Haven’t you heard them? Specifically, children’s laughter. ((You’ll hear them)) by the time you’ve been given a divine protection…” (Julia)

Children's laughter, huh.

I don't know. That might possibly be true, however……

It's been so many years ago when I noticed I had the Divine Protection. I've probably forgotten about that.

"Is that so? Almis doesn't know, huh. I've heard them many times, you know. I could already hear them a little when we first met, you know. Maybe it depends upon the person whether if they could hear them. Well, anyway, I think the fairies' true form is that of children. When you speak of fairies, you kind of think of a childish impression, after all." (Julia) (TLN: Julia, are you sure you're not just high?)

In other words, they only call them fairies as a matter of convenience.

Now that you said it, didn't Griffon-sama often spoke of "those brats".

Well, it's certain that it's a child-like existence.

"Weren't t

"Certainly……. there were things like that."

There were as many episodes concerning fairies as the number of stars in the sky. All of them about fairies pulling pranks on people.

These episodes can be classified into four types.

Those warm and fluffy stories.

Those moral lesson-like stories where the person gets deceives and loses everything but becomes aware of the importance of their bonds with family.

Also, those stories where people go through terrible hardships.

And the last one…..stories where people die because of the fairy's mischief.

Let's give one concrete example.

A long time ago, there was a man.

This man hopelessly fell in love with his childhood friend from the village. However, his childhood friend ended up getting married to the village chief's son.

He was devastated.

And then, a fairy appeared in his dream and said:

'Tomorrow, go deep inside the forest at night and shoot the tree growing at the top of the mountain as the soon as the sun rises.'

In the beginning the man ignored this, but the dreams kept coming every day.

One time, the man finally did as the fairy instructed.

The man shoots at the tree at sunrise.

At the same time, a rabbit jumps out and get hits by the arrow.

Since then, the man kept following the fairy's instructions.

Because of this, the man becomes wealthy and gets popular too.

However, the only one in his heart is his childhood friend.

One day, the fairy tells him:

‘Your childhood friend was threatened to become the wife of the village chief’s son. You should kill the village chief’s son. After that, you should just run away. There are gold coins buried under the grape tree at the back of your house. With that money, you could run away.’

The man did as the fairy told him. He killed the village chief’s son. The village chief and his wife witnessed this, so he killed them too. He then proposed to his childhood friend that they elope.

However, his childhood friend resisted.

The two argued when suddenly the childhood friend gets stabbed by a knife and dies.

He escapes in the confusion and returns to his home to dig up what’s under the grape tree.

There he finds a sack.

However, what he found inside were not gold coins….

but cow feces.

The story ends there.

In a word, it's a story with a moral lesson. That in this world, there are a lot of things that are too good to be true so don't get deceived. However…..

Was it really necessary for it to get that horrible?

And what's really scary here is that there's nothing in it for the fairy that appeared in the story.

In other words, fairies, just as a prank, get people to kill other people.

"I really don't get what fairies are thinking. I was somehow well liked by them too." (Julia)

Which reminds me, this person has a lot of divine protections, huh.

"It's probably fine to not be that cautious of that Regal's divine protection, okay? Almis' divine protection is more than a match for him. You should also just ignore about the fairies for now. In the first place, it's just a hypothesis, right?" (Rosyth)

We stop at King Rosyth's suggestion.

We've gone off topic, huh.

"Then, I'll be going home for now. Let's talk about the strategy next time when we have Bartolo with us." (Almis)

"Yes. Let's do that. Then come here three days later. Remember to keep this a secret, okay?" (Rosyth)

I salute King Rosyth and leave the room.

However, Julia stops me.

“Wait! Take me with you.” (Julia)

“N? Wouldn’t that be a problem?” (Almis)

Even if we tried to hide it, it’ll immediately be known if Julia disappears from the palace. It’ll cause an uproar, right?

“I know, but…… I want to have a talk with Tetra, so……” (Julia)

Julia looks at King Rosyth.

“Just do as you like. I’ll say something like ‘Julia is away from the palace for a special ceremony. The location Is a royal family secret so I cannot disclose it.’” (Rosyth)

In other words, I could take her with me.

“Jeez…..Then can I borrow a carriage, King Rosyth?” (Almis)

“Yes. Since it’ll probably cause a misunderstanding if the two of you get seen riding on a single horse together. Also…” (Rosyth)

King Rosyth cautions me.

“While it’s fine for you to conduct some maneuvering, do not yet fully antagonize Regal DeBell. At the very least, wait up until the end of our war with King De Morgal. We’ll put in order all the preparations for the civil war so don’t carelessly fall victim to provocation. Well, come to think of it, we were saved by that time you humbled yourself into settling out of court with them. If the two of you had completely gone to war at that time, then this country wouldn’t exist today.” (Rosyth)

“I know. I’ll keep my head down, okay? For the mean time, I intend

to continue as such.” (Almis)

Civil war would be dreadful. No matter who wins, all that will be left are minuses.

Therefore, we’d have to end this in an instant. Until then, I’ll have to trouble myself with keeping Regal on the dark.

“Okay. We’ve arrived but…… Julia, wear this sack for the mean time. “

I make Julia wear the sack on her head.

With this, we won’t be found out.

I hold Julia’s hand and carefully help her get down from the horse.

We didn’t have the time to open up the part near the eye so she shouldn’t be able to see anything.

“Ah, Almis-san! Where have you been? Tetra’s been worried abo…….eh, Julia-san?”

We got found out!? (TLN: NANI!?)

“Well, her hair’s sticking out, you know……”

Ah, crap. Now that you mentioned it, the only girl with lavender-colored hair here is probably Julia.

That said, we don't have a sack big enough to hide all of Julia's hair so……

"Why is Julia-san here?"

"Let's talk about that later. For the meantime, let's get inside the mansion." (Almis)

The servants in the palace, for the most part, haven't seen Julia before so they probably won't know it's her just by seeing her hair.

That said, I'm just making sure.

We have to move quickly.

I'll have to get her inside the mansion without getting seen.

"That's how it is so stay still for me, okay?" (Almis)

"Hey, wha! Wait…." (Julia)

I carry Julia and run with all my strength.

"You kinda look like you're kidnapping some right now, you know."

"Shut up" (Almis)

"Julia. I'm very angry right now." (Tetra)

Tetra declares to signal the start of the two's meeting.

I've known Tetra for so long now but this girl's expressions are quite hard to understand.

Although she said she's angry, her expression right now is not that much different from her normal one.

That said, if you look closely you can see that her eyebrows are moving a little.

It's a peculiar trait of Tetra when she's angry.

It's about 7/10 on the scale, huh.

However, didn't Tetra say that it's fine for Julia to become my second wife?

That's the reason I took Julia in.

"I I'm sorry……..." (Julia)

Julia apologizes looking like she's about to curl herself up.

Tetra stares hard at Julia and says:

" You just said sorry, right? What would that sorry be for?" (Tetra)

"E? That's……..That's for snatching away Almis and snatching away the position of queen consort but…" (Julia)

(TLN: I really don't know how to translate 正妃. It means queen consort but in this context it kinda connotes the meaning of legal

wife, more specifically the wife with the highest status.)

“It’s not like I’m angry about that. I’m not that interested in worldly social status.” (Tetra)

Then what are you angry about, this girl…

“You didn’t consult with me even once. If you did that, then we could have thought about how to force Almis together. Besides, if I was against it then I would’ve flat out refused from the start.” (Tetra)

“Uuu…….It’s just as you said. I’m sorry……” (Julia)

Julia bows her head to Tetra and apologizes.

Tetra smiles.

“Good. I forgive you.”

Well, I guess it’s settled.

Great.

“But is it really alright?” (Julia)

“Yes. That’s because I’m Almis’ No.1 after all. No matter what happens, it’s set in stone that I was the one who Almis married first. Beside, what’s important is love. To hell with social status. …..Well, it couldn’t be helped if you’re bothered about it.” (Tetra)

“Hey! What’s up with that? You’re making it sound like I wanted to be the queen consort so it couldn’t be helped!!!” (Julia)

I don’t know what the hell happened but it looks like it’s become serious again.

For the meantime, I guess I should stop them, huh.

“You two. Don’t fight because of me….Ouch! Don’t hit me with your staff!” (Almis)

Tetra keeps hitting my head with her staff.

Tetra’s staff has those wooden disks bound together so it’s quite heavy but……this is too heavy for a wooden staff!”

“Oi, you put a metal rod inside didn’t you!” (Almis)

“Nope～, The correct answer is…” (Tetra)

Tetra grabs the pointed tip of the wand. She unscrews it and pulls.

It’s a black luster sword.

“It’s a Swordstick. Isn’t it cool?” (TLN: Shikomigatana/Swordstick/ Cane Sword; I don’t know much about Japanese swords)

“I agree that it’s cool but, don’t hit me with that. If you got careless, you could kill me….” (Almis)

“Hey, Tetra. Can you also make me one?” (Julia)

Thus, although the situation has changed, we’ve returned to our former relations.

I call together my trusted members.

Ron, Roswald, Gram, Soyon, Lulu, Yal, Bolus.

These seven people.

It's not that I don't trust the others not included here.

It' just that you increase the possibility of leaking information the more you increase the people who know.

Because the possibility of getting tortured to be made to talk is real enough, I can't speak about this to a lot of people.

Although I do feel bad about it….

In one line starting from the right, Tetra, me, and Julia sit in front of them.

All of their gazes fall at Julia.

They've probably noticed it to a certain extent huh.

"I'll get straight to the point. It's been decided that I'll be marrying Julia."

I could sense the tension in everyone.

Everyone falls silent.

Ron becomes the first one to speak.

“……That means Leader will…….have to become King, am I right?” (Ron)

“Yes, it’s become like that.”

Everyone exchanges glances.

“””HOORAY!!!!!!!!!!!!”

Ron, Roswald, Gram, Soyon, and Lulu put their hands together and shouts happily.

Yal and Bolus, too, are smiling.

“I was so worried!! Because I heard that Julia might have had to marry that guy Regal ……..moreover, Almis-san looked so gloomy lately, too! I’ve never felt so relieved.” (Soyon)

Soyon grins while giving us her blessing.

I see…..It seems I looked so gloomy huh.

I’m sorry I made you worry guys….

“However, that means we’ll finally cross swords with the DeBell Clan, am I right?”

“Yes. That’s correct. That’s why I’ll be imposing on everyone. This is…. so to speak, because of my and Julia’s love. I really feel bad dragging everyone into this. I’m sorry. However…..please support us!! (Almis)

As I say so, the seven smile broadly.

“Isn’t it time for Almis to finally wield us for his convenience? You’re so reserved. You don’t have to ask all of those one by one, you know!” (Gram)

Roswald declares in addition to Gram.

“We had to get along with the DeBell Clan before so ((I held back)). But if it’s become like this, then at that time, should I have just stabbed that ((Gilberto)) with my spear?” (Roswald)

Roswald shows a somewhat regretful expression.

No, that was a wise decision, you know.

If it became an all-out war then the neighboring countries would’ve come together to intervene and I would never be able to succeed the throne.

“Almis-sama. Congratulations. However, please let me confirm one thing. What would happen to Tetra-sama?” (Bolus)

Bolus looks straight at me.

Naturally, it’s something that’s bothering him, huh.

I embrace Tetra while looking straight at Bolus.

“Tetra will remain as my wife. Though she won’t become queen consort….by no means would I make light of her, I promise you that.” (Almis)

“Is that so…..I asked something awkward. I apologize.” (Bolus)

Bolus bows deeply.

When the excitement died down, Yal opens his mouth.

“However, Lord Almis. Have you estimated the opposition against your enthronement by the clans aside from the DeBell Clan? Also, how shall we deal with the DeBell Clan? (Yal)

“Naturally, I’ve thought about it. First, concerning the opposition by non-DeBell factions……the possibility of the De Morgal Kingdom invading us before long is high. When that happens, I’ll be appointed as the supreme commander. There, I should be able to obtain a great achievement. Furthermore, concerning dealing with the DeBell Clan, I think we should try to destroy them from within.” (Almis)

“From within, is it?” (Yal)

“Yes.” (Almis)

The DeBell faction is large.

If we fought squarely, it will probably become a very bloody battle. (TLN: Author wrote ‘a battle where we’ll wash blood with blood’; can’t think of a good English idiom.)

Though I don’t think we’ll lose, it will be a tough battle.

The people who are supporting me are Tetra’s relatives……..in other words, the Ars Clan’s relatives.

However, the Ars Clan had a time where it had come to an end for some time so they’ve lost a lot of influence during those years.

Because the opposing DeBell faction is quite collected by themselves, they’ve flexed their muscle to try to bury the retreating Ars faction.

Even though the Ars clan managed to make a comeback when I appeared, we're still quite far off.

The ones who hold the key are not the Ars clan's relatives but the clansmen who are not relatives of the DeBell clan. However…… rather than someone like me of a doubtful origin, they probably lean towards the DeBell clan.

Even those who would support me in a normal political dispute, would certainly choose the weather when I've become to succeed the throne. (TLN: Another Idiom I don't understand. Hiyori wo kimeru. Help me people.)

That's why, as much as possible, in order to bring in an advantage, we have to drive a wedge into the DeBell Clan's core.

"I heard about this from King Rosyth but… there seems to be two factions within the DeBell Faction. The first is the disadvantaged group of retainers led by Regal's trusted confidant and subordinate Bermet. The second is the group of DeBell relatives headed by Gilberto. The former group is full of capable people but their social status, except for Bermet, tend to be low. The latter group, because they were chosen by their lineage, though lacking in capable people, are lucky in obtaining the good positions. Thus, it seems that Regal has a tendency to rely on relatives." (Almis)

It's not bad to reinforce your retainers with relatives.

There's nothing you can trust more than your relatives after all, plus your unity is firm.

I, too, fill my close associates with Ron and the others.

However, there is a problem with installing and using only relatives to responsible positions.

Relatives would not be careful in making and shrugging off big mistakes because they can play the family card, and they would just

rest on their laurels.

The man Ron, Roswald, and Soyon beat – Gilberto is a good example. Normally, if you had failed that miserably, at the very least, a demotion is in order. However, that guy got away with it with just a week's house arrest.

This is a very delightful thing. There's nothing better than having an enemy full of incompetents.

However, there's one person that's a cause for concern.

That man called Bermet.

Bermet, as the rumors say, seems to be a very capable old man. By all means, it was all because of him that the DeBell Clan had managed to expand to such power.

Certainly, I can feel some sort of drive from that old man.

It seems it was Bermet who made the horrible plan to casually slaughter the refugees before our eyes.

Honestly speaking, you really can't tell ability with just that.

I know too little about that man.

However, I know that he's very dangerous.

If I were able to remove that Bermet, then I'll be able to split the DeBell clan right in half.

“That’s how it is but……does anyone have a great idea?” (Almis)

When I proposed such, everyone fell silent.

One thing or another, they seem to have a deep acknowledgement of Bermet.

Taking them down won’t be an easy task.

“For the time being, I have a strategy.” The one who spoke up was Yal.

Oi, are you serious?

“Regal DeBell won’t trust anyone except his relatives. In other words, he’s quite a distrustful person, yes? We’ll use that against him. It’s just that…….this plan would some preparation and quite a sum of money.” (Yal)

“I don’t mind. This strategy is?” (Almis)

Yal explains his strategy.

and had just recovered, they will have to be devastated again, huh.

“Alright, let’s start the meeting. How are we going to drive back King De Morgal’s army?”

Julia declares to the assembled clansmen.

These are people who already know and have acknowledged that I will succeed as King.

Julia presides over the meeting as King Rosyth’s health has suddenly turned for the worse.

I brought along Bolus and Tetra.

Although I wanted to bring along Ron and the others as well, I couldn’t due to problems concerning their social status.

“The enemy is 15,000 strong. Let us proceed with the assumption that ours would be 7,500 strong. Does anyone have an opinion?” (Julia)

The clansmen look at a map that is spread before Julia. Upon this map, chess pieces are assembled. (TLN: Actually, Shogi pieces but hey, it’s like chess anyway.)

A clansman takes the king piece of the color representing our Rosyth Kingdom’s side and places it upon Fort Terrier, the fort I had recently completed in the border between the Ars and the De Morgal Kingdom.

“As I thought, don’t you think the best way to go about this is to

fight a siege using a small defending force? We can barricade ourselves in the fort enabling us to take on up to three times our own forces. With this, we can force our enemy to withdraw." (Clansman)

This is proposed by a clansman from the Ordovices Clan.

The Ordovices are a branch of the Ars clan. They also have marriage ties with the Rosyth Clan.

Their territory borders the Belvedere Kingdom.

Although they never had a war even once with the Belvedere Kingdom, they did nevertheless have several skirmishes making them very experienced with war.

"Certainly, we won't lose if it's a siege even with small numbers. However, we also won't win. Though I do agree that the enemy would not prolong a battle so they will withdraw if it's to the extent of a skirmish….However, this time, King De Morgal is determined to head south. I don't think he will withdraw." (Bartolo)

"Then it comes down to a field battle, yes?….Will we hit them with Lord Bartolo's echelon formation?"

The one who asks so is a clansman from the Perm Clan.

The Perm Clan also has familial relations with the Ars Clan.

The clan borders the DeBell territory so they would be valuable when the civil war breaks out. I hear that, although their territory is small, their economy is quite strong because of the various rock salt mines that they have.

However, they don't have much experience in war.

"The echelon formation cannot be used without extensive practice. We were able to manage with my army and King Rosyth's

army…….however, this time…” (Bartolo)

This time, although we have greater numbers, it’s hard to say that the army could work together smoothly. The echelon formation would probably be difficult to pull off.

“The enemy is a big army numbering over 10,000. Therefore, their food consumption would be rapid. They will immediately exhaust the rations they would bring. Furthermore, because the enemy needs to bring siege equipment, they won’t be able to bring much materials. In other words, they would have to source the rations from the locality after exhausting what they’ve brought. We will pull them into our territory while employing scorch earth tactics. We will wait until they exhaust their resources and then we will cut their supply lines using hidden soldiers.” (Tetra)

Tetra gives off quite a tangible strategy. However, that strategy will scorch our interior, huh.

Even though the l

“With that, wouldn’t the soldiers from the Ars Territory be demoralized?”

Julia points out the plan’s biggest weakness.

With the scorched earth policy, we would have to burn fields and throw poison or dust into the wells.

If one is unlucky that as a result of possibly being in charge of one’s village…….. then morale will greatly fall.

“Almis, what do you think?”

You’ll push this on to me huh….Well, I am the supreme commander

so I guess it's only natural.

Hmmm…my opinion, huh.

I think it's best we go for the field battle but if you consider the difference in number then it's impossible.

On the other hand, we will be able to fight effectively in a siege but it's just a strategy for buying time.

We won't have reinforcements, huh….

N? Now that I think about it……

"Certainly, the De Morgal Kingdom and the Gillbed Kingdom had signed a cease-fire agreement. However, that agreement doesn't mention anything about the Fardam Kingdom and Rozel Kingdom, yes?…….How about we ally ourselves with those two countries?"

If they got attacked in a pincer, even they would have to withdraw, right? With this, we'll have to go with the siege to buy time.

"King De Morgal left behind quite a number of soldiers so I don't think they will withdraw from our country even if we attacked them from the front and back. Besides, the Rozel Kingdom and the Fardam Kingdom are at war right now."

This ain't gonna work, huh.

As for the other plans….

“Honestly, I think cutting off their supply route is a great idea. We could probably win this just by upsetting their weakness in morale.” (Bartolo)

Bartolo declares.

I also think it’s not a bad idea.

It’s just like that huh. It’s problematic because we have to apply the scorched earth on our territory. Can’t we do it to the enemy’s territory?

N? I see…….If we do it in the enemy’s territory then it won’t be a problem at all.

“Then how about this way?”

I tell them about my plan.

The clansmen open their eyes wide in surprise.

“That would incur the curs…….no, If it’s you then we won’t have to worry about that, huh. I think a surprise attack would be enough to succeed.” (Raymond)

Raymond agrees with my plan.

“I see. As for the next phase, after luring them into pursuit, we will attack them from the front and back in a pincer. Not bad. However, we might get hurt if we do this sloppily.” (Bartolo)

Bartolo agrees while also saying the plan’s faults.

Well, yeah.

This plan's greatest barrier is the mobility.

"I think we can do this with the cavalry's mobility. Although we could also do this with Velites (light infantry)……the De Morgal Kingdom has cavalry. The velites would be helpless against an attack by cavalry dispatched from the center. If we use cavalry, then we can stir them up completely."

The problem is I only have 100 cavalry. If I remember correctly, King Rosyth only has 50.

That's too little.

"How many does everyone have?" (Almis)

I ask the clansmen how many cavalry they have.

The total? 50.

In other words, the Rosyth Kingdom has 200 cavalry in total.

As expected, that's too little.

In the first place, horse riding is a special skill so you couldn't gather people with that skill in large numbers. Therefore, cavalry couldn't become the main force in war.

Although you could also use them for messaging and scouting, this world has falcons which can do those jobs better.

What the horse can do in several hours, the falcon can do immediately.

The value of horses, therefore, are lower.

“At the very least, we’ll want 200 more. We can’t rest easy otherwise.”

The Ordovices clansman says so.

“Then, what do you say about hiring Alva people?”

Julia proposes.

Who are those Alva people?

“Eh…….Alva people are……Aren’t they barbarians?”

The Perm clansman makes a sour face.

“We don’t want to get involved with those kind of people, yes?”

The Ordovices clansman, too, make a disagreeable face.

I said who the hell are those Alva people?

Somebody please explain!

“The Alva people are a flat-faced clan who spread out to Germanis, Gaul, and the Adernia peninsula a very long time ago….500 years, if I recall correctly. They live across the mountains to the east of the Rosyth Kingdom. Right now, they have completely assimilated with Adernians.” (Tetra)

According to Tetra:

Apparently, those flat-faced clan came and invaded the Adernia Peninsula with their horses and subjugated approximately the whole area 500 years ago. They made an empire that covered Germanis, Gaul, and the Adernia Peninsula.

However, after their great king died, the flat-faced clan broke up into several competing clans and families.

At the same time, taking advantage of the revolting Adernians, the expanding Cretians and Povenians drove them out.

After that, the flat-faced tribe also couldn't maintain their control over Germanis and Gaul so they ended up retreating to the east.

Apparently, they were the ones who brought horse-riding to the west.

However, not all of them joined the retreat. A part of them detached from the main force and settled around the Alva mountain range to the east of the Rosyth Kingdom.

They assimilated with the Adernians and became known as the Alva people.

"The Alva area is a dry region in the middle of the Adernia Peninsula that receives very little rain. Originally, livestock farming was popular in the area. That's why the flat-faced tribe seemed to have an easy time assimilating." (Tetra)

I see. It's to the east of a mountain range so it rains very little, huh.

Although this world doesn't seem to be particularly aware of the

existence of westerlies so I can't confirm but let's just assume that it exists.

Moist air comes from the west and causes rains.

However, the Alva mountain range cuts off that wind so the rains won't come.

Something like that?

Well, climate is a combination of a lot of factors so I can't say for sure.

"But why do you call them flat-faced people?" (Almis)

Is it because they have flat noses or something?

"Well, that's one reason. However, the primary reason is that they had a custom of tying down their noses from a very young age to flatten it." (Tetra)

So they're really flat, huh…..

Well, it couldn't be helped if you called them savages.

"But aren't they assimilated to the Adernians already? Then we should be able to communicate in Adernian. I don't see any problems?" (Almis)

"Yes, yes. They apparently stopped doing their custom of flattening their noses. It seems their numbers have dwindled too. There are around a thousand people left in the Alva area. They've assimilated into bona-fide Adernians. Certainly, they speak with an accent and their lifestyle is different too. But I think that won't be much of a problem." (Julia)

Julia and I agree to hiring the Alva people.

“We have established a commercial relationship with the Alva trading wool and the like. We are also quite distant to the Alva mountain range so we don’t have a history of war. If we approached them with a friendly disposition then I don’t think there would be a problem.” (Bartolo)

“I agree, we have nothing to fear if we have Alvan cavalry. They’re also probably troubled about the De Morgal Kingdom’s southward policy. I think the plan’s fine.” (Tetra)

Tetra and Bartolo also gives their support.

“Yes……Certainly, Alvan Cavalry can be relied upon…..however, we don’t have official diplomatic relations with them….”

“They are nomads. Their concept of a nation is different to ours. We don’t know where to find their leader.”

“We also have the problem of finding out with whom do we need to negotiate.”

Raymond, Ordovices, and Perm object citing those difficulties.

I see. We need a bridge for negotiations, huh.

I think I know…….just the right person.

“There’s this Cretian merchant called Ains. When I got some horses from him before, he said that he procured some of them from the Adernia Peninsula. There’s a possibility he got them from the Alva people.” (Almis)

“Certainly, if it’s him then he probably knows the Alvans. Shall I call for him?”

With this, the meeting comes to a close.

“The Alva people? Yes, I know them.” (Ains)

A week later, we call for Ains and hold another meeting.

This time, King Rosyth is in attendance.

By the way, we also have to hide the matter regarding my succession as king.

“The area is divided into three countries. The Equus Clan, the Aries Clan, and the Lupus Clan. The Aries clan is weak and under the control of the Lupus Clan. The remaining two are the two major powers.”

Oh? There are two major powers, huh?

That makes things easier.

We’d have to negotiate anyway no matter how many tribes there is, after all.

“With whom can we probably negotiate mercenaries?”

“That would be the Equus clan. The Lupus clan doesn’t want contact with the outside world after all. On the other hand, the Equus clan is proactive. A part of the clan seems to practice agriculture too.”

Even if you say it doesn’t rain often, there’s still the river. That should be sufficient for agriculture.

It’s only natural to have better productivity with agriculture than with nomadism. However, while it’s only natural to convert to agriculture, it’s normal to fear and fail to suddenly change your way of life.

The Equus clan probably has quite the progressive mind set.

“Can you act as the intermediary on our behalf?”

Ains-san grins and bows.

“That would be a very easy task. …..By all means, leave it to me.”
Just like this, it’s decided that we will send an envoy to the Alva area.

Chapter 58

;s a possibility that it’s a trap so that reaction is only natural.

We sent the first diplomatic mission to the Equus clan.

Wheat, Rock salt, wine, and wool trading then began around the time the first mission finished.

The Rosyth Kingdom is quite engaged in agriculture. but not so in animal husbandry.

Conversely, the Equus clan is engaged in animal husbandry but not quite in agriculture. To feed their nomadic lifestyle, they have to resort to importing wheat.

Thus, this is easily a win-win relationship.

As expected, it seems they too wanted this trading relationship.

In making friends, the first exchange is very important.

After this, we sent more missions once every month.

The twelfth month, the first month, the second month, the third month, and the fourth month. (TLN: I am very tempted to call them January, Feb, Mar, etc.)

The missions went well and brought forth bountiful returns.

Around the time the relationship between the Rosyth Kingdom and the Equus Clan deepened, we received a message from a mouse we planted inside the De Morgal Kingdom.

It seems the De Morgal Kingdom would conduct large scale military movements around the Sixth Month.

Apparently, they’re aiming to have their invasion coincide with the wheat harvesting season.

The Rosyth Kingdom also has finished the defensive measures.

My Ars Territory too has begun conscripting soldiers.

And so comes the fifth month. We're sending the 7th diplomatic mission.

This time we're not only coming to trade but also to propose the recruitment of about 200 Equus Clan soldiers as mercenaries. Rather, you could say that is our main objective this time.

The Equus Clan are also feeling the pressure of the De Morgal Kingdom's impending invasion so I don't think it's a bad proposition for them. Naturally, we will pay them wages in addition to shouldering the war expenses.

We will also give bereavement pay to the families of soldiers who might die.

That is our offer.

However, as expected, they are still treating the military movements with caution. They replied that they're considering the offer.

And now, they have sent a diplomatic mission themselves. They're requesting for a top official to negotiate with.

In other words, "show us how sincere you are in wanting an alliance."

Having said that, King Rosyth can't go.

If he set out poorly, rather than the Equus Tribe's territory, he'd instead be going straight to heaven.

So in his place, it was chosen that……

“Ooh! This is the summit. What a nice view, don’t you think so?”

“That’s right. But please don’t get too close to the cliffs. You might fall and die, after all.”

I tell Julia in good humor.

Julia was chosen as King Rosyth’s representative.

It was supposed to be Raymond at first. However, the Equus Clansmen themselves requested for Julia. They said they have a patient in need of the famous sorceress Julia’s medical expertise.

Certainly, Julia’s medical abilities is quite a notch above the rest. She’s been doing her best after all to cure King Rosyth.

However, I’m sure it’s quite painful for her that no matter how hard she tried she couldn’t cure King Rosyth.

Apparently, King Rosyth has an unusual incompatibility with sorcery and medicine.

Well, regarding sending her….

King Rosyth seems to be greatly against it.

‘Sending my beloved daughter abroad is out of the question!’ He said.

Well, there&rsquo

However, without the cavalry the war won't be feasible.

And so, I volunteered to come with Julia as her guard.

I'm touting myself as the strongest in the Rosyth Kingdom.

If I come with Julia, then King Rosyth's anxiety would be assuaged.

Besides, I'm the planned successor to the King. So, it's probably a good idea to show my face and meet with the Lord of the Equus tribe. I'll be relying on them from now on after all.

And with that, the two of us (including thirty-two (32) guards – twelve of which, including Roswald and Virgar, I provided while the rest by King Rosyth) have crossed the Alva Mountain Range.

Though we couldn't use carriages, all of us are riding horses.

What's surprising is Julia's quite skillful in horse-riding.

Or should I say as expected of a sorcerer?

Anyway, If I recall correctly, we were supposed to meet at the summit but….

“Ah, it seems they’ve come.” (Julia)

Julia points her finger towards the Equus tribe’s party.

They’re a group of thirty people in horseback. You can tell they’re the Equus tribe from their banner.

“Oiiiiiii!!” (Julia)

Julia waves her hand to the Equus tribesmen. It’s immodest so can you please stop it? It’ll affect our country’s honor, you know.

Though I think so, there’s no way I’d tell that to Julia.

Besides, the man leading the Equus Tribe waved his hand back.

The two are accomplices.

After what it felt like about 5 minutes, we finally meet up with the Equus tribesmen.

The man in the lead goes forward a little.

“My name is Muzio Equus Sulpicius. I’m the second son of the Equus Tribe’s Chief. You must be Princess Julia, am I correct?” (Muzio)

“Yes. I am Julia Rosyth. I’ve come as the representative of King Rosyth.” (Julia)

After the introductions, Muzio shifts his gaze to me.

“And you are?” (Muzio)

“I’m Almis Ars. I’m the lord governing the Ars Territory. I’m accompanying Julia-sama this time as her guard.” (Almis)

“I see, I see. You’re the famed son of the Gryffon, right? Can I call you Almis? Of course, in exchange, you can call me Muzio.” (Muzio)

“I don’t mind but…..” (Almis)

This guy’s quite overfamiliar. Hey.

“Haha, no need to be so stiff and polite! I’m just the second son after all!!” (Muzio)

He’s slapping my back without reserve.

It’s the first time I’ve met this type of person huh……

“Ah, Is that so? Then let’s hold back on the honorifics. But please, stop hitting my back. It hurts after all.” (Almis)

“Ohtto. Sorry, Sorry.” (Muzio)

Muzio stops hitting my back.

I’ve never seen this kind of person before even during my previous life.

Just like that, I become worried about my human relations.

“At any rate, Lady Julia and Almis seem to be skillful at horse-riding. Is it because of those little tools there?” (Muzio)

Muzio shows interest in the saddle and the stirrup.

The Equus Tribesmen, including Muzio, are all riding unsaddled horses. They're probably curious.

"You've prepared seats to make it easier to ride the horse, and footholds to carry the feet. I see. Certainly, that would make it easier to ride the horse and even carry equipment. Can you possibly teach us how to make these tools? (Muzio)

"Then we shall bring over some of them by the next diplomatic mission. Everyone still has to cross this mountain to return home after all." (Julia)

Julia jokingly says.

Making saddles and stirrups is exceedingly simple. You can even make something basic right now.

You might as well give them the real deal to increase our relations if they're going to be able to copy them anyway.

"But I must say, the wool we bought from your Equus tribe is quite wonderful. Our country's wool cannot compare." (Julia)

"Haha, It's our main product after all. The secret is to make the sheep exercise, feed them high quality grass, and bring them up in a stress-free environment. If I may say as well, your Rosyth Kingdom's wheat too is quite splendid. We can never produce such delicious wheat. By all means, can you please teach us the secret to it?" (Muzio)

The Rosyth Kingdom receives comparatively more warmth and rain for a country in the Adernia Peninsula so it's soil can grow fertile.

With these the Kingdom can harvest high quality wheat.

As expected, there's no way those who've studied nothing but agriculture recently can lose.

"I'm not that knowledgeable in agriculture but……Sir Almis is, am I right?" (Julia)

Julia passes the torch to me.

Certainly, I'm quite knowledgeable in agriculture but…..

"Almis, by all means, teach us!" (Muzio)

"Well…..I don't mind but……I won't be able to say anything without seeing your agricultural methods first. Well, for the meantime let's talk about it in general. There are three factors needed to raise crops." (Almis)

I teach Muzio about the basics of agriculture.

"What you need are water, sunlight, and soil nourishment. You can't grow crops with even just one of these missing. Water and sunlight are dependent upon the climate, although you can redirect water from rivers. Soil nourishment is the easiest that can be controlled by humans." (Almis)

Muzio tilts his head in confusion to my statement.

"Nourishment?"

"It's kind of like food for the crops. Don't you need to feed sheep high quality grass to make high quality wool? It's the same concept here. You need to provide large quantities of nourishment to grow high quality crops. Nourishment is inherent in the soil in the beginning so there's no problem. However, it becomes one when the nutrients become exhausted." (Almis)

Muzio seems to have a flash of inspiration.

"I see. That's why we get fewer harvests every year, huh. It was strange after all even though the weather wasn't horrible. So then,

how would you return the nutrients to the soil?" (Muzio)

This guy is quick on the uptake, huh.

Now then, up to how much do I need to explain.

"First, the typical method is to let the fields rest. In other words, it's a method where you don't cultivate anything for a year. It'll recover a year's worth of nutrients." (Almis)

"I see, I see. However, with that we would have to reduce our arable land, huh. Furthermore, the soil won't be able to completely recover, am I right?" (Muzio)

Faster, tell me more.

Muzio's eyes are telling me that.

"We can artificially supplement the lacking nutrients. Let's see…..For example, like scattering ashes to the fields or scattering soil taken from the forest. Forest soil is packed with large amounts of nutrients. You'll know because they can support the growth of huge trees." (Almis)

I declare as I survey the surrounding trees.

Even though humans haven't touched any of them, the trees are growing chaotically as if they're competing to become the biggest tree.

I read this somewhere in a book. That the forests imagined and yearned for by city dwellers are forests that have been touched by human hands. Actual forests are much more terrible places.

The Romano Forest kind of feels like this huh. Although the varieties of trees growing are different.

"Hou, Forest soil, is it? Then we'll try it immediately. Is there

anything else?” (Muzio)

“It’s not like there’s nothing else but…..Let’s talk about that after the conclusion of the alliance.” (Almis)

I’ll keep quiet for now that sheep feces can become fertilizer.

I also don’t intend to tell them about the crop rotation system even after the conclusion of the alliance.

Although that would depend on how our dealings go.

“Fufu, you’re quite the tease, huh. I’ve got one more reason to persuade father.” (Muzio)

Oh, Muzio is in the Pro-Alliance Faction, huh.

Well, he seems to be in favor of agriculture so he must be in the Reformist Faction.

“Why is the Lord Equus not in favor with the alliance?” (Almis)

“Hmmm, it’s because he’s conservative from the very beginning, see. He also hates agriculture. He said he doesn’t like something that’s like scratching the earth. We also had quite the difficulty in making him agree to the trading. He said we’d destroy our culture if we learned to live in extravagance. His primary reason for objecting this alliance is that he doesn’t want to get involved in the affairs of other countries. He also thinks that it’s stupid to shed blood for a war that has nothing to do with us.” (Muzio)

From what I heard, it doesn’t seem like he’s an obstinate man.

He didn’t object to agriculture even though he hated it. He also

didn't oppose the trade even though he was against it.

I think he saw that they'd reap profits that's why he allowed them.

However, he's against the alliance. His reasons for objecting are quite spot on, too.

It seems we would have a hard time convincing him. However, we won't have any problems if we can show that the returns overweigh the risks.

Although Julia has the authority in the negotiations, I've received an order from King Rosyth himself to manage a substantial part of it myself.

It's because Julia's negotiations skills are still doubtful after all……

"Ohtto, We'll be leaving the mountain shortly. We'll set up camp immediately after we descend from the mountain, would that be alright?" (Muzio)

"Yes, that would be fine. It's almost evening after all." (Julia)

It's been decided we'll make camp after descending from the mountain.

We can finally rest.

As expected, it's quite tiring being on horse-back for a long time, huh.

Upon descending the mountain, vast grasslands spread before us.

We can turn these into farms if we could manage to prepare irrigation equipment and apply fertilizer.

Perhaps, we could even make this into a large grain producing regi…….no, I still don't know if that could be done but, at the very least this won't be a hopelessly dry region.

"Alright, let's quickly set up our yurts." (TLN: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yurt)

The Equus tribesmen begin setting up their large tents.

Up until now, they've been acting like textbook nomadic tribes. Will this keep up, I wonder?

"Are all Equus Tribe houses yurts?"

"Well, a lot of the commoners live in yurts. However, the royal family and the nobility do have buildings as houses and palaces in the capital. We have summer and winter capitals and we change residence depending on the season." (Muzio)

With that, won't the houses you'll come back to be covered in dust? Do you leave behind caretakers?

They don't feel like genuine nomads but rather half-nomad half-agricultural people. They also speak Adernian after all, although with an accent.

Sometime after the yurts were finally set up, Muzio's subordinate comes in a huge hurry.

"Sir, it's an emergency!! We've spotted an 'Cruel Dragon' headed in this direction." (TLN: Literally Violent/Cruel Dragon; Will change the name next chapter once the context becomes clear to you readers.)

"Stupid! How the hell did you overlook something that big!? Why the hell did you not keep watch properly!?" (Muzio)

Muzio shouts angrily.

Dragon?

"I'm sorry……The sun has fallen so we never thought that such a thing would appear…."

"Tsk…Fine. It can't be helped. We won't be able to lay our hands on it after all once it starts running….." (Muzio)

Muzio looks over his shoulder at me while declaring:

"Sorry. It's because of our incompetence. A 'Cruel Dragon' is closing in on us. We'll hold it back so please escape with Julia-sama. …… Although I would be very happy if you could participate if you're confident you can handle that lizard." (Muzio)

Hmm. What now?

I've never fought one.

"For the time being, I'll come along and bring my Dragon Damascus Sword." (Almis)

"Great! Let's go and exterminate that lizard together!" (Muzio)

Chapter 59

I put in your name! You pack mule!

This ‘Cruel Dragon’…….Isn’t this a Tyrannosaurus rex?

No, it’s smaller than a T-rex., huh.

“The Tyrannosaur is a two-legged carnivorous dragon. Its scales are as hard as iron. Well, if we aim at the gaps then we’ll make do. Do you think you’re up for it?” (Muzio) (TLN: Let’s just call it Tyrannosaur since the author just cut-off a kanji, the ‘rex’ part, and it means the same anyway. 暴君竜 -> 暴竜)

“Well, I’ll probably cut through it like butter with my sword.” (Almis)

I pull out my Dragon Damascus sword.

I’ll finally be able to put you to good use, huh.

The rear guards will be me and Muzio, just the two of us.

You don’t need many people if you’re just buying for time after all. Besides, Julia would be much safer if went with fewer numbers in the rear guard.

Julia must be protected at all costs after all so it’s only natural that she’d have the larger part of the forces.

Under that assumption, I need to be by Julia’s side but…..

I’d feel very bad if because of that we’ll return with half the soldiers killed by the dragon.

I have divine protection after all, plus this wonderful sword. At the

very least, I won't die, probably.

It's fine if we just deceive them that my divine protection only increases my physical strength. It probably won't hurt us much if they only know that much.

I'm confident in my skills after all. Plus, I'm quite interested in seeing something like a dragon up close and personal.

Besides, I'd be spoken ill of by everyone everywhere if I ran away from a dragon with my tail between my legs.

Although it seems the Tyrannosaur is slower than horses so if we do run with all our might then we might make do.

It's turning quite dark now. This lizard seems bad in the dark so there's a high chance of success in escaping.

I heard from Muzio that tyrannosaurs normally don't come out in the evening and they don't attack people in groups.

Therefore, there's little probability that something critical would occur like Julia's group being attacked. Well, Roswald swore to me that he'd protect Julia with all his power. It's probably fine. If it's him, then they should be fine.

By the way, the Tyrannosaur looks like it's just hungry and looking for food by chance.

"Well then, if we can, then I'd aim for killing it, okay. Alright, let's go!!" (Muzio)

The two of us head towards the Tyrannosaur with our horses.

The lizard too immediately heads toward us.

It seems it settled on the two of us as its target. This makes things easier.

We’re headed the opposite direction as Julia’s group.

“Alright, let’s annoy the hell out of this lizard!” (Muzio)

Muzio shoots an arrow behind him.

Though the arrow got deflected by the Tyrannosaur’s scales and did not penetrate, the attacked seemed to hurt it and slowed it’s advance.

How skillful, this guy!

“■■■■ ! ! ! ”

The tyrannosaur let’s out a huge roar.

There’s no particular effect on my body except that it’s quite loud for me.

“Oi! Don’t struggle!!” (Almis)

My horse, on the other hand, is making quite a stir, halting my advance. It then rises and bends its body into a curve, throwing me off.

“Piebald!!” (Almis)

It went and ran away, that Piebald.

You went away and trampled all the hopes

Go ahead and get eaten by that tyrannosaur!!

Well, at this rate, I’ll be the one who’ll get eaten by the

tyrannosaur.

“Oi oi, what do we do now. If we rode together……No, it’ll catch up by then. It can’t be helped. We’ll have to finish it here.” (Muzio)

“My bad, I’ve caused you trouble.” (Almis)

“It’s fine, it’s fine. I’ll introduce to you a good horse, next time.” (Muzio)

Somehow, it feels like I’m getting comforted after getting rejected by a girl.

“Alright, lizaturd. You’ve got me in a very bad mood right now. So, I’ll be cutting you into pieces!!!” (Almis) (TLN: Sorry, that’s the best insult I could think of for lizard + crap)

I closed in on the Tyrannosaur in one breath. It turns towards me and opens its mouth. It’s going for a bite at me but such a slow attack won’t hit me.

I try to position myself at the base of the Tyrannosaur. However, I didn’t quite manage to.

The lizard just kept trying to bite at me, many times over.

It then swings its sharp claws at me but I manage to shake it off.

“Ohtto!” (Almis)

I hurriedly parried with my sword.

Sounds similar to metal clashing resonated across the grasslands.

I brace my legs to repel its claws.

The tyrannosaur rages further. If it could speak Adernian, it was probably yelling “Why the hell are you this strong even though you’re just puny humans!?” or something like that.

“I’ll cover you!!” (Muzio)

Muzio fires arrows at the Tyrannosaur while running around the its circumference on horseback.

Sounds of arrows being fired resonate. The arrows hit and pierce their target.

It failed to pierce it before but how did it manage to do it now……

And then I noticed…

Every time Muzio shoots an arrow, a gust of wind is produced.

I need to examine this later.

Alright, now…..

Thanks to Muzio’s cover, I managed to successfully position myself at the base of the Tyrannosaur. The lizard was too engrossed on Muzio and it didn’t manage to notice me.

“Alright, fall over!!” (Almis)

I slashed my sword at the lizard’s tendon. Fresh blood gushes forth

and covers me in red.

The Tyrannosaur's body leans greatly as it loses blood.

I quickly escape from there by rolling away. I barely managed to get away at the same time as the lizard tumbles down.

"Alright, one more!" (Almis)

I cut one more tendon as I skillfully move around. With this, the lizard won't be able to get up anymore.

"That's Almis! Tell me later about your impressive strength. So, what do we do for the finishing blow?" (Muzio)

"It'll die if we leave it alone, right? Let's just recover the body later. By the way…..can you give me a ride?" (Almis)

"Sure." (Muzio)

Muzio gave me a ride on his horse and we met up with Julia and the others a while later.

"Almis! Are you alrigh…….aren't you covered in blood!? Are you hurt somewhere?" (Julia)

"Relax. This is the Tyrannosaur's blood. I'm fine." (Almis)

Despite me saying so, maybe because she didn't believe me, or maybe because she's very worried about me, Julia goes on to touch and check my body for injuries.

"Look, you're injured here!" (Julia)

"That's just a scratch!" (Almis)

I got that from when I was thrown off by that stupid horse. I swear I'll turn that horse into horsemeat when I see it again.

"By the way, what happened to the dragon, master?" (Virgar)

Virgar asks so I answer.

"I cut its tendons so it couldn't move. We plan to confirm its death tomorrow." (Almis)

It's already dark after all.

Even if no more dragons come out, wolves will.

Honestly, a pack of wolves is more dangerous than one tyrannosaur.

"You speak as if it's just nothing, huh……..You know, it normally takes 10 people to bring down a tyrannosaur." (Virgar)

Virgar murmurs dryly.

"Then let's go back to the yurts we've just set-up, Lady Julia."

We all went back to the original camp site as per Muzio's suggestion.

“Alright, Let’s sleep together tonight, Almis.” (Muzio)

“……Well, that’s fine. But choose your words next time.” (Almis)

I feel a lot of weird stares on me. Julia’s here too so please don’t look at me like that.

“I’ll take care of the snacks. I’ll leave the booze to you.” (Muzio)

“Sure.” (Almis)

I can only choose good alcohol from the goods we brought for trading. This is for diplomacy so I’ll just write it off as a necessary expense. It won’t be a problem.

“Alright, Cheers to our friendship!!”

“Cheers!!”

I’ll play along even though I don’t remember us becoming friends. It’s important to get along after all.

“Now……..please tell me about that great physical abilities you possess. I heard rumors about you being able to take down bears but, there’s no way it’s just bears. You’re actually beyond human, you know?’ (Muzio)

“Well, if it’s just that then I’ll tell you. However, you’ll also have to tell me about that unnatural wind the blows every time you shoot an arrow, okay?”

Muzio laughs with an expression as if saying “as expected, he noticed, huh.”

Thus, we begin our conversation.

“That’s a divine protection. I can freely manipulate wind. It’s called the ‘Divine Protection of the Wind Spirit.’” (Muzio)

It’s another divine protection, huh.

It’s because of the fairies, huh.

In other words, they’re arrows enchanted with the power of the wind, huh. It seems quite convenient.

“So, how about yours? I’ll tell you upfront. Normal humans will immediately get eaten by a tyrannosaur from the very start. What kind of reflexes do you have to be able to ward off such a beast. You’d also need skill to be able to cut off its tendons. It’s not like that lizaturd is just standing still. Normally, it’ll be moving around. I also couldn’t believe it when you managed to parry its claws. Those arms have the power to blow away horses, you know?” (Muzio)

It’s as if you’re describing an inhuman monster……Well, you’re not necessarily wrong ((about my capabilities)).

“Mine’s also a divine protection, just that. It’s called ‘the Hunter’s Divine Protection.’ It increases my physical abilities.” (Almis)

I give off a lie.

When I talked about divine protections with Ains-san, he told me about this ‘Hunter’s Divine Protection’ with a similar effect as mine.

It’s not like I don’t have feelings of guilt about deceiving him. I told him something quite a bit different from the truth, after all.

“Alright, as for me, I want to have the alliance with the Equus tribe. Can I have your cooperation in order to achieve that?” (Almis)

“I don’t mind, you know. You’ll be paying us anyway, right? We’re poor. That’s why we’ll greatly welcome this increase in income. We’re poor to the extent that should our wool be a little bit poorly brought up, a lot of us would have to resort to either abandoning or selling our children. Besides, the wheat we get from you can be stored for a much longer time than our native meat and cheese. However, there are, of course, those who would not want to shed blood for the sake of another country. You would have to do something about those. Furthermore, we would become hostile with the De Morgal Kingdom, too. Risking life for grain and salt as compensation is quite…..” (Muzio)

Muzio declares as he drinks his liquor.

I then tell Muzio my plan.

“In short, the only problem is you shedding blood yes? We, the Rosyth Kingdom, will also promise to come to your aid when the Equus tribe gets into a crisis. Is that still not enough?” (Almis)

Muzio opens his eyes to my statement.

“No, we don’t have problems with that. We’re quite threatened by the Lupus tribe, after all. We consider the Rosyth Kingdom a strong army. You’ll be a big help. The actual problem is what if the Lupus tribe mimics us and goes into an alliance with the De Morgal Kingdom……If Almis and the others fight with us, then there won’t be any problems. However, would that condition be fine with you?” (Muzio)

“Yes, that would be fine. I’m given full authority by King Rosyth to negotiate.” (Almis)

If it’s a two-way alliance, as opposed to a one-way alliance, then they’d find it difficult to complain. It’ll serve as a deterrent after all so it’s not a bad proposition.

I’ve already received full permission from King Rosyth after all. He told me I’m free to enter any treaty so long as it’s not hugely problematic.

“However, isn’t King Rosyth ill? We don’t have assurance that the next king would honor this treaty….” (Muzio)

“If it’s about that, then don’t worry. We’ve already secured the approval of the next king. Although, I can’t tell you who he is, okay?” (Almis)

Well, that’s me anyway.

“I see. We’ll make do with that. The rest would depend upon the remuneration, the number of personnel, and the personnel selection, right? Well, I would be fine as the commander. I lead the Pro-Alliance faction after all. Ah, right? Is it fine to pillage?” (Muzio)

“So long as it doesn’t hinder the battle plan. However, you don’t have to worry about plunder. We’re preparing just the right place to pillage.” (Almis)

For the nomads, war means plunder. If there’s no plunder, there’s no war. You could say that they’re a race that wages war specifically for pillaging.

They’d probably do it anyway even if you tell them to stop. So in exchange for permitting it, it’s better to just give them a specified

location to pillage.

“Hmmm, in other words, that place would be in the De Morgal Kingdom, as opposed to the Rosyth Kingdom, is it. You’re surprisingly confident in your plans, huh. Furthermore, a specified place? I expect it’s somewhere profitable?” (Muzio)

“Yes, it’ll be very profitable. To the point of making plundering wheat from farming villages absurd.” (Almis)

I answer while drinking liquor.

We too plan to profit there.

“Alright, after this will depend upon Lady Julia, huh. Whether she’d be able to cure step-mother’s illness.” (Muzio)

Chapter 60

l curse, yes? However, it's effectiveness seems to have been controlled by several medicines. The smell, too, is ingeniously hidden. For the meantime, let's return the favor to the caster. Although only the caster, and not the requestor, will die." (Julia)

The Lord of the Equus Tribe has three wives.

They're called the First Consort, the Second Consort, and the Third Consort.

The Second Consort gave birth to Muzio.

The Third Consort gave birth to the eldest son.

The First Consort gave birth to the third son.

Basically, the youngest wife obtained the greatest position in both pedigree and social status.

It's this Third Consort who has fallen ill this time.

"I see……"

Julia examines the Third Consort's body. She then checks her throat and confirms her heart beat.

Lastly, she checks her spirit through the eyes.

"Can she be cured?"

Lord Equus watches over Julia's examination worriedly.

Julia nods her head.

“Yes. Somehow. I’ll conduct the treatment. ……I would request for everyone to please leave the room. It’s a secret ceremony, after all.”

Everyone, including Almis and Lord Equus exit the yurt.

Julia breaks the ice with the Third Consort after confirming everyone has left the yurt.

“You’re not ill. You’re definitely cursed. Quite a clever curse at that. There are no immediate effects but it’s a troublesome type of curse that will slowly undermine your body. Do you have something that could be used as a curse’s medium?” (Julia)

“A curse….is it? Something that could be used as a curse’s medium….” (TC)

The Third Consort desperately tries to think.

However, she couldn’t think of anything she has that could be used as such.

“Before you’ve fallen ill…….Do you not have received anything that you’ve kept up until now? Around two or three months ago? Something that you normally use.” (Julia)

“Even if you ask me that….” (TC)

“Then how about things you’ve received from either the First Consort or the Second Consort?” (Julia)

Julia draws closer to the Third Consort.

“This pendant was given to me by the Second Consort as a new year’s gift. It seems to have a garnet collected from the De Morgal Kingdom.” (TC)

A bright green color shines from the jewel inserted in the pendant. (TLN: I don’t know much about jewels so I’m surprised Garnets come in different colors other than red. You learn new things every day, huh.)

Julia takes the pendant and sniffs it to confirm its smell.

“This isn’t it. Are there anything else? How about things you’ve gotten from the First Consort?” (Julia)

“Like this pillow?” (TC)

Julia takes the pillow and smells it. She frowns at the smell.

“It stinks, yes?” (Julia)

“I’m…I’m sorry….” (TC)

“No, not like that. I mean it reeks of a curse. Can I tear this into pieces? I’ll resew it later.” (Julia)

It’s quite an expensive pillow.

If you tear it into pieces, then naturally you won’t be able to restore it to its original condition.

“I don’t mind.” (TC)

“Understood.” (Julia)

Julia takes out a knife and starts to tear the pillow into pieces. You can now see the wool inside.

She then pulls out the source of the stench that's jammed inside the wool.

It's a dead centipede.

"A poison curse, huh…….The stereotypica

Julia puts the centipede into her pocket.

She then pulls out her medicine box to make medicine from several medicinal plants.

She shapes the powder into a ball and covers it with preservative grass.

"Take this medicine once a day for thirty days. It has a purification effect. With this, I think you'll recover. All that's left is to eat properly and have sufficient sleep. That's all. As for the perpetrator……I'll leave it to you." (Julia)

They're the same in being marred in succession problems. If she get any more involved, then it'll become troublesome. She should leave this matter to the Third Consort.

That was how Julia saw the situation.

“That’s what happened.” (Julia)

“Sigh, Succession problems plague no matter what country, huh.” (Almis)

“That’s true. There are those without a successor like our country but there are also those with too many successors like the Equus tribe.” (Julia)

Julia and I talk while drinking wine.

We’re talking about important things so we had to clear out the people. And because of that, there’s no need to speak in polite speech.

It doesn’t seem like the main problem is that the Equus tribe has too many successors. Rather, if I were to chose, I think the real problem is the consort’s personality

I wonder how it’ll be for Julia and Tetra? Will it be alright?

It won’t be somebody else’s problem you know.

“However, normally wouldn’t you aim for the eldest son – Methyl-san? Although it would have been easier while he was an infant.” (Almis)

“I think that would be hopeless. He’d be under strict protection after all.” (Julia)

I see. It’s a last resort, huh.

Besides, it’s hasty to conclude that only the Third Consort was cursed. Relatives could have been cursed too or there might be plans to.

“Besides, I heard that women have higher status in the Equus tribe than in the Rosyth Kingdom. I heard that the mother’s speech carries a big weight. Isn’t that a good reason? Wouldn’t it be easier to kill Methyl if you kill the patron?” (Julia)

“Certainly. Low risk low return is safer than high risk high return after all.” (Almis)

I tend to lean on caution and prudence, that’s why I kind of understand.

However, wouldn’t that plan take too long?

Ah, is it because they’d be found out if they used a stronger curse? Cursing is quite difficult too, huh. It’s unexpectedly unsuitable for assassinations.

“I wonder what that guy will do, that Muzio.” (Almis)

“Ah, That guy Almis I shared a night with?” (Julia)

“The way you say it is bad you know. Consider your words. Though you’re not mistaken.” (Almis)

It’s true, though. We drank the night away together, after all.

“Come to think of it, he promised to give you a new horse tomorrow, yes? Then after that would be the negotiations.” (Julia)

“Yes, that’s right. We’ll distribute the loot from the Tyrannosaur’s corpse tomorrow as well. (Almis)

If possible, I want to quickly finish the negotiations. Although, we’ve received a report from King Rosyth’s falcon that there are still

no big movements.

“I think a white horse would be much better.” (Julia)

“White, is it?….. Hmmm, I think a red or black horse would be better. It’s cooler that way.” (Almis)

Besides, I’m not a prince after all. I’m a great clansman. White doesn’t fit me.

“Then, it’s about time I return to my room to sleep.” (Almis)

“It’s fine to stay the night here, you know.” (Julia)

“Stupid, it’ll be a big problem, right? Sparking our country’s succession crisis should come much much later, okay?” (Almis)

I pull Julia towards me and give her a kiss on the lips.

“Then, I’ll see you tomorrow.”

“Right.”

“Well then, for the meantime let’s start with dividing the tyrannosaur. Well, you don’t have any objections with just splitting it into two, right?” (Almis)

“Yeah. The problems are the core steel (shingane) and the inverse scale (gekirin). How should we divide them? Though I don’t think there’s a way to divide them.” (Muzio)

The core steel is a special metal found in the heart of a dragon.

It's a material you mix with Damascus Steel via a special process to obtain Dragon Damascus steel.

However, only the desert people know about that process. You won't get anywhere even if you get one.

The inverse scale, on the other hand, is a single scale on a dragon that grows in the opposite direction of the other scales. It's considerably softer compared to the other scales so it's something you might call a weak point.

Its hue is beautiful so it has quite a high value as an ornament.

"Actually, I'm about to be married soon, see. That's why I want the inverse scale. Is that okay?" (Muzio)

Muzio points at the inverse scale and declare.

I'm also about to be married soon but…I still haven't given Tetra anything for our marriage, huh.

Giving Julia something despite that would not be okay.

I guess it's fine to let him have it.

"I understand. Then I'll take the core steel." (Almis)

Ains-san would probably be able to turn this into money or dragon damascus for me, after all.

Honestly, I could care less about the tyrannosaur. It's fangs, claws, and scales might be hard as the average steel but processing them would be difficult.

Although it's just right for making armor.

However, I give it a failing grade for armor because you can't

guarantee a constant supply.

Besides, rather than that, I want a horse.

“Let’s not get too impatient. Come. I’ll let you choose after all.” (Muzio)

“Sorry. About the payment….” (Almis)

“Don’t need it. You lost your horse because of my subordinates’ failure to detect the tyrannosaur after all.” (Muzio)

Muzio guides me to the stables.

“So, do you have any requests?” (Muzio)

“Hmm, let’s see. I’d be great if the mane were to be either red or black. It’d be better if it has a brave personality. The previous one was docile but it went and ran away, see.” (Almis)

Furthermore, a horse which will run away when gunpowder is used would be out of the question.

“Brave, is it….a horse like that generally has a wild temperament so would that still be fine for you?” (Muzio)

“I’ll think about it when I see it. If it’s no good then I’ll just have to look for another.” (Almis)

We arrive at the stable as I declared so.

“I’ve gathered only the good horses. The four steeds on the left haven’t been castrated. The seven steeds from the right have been castrated. Please choose as you like.” (Muzio)

I look at the horses one by one starting from the left. We’ll start with the uncastrated horses first.

Although they had rough temperaments….these horses doesn’t look like they’d run away once roared at.

However…

“I’ll have to pass on these fellows. I don’t think I’d be able to ride them.” (Almis)

Or rather, these fellows look like they won’t let me ride them.

Although you can’t say I’m bad at riding horses, you also can’t say that I’m good at it.

I don’t want to die by falling off a horse. (TLN: Yeah, you already died getting hit by a truck. Yo luck so bad.)

I look at the remaining seven horses on the right.

They look mature and they’ll probably be fast, too.

Not bad, but…..

“Hmmm, they’re quite not what I’m looking for. Are there any others?” (Almis)

“Let’s go further inside the stable. I’ll prepared some there in advance.” (Muzio)

I follow Muzio further into the stable.

“All that’s left here are mares. Wouldn’t these be weaker than the ones I showed you before?” (Muzio)

Yeah, certainly these look like several times more inferior than those fine horses from before.

However, what I want is not a fast horse. What I want is one that won’t run away when it matters the most.

“Can I make a loud noise for a bit?” (Almis)

“I don’t mind, but…” (Muzio)

I take out a firecracker.

I was thinking of using it for when we get attacked by wolves.

I throw the firecracker at the ground with all my might.

Bam. A large sound resonates throughout the barn. Muzio is petrified with fear.

The horses, too, neigh in terror and fall into disorder.

It takes a while until they calm down.

“Hey! You should have told me that it would be that loud! So, did you find what you’re looking for?” (Muzio)

“Yes, I’ll take her. She wasn’t frightened at all by the sound.” (Almis)

I point to a red horse. (TLN: Extra Strong™.)

I like her coat color too.

“This one, is it?…….I’d pass on her if I were you. This girl has black spot patterns in the face, see? It’s been said that horses with this pattern attract bad spirits, you know. When this horse was born, for example, her mother died immediately after labor. Also, the stable recently caught fire and for some reason only this horse survived.” (Muzio)

“Then why’d you show her to me? Didn’t you gather only those that

I can choose?” (Almis)

“Ah, no. Actually, I just brought her along as a joke. You get it, right?” (Muzio)

No way I’d get it. What are you, a high schooler?

Well, you’re the same age as me so you’d probably be one back in Japan.

“Well. I’ve already decided. Besides, that’s just a superstition, right? Furthermore, you can consider her strong after surviving all that, don’t you agree?” (Almis)

Besides, I’d feel bad to judge her just because of her face.

Also, if she was bad luck, why did you keep taking care of her? You could have just killed her already.

“Her parents were fine horses, see. She, herself, is of quite the splendid quality. We kept her for breeding purposes. Well, if you want her then I’d give her to you. Just don’t complain if you die because of her, okay?” (Muzio)

I won’t be able to complain if I die, this guy.

“So, would you like to try riding her?” (Muzio)

“Right. It’d be a problem if we have bad compatibility.” (Almis)

“That would be best. Just like women, you won’t find out if a horse is good until you ride them. Furthermore, this one’s a female too.”

It’s bad enough that you said that with a proud face but that joke just didn’t fly well, you know.

“Not bad.” (Almis)

This unlucky horse I chose runs quite fast.

She also didn’t struggle when equipped with a saddle and stirrup that she’s not used to.

She’s quite brave.

“What should we call you? Hmm. Well, let’s just figure it out later. For the meantime let’s call you Nanashi (Nameless). It’s difficult to choose one for an unlucky horse, huh. N? Why’d you stop?”

Nanashi suddenly stopped. She’s somewhat refusing to move.

When I look closer before us, a black cluster is moving inside the overgrown bushes.

Aren’t those…..

Aren’t those wolves?

Why the hell did we meet wolves in our first ride together? Even

though it's broad daylight and we're near the Equus tribe's capital.

You, do you seriously have bad luck?

"Well, fine. I have some firecrackers after all." (Almis)

I take out some firecrackers from my pocket while I follow the wolves slowly encircling us with my eyes.

"Here you go, get the hell away from us!" (Almis)

The wolves got frightened and fled when I threw the firecracker.

There are even those that got too scared to move.

They look so cute if you look at them in that state.

"Well then. I guess let's escape quickly. What? Don't mind it. For all I know, it might be me who has bad luck."

Just like that, we were able to safely return to the Equus Tribe's capital city.

Next would be the diplomatic negotiations.

Chapter 61

s)

“Let me introduce ourselves once again, Lord Equus. I am Julia Rosyth who humbly comes as King Rosyth’s representative. This is Lord Almis Ars, lord of the Ars Territory.” (Julia)

“I am Almis Ars. I come as Lady Julia’s humble guard and aide.” (Almis)

Julia and I bow to Lord Equus.

This is the first time I’ve come into contact with another sovereign other than King Rosyth.

“Thank you for coming here. I am the patriarch of the Equus Clan. If we go by your kingdom’s customs, then I would be King Equus. First, let me thank you from the bottom of my heart for saving my wife.” (Lord Equus)

Lord Equus gives thanks to Julia.

It’s quite a good start for the negotiations.

“Now then, regarding the alliance proposal with your honorable kingdom…I just don’t see it as quite appealing. We are a poor clan. Therefore, the wheat from the Rosyth Kingdom has really saved us. However, risking our lives for that as compensation is too much. Furthermore, we will also risk making enemies of the De Morgal Kingdom. We already have the Lupus Clan as our longtime enemy. They’ve repeatedly invaded our territory after they had succeeded

in subjugating the Aries Tribe. We would be a very huge threat if they were to ally with the De Morgal Kingdom." (Equus)

It seems Muzio's spot on as to why Lord Equus is against this, huh.

"It's as you've said. As for that……what do you say about a mutual alliance? When the De Morgal comes to invade, the Equus tribe shall fight with us. In exchange, when the Lupus tribe goes to invade your Equus tribe, we shall fight together with you." (Julia)

Julia proposes to Lord Equus.

It's not a bad proposition. Even if you say our Rosyth Army mainly uses infantry, we nevertheless outnumber the Lupus tribe in total military force.

If I recall correctly, I hear the Equus tribe's population is around 30,000 people. Meanwhile, the Aries tribe and the Lupus tribe has around 10,000 people and 30,000 people respectively.

Since the Aries tribe was already subjugated by the Lupus tribe, that would mean that we would potentially have 40,000 enemy citizens.

Nomads have bigger percentage of soldiers among their citizens….around 70% which would amount to 28,000 enemy soldiers.

The Equus tribe can mobilize about 21,000.

We'd be 7,000 men short.

However, I can reckon the Rosyth Kingdom would be able to gather more than 8,000 soldiers.

Even if we don't participate directly in the possible war, the mere existence of our 8,000 soldiers can be a huge deterrent.

Lord Equus shows a slightly troubled expression at Julia's proposal.

However…..

“That’s certainly a very tempting proposition. However, with that, our gains would only match our losses. We have no reason to accept an alliance that would not give us a net profit.” (Equus)

That’s true.

However, we’ve anticipated this response. Julia and I have already discussed it.

“Lord Equus. May I humbly ask you a question?” (Almis)

“What would that be?”

Lord Equus looks at me doubtfully.

“The next lord of the Equus tribe would be Sir Methyl, yes?” (Almis)

I ask just to break the ice. It’s not like I didn’t really knew.

Lord Equus has already designated Methyl as successor.

In a word, I’m setting up the premise.

“That would be correct…and why do you ask?” (Equu

“How about we carve Prince Methyl’s name into this treaty? How does that sound to you?” (Almis)

In other words, the treaty would make it appear that the Rosyth Kingdom recognizes the succession of Prince Methyl.

Naturally, the Rosyth Kingdom neither has authority nor duty to poke its head into the Equus tribe succession matters.

However, this would become a huge check.

"Apart from Sir Methyl, I'm thinking you would also want to include the second prince, Sir Muzio, and the third prince, Sir Ledus' names."

Naturally, in their capacity as Princes.

In other words, we would make it appear that the two princes recognize Prince Methyl's succession.

Naturally, they won't be able to veto. In Equus common law, the patriarch's orders are absolute, after all.

There's a huge merit in decreasing the possibility of internal strife even if just by a little, right?

Besides, though this depends on whether or not the third consort was consulted…..we'd be sending a message to King Equus that our country knows his country's weak point – the succession crisis putting him in a check.

"Yes…..Not bad. However, there's one problem. King Rosyth is on the verge of death. If the next king were to disregard the alliance then our country would have shed blood for nothing." (Equus)

"That won't be a problem. The next Rosyth King, too, has already given his consent to the alliance. I won't be able to specifically name him though." (Julia)

Julia answers.

However, Lord Equus shakes his head.

“Word of mouth won’t do. I want written proof. Lord Almis Ars, I want your honorable signature.” (Equus)

“Yes yes, I understand. Everything would be fine if I just sign her……wha!?

Hey, how did we get found out!!” (Almis)

“It would seem my assumptions were correct, huh. I’ll give you a piece of advice, nothing, such as kissing, is beyond the sight of my mice. Also, it would be best if you practice hiding your facial expression before you become king. You too, Lady Julia.” (Equus)

Damn….

If I hid my expressions, wouldn’t we end up just like having an affair?

Alright, from here on out, we should only kiss in definitely safe places.

“Uhm….That’s…..”

“Please be at ease. I’m not going to return good with bad. Lady Julia has shown great thought in the matter regarding my three wives. I’ll keep my mouth shut.” (Equus)

In other words, “if you want me to keep silent, then you should also keep silent about the curse.” Something like that.

We got countered badly, huh.

“As for the treaty, I want you to sign, not as the next king nor as the

lord of the Ars Territory, but as Sir Almis Ars, the individual. Would that be fine?" (Equus)

He's making sure I won't renege on the treaty since I could argue I signed it not as king but as leader of the Ars Territory, huh.

Well, that's fine. I dpn't intend to do that from the very start.

"I understand. Then I shall sign." (Almis)

"Then let us have a feast this evening. We shall hold the signing after that." (Equus)

"A feast huh. I wonder what kind of food they'll serve. I'm looking forward to it. Older Brother. (Roswald)

"Let's see….Well, it'll probably be lamb meat, kumis and something along those lines. Also, some cheese." (Almis) (TLN: Kumis is fermented horse milk alcoholic drink.)

I'm not really looking forward to it.

The food will be several times poorer than the Rosyth Kingdom's after all.

However, as the banquet was about to start, we received a message via a falcon.

"The De Morgal Army is assembling. More than 10,000 men. Hurry up with the negotiations. Should you still fail to reach a conclusion by tomorrow, return home immediately. We'll just need to revise

the plan. King Rosyth.” (Message)

I guess we’d be skipping the banquet, huh.

“We deeply apologize, Lord Equus. Even though you’ve prepared all of this for us.” (Julia)

“Please raise your head. It can’t be helped if your fatherland is in danger. Let’s call off the banquet and proceed with the selection of soldiers that would be accompanying you. How many would you need?” (Equus)

“About 300 soldiers. May we ask for Sir Muzio as the commander? Furthermore, can you also lend us horses? We will need them for wagons we’d be using to carry plunder.” (Almis)

I answer in Julia’s place.

Lord Equus replies in good humor.

“To be worrying about plunder even before you’ve won. You seem to be very confident. No, I’m not being cynical – I’m praising you. You can take as much horses as you need. For free, if you’re just borrowing although we presume you’d be returning them alive, yes? Now, Muzio!! I order you to head for the Rosyth Kingdom! You shall leave tomorrow morning!”

Muzio kneels.

“Understood! I shall spread the name of the Equus tribe amongst the De Morgal and Rosyth Kingdoms!” (Almis)

Thus, we hurriedly conducted war preparations.

“King Rosyth, we have returned!” (Almis)

“Good work. That said, you’re a day earlier than I expected, huh. Is this the power of horses’ maneuverability?….” (Rosyth)

King Rosyth shows a surprised expression and voices his admiration.

Muzio, who’s sitting beside me, lowers his head to King Rosyth.

“I am Muzio Equus Medias, second son of the chief of the Equus Tribe. I have come here to lead the 300 cavalrymen from our tribe.” (Muzio)

“Commander, I give you my thanks. I’ll have you, Sir Muzio, fight under the command of Sir Almis. Then let us proceed immediately to the war council……No, let’s have the confirmation. After that, let’s have Almis return immediately to his territory so he can organize his troops.” (Rosyth)

All the powerful clansmen, with the exception of Almis Ars, have assembled.

Then, it was announced immediately that Almis Ars is to be made

supreme commander of the Rosyth Army.

Those from the Ars Faction, who knew beforehand, shouted in joy, trying very hard not to laugh ((for having one upped their enemy)).

Those from the Neutral Faction were confused and raised voices of bewilderment.

Finally, those from the DeBell Faction were fuming angry.

The Royal Family too is participating in this Clan Council.

Thus, those who vote “agree” exceeded the requirement just a little bit and Almis Ars’ appointment was safely approved.

Regal DeBell protested not being made the supreme commander.

King Rosyth ignored him completely.

Regal ended up ordering three of his subordinates to each allow 100 soldiers for a total of 300 soldiers to be under the command of Almis Ars.

Then, under the pretense of personally fortifying the borders with the De Morgal Kingdom so that the combined army would not get flanked, he declared that he would be secluding himself in his territory with his 500 soldiers.

Almis Ars approved with a smile on his face. He extended his hand for a handshake to signify working together.

Regal DeBell brushed off his hand and leaves without a word.

The people who were always seen by his side was nowhere to be found….

Chapter 62

e like.

We'll be going a little back in time.

The motion for sending envoys to the Equus tribe unexpectedly passed with little objection in the council.

The reason was Regal DeBell did not particularly oppose the motion.

For him, there's no point to trading with savage tribes but he also thinks there's little point to particularly oppose that motion.

In other words, he's just not interested.

After it was decided to send the first envoy to the Equus tribe, Almis hurriedly went back to his territory to begin war preparations.

For this war, in addition to the 800 regulars, the Ars territory conscripted around 1,200 more for a combined force of 2,000. That would be around 6% to 7% of the population.

Although it was planned to not drag the war on for more than 20 days, the responsibility ((of mobilizing such a force)) is nevertheless daunting.

Since the Ars Citizens themselves are aware of their precarious position living in a territory directly bordering the De Morgal Kingdom, there probably won't be any big opposition particularly since Almis has been exercising good governance.

The treasury, too, was particularly stable thanks to the support of the salt and paper industries.

The remaining problem is soldier quality.

Therefore, he immediately obligated the citizenry to participate in the military drills.

Once every week, he would have around 10 to 20 villages gathered together and perform drills.

If it's just to that extent, then the farmers won't be too angry.

Besides, one of the objectives is to instill a sense of danger among the citizenry.

Now, there are still things to do apart from supplying the soldiers.

First is to order Ismere, Qingming, and Lulu to further reinforce and inspect the new fort. This is to strengthen the fort rock solid ((to withstand the expected attack.))

The point is to put up a sorcery barrier around the fort and to make it more fortified than ever before.

Futhermore, Almis and Tetra have together began developing new defensive siege equipment.

Soyon was assigned to King Rosyth's sorcerers. They were made to survey the De Morgal Kingdom's geography. Using owls, they explored past midnight so they wouldn't be found that easily.

Well, the De Morgal Kingdom was probably doing the same against the Rosyth Kingdom anyway.

Ron, Roswald, and Gram, on the other hand, are responsible for the

soldiers' training.

As for Yal…

He left for the DeBell Territory together with several subordinates. They were mobilized to the territory disguised as merchants.

Around ten years ago, when Ron and the others were still children, currency was not that yet widely circulated. However, within these ten tears, the Adernia Peninsula voluntarily and rapidly transformed into a monetary economy. The primary causes were the Adernian kings, princes, and clansmen desire for foreign goods, their adoption of Cretian culture, and the advent of the study of the Cretian language.

As such, it wouldn't be strange to see merchants and the like.

Of course, in the DeBell territory too.

While recently all the merchants are heading for the Ars territory, there are still those who go to the DeBell territory.

At first, Yal acted like a normal merchant, trading goods here and there.

Then he devoted himself to gathering information.

It's not that particularly strange for merchants to gather information. Yal slowly gathered information regarding the DeBell territory from other merchants, farmers, and th

The efforts paid off and he was able to identify the DeBell clan's

power structure.

As expected, the clan is divided into the Relative and Non-Relative Factions. The former is headed by Gilberto while the latter was headed by Bermet.

It seems that Bermet has gathered excellent and talented people over time.

The DeBell Clan somehow managed to become the most powerful clan in the Rosyth Kingdom (before the resurgence of the Ars Clan.)

Because the head of the Rosyth Clan – King Rosyth is ill, their prospects are bleak. A lot of personnel have been going to the DeBell territory.

Bermet would then pick them out and assign them official duties.

Although you might say the DeBell clan is monopolizing the important offices, it's not like it's completely impossible to get one.

Besides, once Regal DeBell becomes king, there's enough chance that you'd finally get your turn for one.

It's not like he has a lot of relatives after all.

Furthermore, should Bermet overcome the power struggle, he could secure an important post in the Rosyth Kingdom and he could also become a territorial lord.

Having said that, it's not like there's no dissatisfaction against them.

Plus, it's not like all the personnel have a sense of gratitude to Bermet.

There are a lot of people thinking of leaving and offering their

services to other territorial lords after completely failing to obtain good assessment.

Yal is targeting those people.

It happened in the Third Month.

Yal speaks to a man of the DeBell Territory.

“Ah, Yal, is it? Come on in.”

This man, a soldier of the DeBell Territory, called Decurion Joseph invites the merchant Yal into his house.

(TLN: Decurion literally means Ten Person Officer. Will use Latin Decurion since it literally means the same thing. However, I don’t yet know if this Joseph commands cavalry as in the Roman sense of the word.)

Josef has been living off a salary of wheat from the DeBell clan. Naturally speaking, man cannot live on wheat alone.

Thus, Joseph sells his wheat in exchange for vegetables, meat, and liquor. However….the value of wheat has recently fallen despite the harvest yield not really changing much.

Though he has no way of knowing, the reason was because of Almis. The wheat that Almis had been paying to the DeBell Territory as reparations have been driving down its market value.

Let's get back to the story.

Since the value of wheat has fallen, Joseph was forced to tighten his belt and live a horrible life.

It was around that time that Yal entered the picture.

Yal was selling unusually cheap vegetables. As a matter of course, Yal and Joseph soon became good friends.

"I can't take this anymore~" (Joseph)

Joseph complains to Yal as he drinks his liquor.

One thing is that his abilities aren't being properly acknowledged.

Joseph was excellent in sword and spear fighting that he managed to take down several enemies during the war with King Ferrum. He defeated all enemies he encountered.

Bermet caught his attention so he got employed into the army.

He was an existence acknowledged for his unusual excellence as decurion.

However, he couldn't become a centurion. All centurion offices have been monopolized by DeBell's relatives. Naturally, he was grateful for Bermet. However, gratitude won't feed him.

'Why does someone excellent like me have to go through such hardships in life?' he thought.

Seeing such a Joseph, Yal thought it was the perfect opportunity so he began his pitch.

“Then why not just serve the Ars Territory? I can guarantee you the status of centurion. I’ll get you ten times more than you get now as salary. We’ll also prepare a residence for you.” (Yal)

“Haha, that would be nice….huh?” (Joseph)

Joseph reflexively asks again.

Yal laughs grinning.

“I am Yal, an operative working for Lord Almis Ars. Well, right now I’m passing myself off as a merchant.” (Yal)

“Haha, so it was a ruse huh.” (Joseph)

“I had no choice but to do this to ascertain your feelings. So, what do you say?” (Yal)

Joseph was greatly tempted.

However…

“……Regal DeBell is the main candidate for the next king. There’s no way I’m jumping off a winning ship. Besides I owe a lot to Lord Bermet, I’m gratefu….” (Joseph)

“Grateful? Should you even have such gratitude to that person? Isn’t it because of Bermet that right now you have no choice but to live a life of great poverty? That person saved your life, you say? Weren’t you just saying that if I wasn’t here you would have no choice but to go into debt, right? Furthermore, it’s not like it’s been decided that Regal DeBell would be succeeding as king. Besides, aren’t things suspicious lately?” (Yal)

Yal presses Joseph for an answer.

At present, there are two rumors circulating regarding King

Rosyth's relatives.

The first rumor was that Raymond would be the next king. He's the best choice genealogically speaking so it's not a strange rumor.

The second rumor was that Almis Ars would be chosen as the supreme commander of the army in the war against King De Morgal.

In other words, the rumors aren't farfetched.

It was just some time ago that the DeBell Army suffered a miserable loss to the Ars Army.

That event had huge repercussions…..It gave exceptional credibility to the rumors. Even if you doubt the credibility, the rumors were mostly true though.

"My lord, Almis Ars is young. He still has a lot ahead of him. Furthermore, it's been rumored that he will be chosen as the supreme commander of the army for the next war. He's close with King Rosyth after all. Also, he's being tormented by a shortage of good personnel. He doesn't have any relatives too. You'd have several chances of rising through the ranks." (Yal)

Practically speaking, the Ars army lacks commanders for the battlefield.

The thirty tax collectors of the Ars Territory are general purpose public servants that can both fight and do finance. However, there's no way all of them could be brought to the battlefield.

It will mess up the territory's management after all.

Some of them have to be assigned as direct escorts of Almis.

Considering that, they would want four to five centurions.

After worrying for some time, Joseph asks Yal:

“Three days, can you wait for my answer in three days?” (Joseph)

“That’s fine. Don’t make your new house in the Ars Territory wait for too long. (Yal)

Yal leaves with a laugh.

Yal then visits the next house.

The master of the house welcomes him.

“Please, come inside.”

Her name is Dora. (TLN: Dudutdutdutdu Dora～)

She’s a sorcerer specializing in using dogs.

“Here’s the usual liquor. Also, the medicinal plants.” (Yal)

“Thank you very much. You saved me.” (Dora)

Dora pays for Yal’s merchandise with wheat.

After having a friendly chat for a while, Dora opens up to Yal.

“Actually, I have something to consult with you.” (Dora)

“What is it?” (Yal)

“You see, I received a marriage proposal from a DeBell clansman.” (Dora)

Naturally, Yal already knew. It’s a popular story amongst the sorcerers working for the DeBell Clan after all.

Or perhaps you should say it is for this reason that Yal approached Dora.

He also knew why she’s so troubled. However, he’s pretending to be in the dark.

“Isn’t that a wonderful thing? You’d be marrying into wealth, yes?” (Yal)

“It’s completely horrible, you know!!!” (Dora)

Dora raises her voice.

“That man, his appearance is….well THAT. He’s also over 50 years…. At the very least, he’s not my type. Furthermore, he has 5 wives PLUS 10 sex slaves, you know.” (Dora)

Sorcerers have high pride as women.

That’s because they receive even more favorable treatment than normal male retainers due to their unique sorcery abilities.

Not only do they have high salaries, they’re pretty much free from troubles in life.

Therefore, there’s no need to desperately chase after a rich man. A sex maniac with several wives is out of the question.

In the first place, she won’t be able to stand being treated as a typical wife the same way as a woman who’s not a sorcerer would

be.

Dora holds this kind of sentiment.

If the one who proposed were very good-looking or had an incredibly high social status then she might have considered.

However, the one who proposed did not by any standard have that high of a social status.

The established reputation of the DeBell Clan only has value within the DeBell territory itself.

She's not desperate for a man to the extent that he'd marry with such a small fish.

"However, in this territory, if I go against the DeBell Tribe then my job will be…..

I can't rely on Bermet, too. Is there a good place of employment anywhere? You're a merchant so I thought you'd probably know something." (Dora)

"Yes, I know somewhere you can go." (Yal)

Yal visits the third house.

The master of this house is a man who has about a quarter Cretian blood.

He can speak fluent Cretian and specializes in calculations. He is a very excellent man.

“Yal, I’m sorry…..Can you please give me one more month? I’ll definitely pay you back by then.”

Despite this, Amerigo has been living a very distressed life.

Since a lot of the clansmen are attracted by Cretian culture, a lot of them have also put great importance in writing.

However, there are also a lot who hold a different opinion.

In the Adernia Peninsula where wars and petty squabbles are a frequent occurrence and the danger of getting attacked by bears and lions are ever present, physical strength trumps all.

Thus, scholarship and learning where the results are hard to see tend to be despised.

This trend is currently strong particularly in the DeBell territory.

Although Bermet who was the only one who noticed him gave him a post, his life had been particularly bitter. His salary too was not that high.

Well, the Amerigo clan having a huge family of 9 people consisting of a too old to work grandmother, the wife, and six children played a huge part in their poverty.

Supporting eight people with Amerigo’s salary alone is impossible.

Since the children are still young, he has misgivings with having them work away from home.

He has thought of relocating to another territory but there are no jobs except in the DeBell territory.

In the first place, with the exception of the Ars territory, no one bothers with doing troublesome things such as accurately collecting taxes, conducting land surveys, and creating certificates of residence.

The great clansmen who put high value in letters on the other hand are satisfied with having just one or two people who can speak Cretian.

Furthermore, only a few would dare hire people who would have to leave from the DeBell Clan. A lot of them are afraid of inciting the wrath of the clan.

“No, that would be a problem, you see. I didn’t loan it as good will after all.” (Yal)

Yal answers with what seems like a bothered voice.

Amerigo clings to Yal and begs.

“Please, I beg of you!!” (Amerigo)

“No. Is what I wanted to say, but….” (Yal)

Yal smiles and says:

“I’ll tell you about this huge opportunity to have your debt immediately written off while being able to earn a salary several times bigger than what you earn. How is it? Would you like to know more?” (TLN: He sounds like a scam artist haha)

Just like that, Yal succeded in headhunting three talented people.

ally, these people are troublesome beings they had to welcome otherwise they'd backstab the faction. Besides, people who had betrayed someone once tend to keep on betraying others.

"Hey, what's the meaning of this!!!"

Regal DeBell was fuming with anger.

Recently, three retainers have sent in notices of resignation and expressed their wish to migrate to the Ars Territory.

According to Rosythian Law, it's possible to migrate to another territory if you submit a notice and pay the migration tax.

After that would be the agreement between the two territories.

Regal was left with no choice but to accept.

He had no reason to keep them from leaving after all.

There's no justifiable cause to keep people with no history nor outstanding crime from migrating.

Moreover, if he screwed up to three people in their requests to migrate, he'd be labeled as a narrowminded ruler.

There's no way he'd sacrifice his reputation just for such a lowly matter.

However, Regal was annoyed at leaving the just as that.

Therefore, he sent an official letter of protest to Almis Ars.

‘Stop poaching our retainers.’ Or something along those lines.

However, Almis Ars responded with the following:

“We, poaching your retainers?

No, we’re not doing anything of the sort however……perhaps there might be some of our new appointees who have indeed come from the DeBell Territory.”

Almis Ars humbled himself and apologized to Regal.

With that, Regal got satisfied and laid down his arms.

However, the disaster did not end there.

This time ten more people migrated to the Ars Territory.

There was a rumor circulating there that to become king, Raymond Rosyth was trying to win over Almis Ars into his faction. That Raymond, in exchange for Almis’ support, entered into a secret agreement with him where he would hold Regal in contempt and annihilate the DeBell territory so he could grant it to Almis.

Furthermore, it was rumored that the Non-Relative Faction’s retainers, i.e. Bermet and his clique, were conspiring with Almis and Raymond to screw over the DeBell clan.

Thus, Regal was met with no choice but to doubt the Non-Relative retainers.

Everybody who had been poached were all non-relative retainers after all.

Regal ordered his own retainers (naturally, the relatives) to keep watch on the non-relative retainers with comparatively high posts and their relatives.

Nevertheless, he limited himself to observation to the very end.

This was because he was never able to completely verify the veracity of the rumors. Besides, up until now Regal couldn't believe that Bermet himself would betray him.

"Everything turned out well huh, Yal-san."

Yal's subordinate, who right now is acting as the merchant Yal's apprentice, happily said so.

"We went through a lot of trouble spreading those rumors, huh. We incurred some expenses too." (Yal)

Yal managed to win over 32 people for Almis. Amongst those, thirteen people, especially three were quite capable so he personally headhunted them.

The nineteen others remain at the DeBell Territory. Although they aren't by any standard excellent people, they are helpful and reliable.

Actually, they help in gathering information for Yal and in circulating rumors and misinformation.

For a huge fee, however.

Those people, although they live decently with their present status, are never satisfied.

The Ars Faction has no need for those people.

Although these people aren't personnel that the faction will welcome cordi

They're going to be disposed one way or another in the confusion after the end of the civil war.

Naturally, Yal has no intention to tell Almis about them. Almis is the type of person who's worried about killing innocent people after all. Plus he's the type to show disgust in breaking promises.

Yal has been entrusted with independent powers by Almis.

One of these powers is the freedom to not report something.

This is how Yal forcibly interpreted his powers.

That there are somethings you are better off not knowing.

"By the way, although I think it would be fine to do so, but is it not allowed to spread a rumor that Sir Almis would be directly succeeding as king?"

"Well, I also don't think that's bad. Almis is not a typical candidate in the succession after all.

On the other hand, Raymond Rosyth is the second contender for the throne ((next to Regal.)) The current rumors, therefore, have more credibility, right?

Furthermore, the Ars territory and DeBell territory border each other. It would be a problem if per chance Regal invades.

If we stick with Raymond's rumor, we'd get an excuse against having Almis attacked after all." (Yal)

(TLN: Sorry, I don't get the sentence so I winged it. Tell me if you know. ライモンド様の方が王になるという話なら、アルムス様を討っても口実を与えるだけに成りますし)

Regal's territory does not border Raymond's so there's no way Regal could destroy Raymond. On the other hand, his territory is connected to Almis' so should he feel like it he could go and destroy Almis.

If they spread the rumor that Almis would become king, there's a chance that might happen.

At present, should a war occur it will certainly become a very big mess. That is something the must be avoided at all costs.

Almis, too, in order to avoid that, deprecated himself to Regal in order to show that he has no intention of directly antagonizing him.

Regal should probably be not confident in whether Almis and Raymond would come together.

Earnestly apologizing to him just like last time worked wonderfully when he came to us.

It would be great if Regal would come to think of Almis as a worthless being.

Either way, we'll have him vigilant against an enemy greater than

Almis that doesn't even really exist.

"Now then, next would be the last fortress, Bermet….Unless we get rid of this man, our plans won't be successful." (Yal)

I keep getting information that this guy is quite a capable person.

If the rumors were true, then that old man should have already noticed.

That King Rosyth has no intention of having Regal DeBell succeed to the throne.

The circulating rumor that Raymond Rosyth would succeed as king is nothing but a rumor after all so as a matter of course it doesn't mean he understands King Rosyth's real intentions.

Regal DeBell only became the leading candidate by chance about two to three years ago.

If he succeeds the throne, the authority of the king would become greater because the DeBell territory would be added to the areas under the throne's direct control. With this, the total area of the crown territories will surpass that of the clan territories combined. In other words, power would be more centralized.

This is the main reason he became the leading candidate for the throne. It's not about his skills or anything like that.

Raymond's territory is small that the power balance would stay the same even if he becomes king.

To achieve the Rosyth clan's wish to centralize power, it has become necessary that Regal becomes king.

That's why the DeBell Clan and its branches do not doubt that Regal will become king.

Since humans won't believe what they don't want to believe, the clan is thinking that the situation won't easily change.

However, should Bermet notice King Rosyth's intention….

He'd probably propose to Regal that they ally with King De Morgal to steal the throne and Princess Julia.

Since the easy way of getting the throne by marrying Princess Julia would be gone, the only thing that's left is the bad way – getting the throne even if you end up being De Morgal's vassal.

Regal might look brave but he is a timid man.

Just remember of the war with King Ferrum and you'd understand.

He won't be able to choose by himself a decision akin to betraying his own country.

Furthermore, his pride was high at the same time.

Therefore, he probably won't be able to stomach just being a vassal to the De Morgal Kingdom.

However, if you remove the person pushing Regal's back then he should not be able to choose that game changing policy.

Furthermore, Bermet is the lynchpin of the Non-Relative Faction. If he gets punished with something like a demotion then an outpouring of dissatisfaction is sure to occur.

At any rate, in order to make Almis king, it is imperative that Bermet gets eliminated.

Thus, to achieve that….

“Now then, shall we execute our plan?” (Yal)

“Lord Regal, as a matter of fact, I have something to report but….”

“What?”

“There’s a possibility that Sir Bermet will defect to Almis Ars. We have received reports that suspicious people were being seen near Sir Bermet’s residence late at night.”

Regal frowns.

Honestly speaking, they have no evidence that would prove Bermet was truly betraying the clan.

Would a loyal retainer who had been serving him for so long really be able to betray him?

Right now, Regal still believes in Bermet.

However, recently, a lot believed it would be better if they were to put Bermet under observation. Even as a token effort, they should probably put him under surveillance.

“I understand. Put him under surveillance. Two, no, three people. Put Bermet under observation. Should nothing happen within a week, then Bermet would be in the clear.” (Regal)

Just like this, three people were assigned to observe Bermet’s residence.

“It went smoothly, yes?”

Yal and his subordinate laugh together.

The eye-witnesses who reported Bermet were nobody else but Yal and his subordinate.

Naturally, there’s no way they have directly reported to a retainer of the DeBell Clan. They first passed the rumor on to several merchants who then passed it on to the DeBell Clan’s Official Purveyor.

This person was the one who then directly reported to the DeBell Clan.

So long as they aren’t investigated conscientiously, they won’t be traced.

They seemed to have succeeded even though they used a somewhat dangerous method.

Regal has begun to suspect Bermet and has put him under observation.

However, this is still not enough.

It still needs one push.

“Now then, shall we use this?”

Yal has the corpse of a falcon in his hands. It is a corpse they received from Soyon. They had her deliberately kill a falcon while soul-riding another one.

A cylinder is attached to its foot.

This cylinder contains a fake letter addressed to Bermet.

In other words, they’re making it out to be a letter from the Ars Clan to Bermet that has fallen when it was attacked on the way by a wild falcon.

Should they manage to skillfully show this to Regal later, then he would come to completely doubt Bermet.

The problem is how should they go about this.

If they directly sent this to Regal or any of his subordinates, then as a matter of course Yal’s background would be investigated.

Even if you say the time they acted as merchants and the time they poached estranged talent from Regal's camp were a little bit off from each other, they still overlap.

With this, everything they have worked for would have come to naught.

The method they'd use would be……

Once every month, the DeBell Territory opens a public market. Merchants would gather here to sell their goods.

To reach this place, there's a path every merchant would have to cross.

"Now then, if we leave this here, then passing merchants would pick it up and send it for us sooner or later."

Yal and his subordinate turned up in that path early in the morning, before the sun has risen. There they leave behind the falcon's corpse.

Merchants, at the bare minimum, should be able to read letters so they should be able to understand what the letter inside the cylinder would be about.

They should be able to immediately notice how important the letter

is and would immediately send it to the authorities.

Had they done this late at night then a cat might come to snatch it away.

Had they done this when the sun has risen then the merchants would have gathered already and they won't be able to place the corpse on the path.

This is just the perfect time.

"Then let's see how this goes. If it fails, we'll just have to revise the plan and try again."

"You're right. Let's pray a cat won't take it away."

The two take their leave.

A few minutes later, a merchant happens to pass by and picks up the falcon.

Normally, he would've ignored the corpse, but he noticed the strange cylinder attached to its foot.

Furthermore, it seems that the cylinder was quite the high quality.

He did not peek inside.

Since the cylinder looks as if it's purposely designed and since they purposely used a falcon, then there's no mistaking that it's

important classified information.

If he had peeked inside, then he'd be in huge trouble.

There's no option left but to kill people who know important secrets….The merchant kindly says no to such a prospect.

One way or another, the cylinder managed to reach Regal's court. Regal reads the letter inside the cylinder.

The letter was clearly addressed to Bermet. It's about what social position Bermet would be granted after he betrays Regal.

Unfortunately, the sender has not written a signature, name nor left behind a family crest.

However, judging by the current state of affairs, the one who sent this letter is without doubt either the Ars Clan or Raymond.

Regal calmly states:

"Grant a reward to the person who brought this letter. Furthermore, add twenty more people to the team observing Bermet."

Bermet visits Regal's court with a heavy heart.

Certainly, after having been posted with more than 20 guards, he would have understood that he is currently under suspicion.

At this rate, he'd end up being killed.

However, he probably won't be given a chance to explain himself, too. Regal is a stubborn man who refuses to yield once he has decided, after all.

Bermet's heart was overflowing with anger against Almis Ars for having done such foul play, with anger against Regal for having readily believed such a plot, and with exasperation towards himself for having been defeated.

"What is it, Bermet?" (Regal)

"No,…Lord Regal. Actually, I am already old. I have already stood firm in the path that Lord Regal becomes king. I intend to humbly retire in this place." (Bermet)

After declaring such, Bermet leaves Regal's palace. Regal did not even have him detained.

Thus, he returned to his residence.

Since he has lost his loyalty to Regal, he has also forfeited the blessings of the "Divine Protection of the Great King."

An illness that had held him back since long ago then rapidly progressed. Just like that, Bermet breathed his last.

He was 82 years old.

However, Bermet was probably happy.

Since his family and relatives were spared from being accused of rebellion.

EPUB/PDF generated by https://lnwnepubs.com/